

## Transforming Growth Factor Alpha HIII

This application is a continuation-in-part of Application No. 08/778,545, filed 3 January 1997, which claims priority under 35 U.S.C. §119(e) to Application No. 60/011,136, filed 04 January 1996, each of which is hereby incorporated by reference in its entirety. In addition, this application claims priority under 35 U.S.C. §119(e) to Application No. 60/168,387, filed 2 December 1999, which is hereby incorporated by reference in its entirety.

### Field of the Invention

The present invention relates to a novel human gene encoding a polypeptide which is a member of the Transforming Growth Factor family. More specifically, the present invention relates to a polynucleotide encoding a novel human polypeptide named Transforming Growth Factor Alpha III, or "TGF alpha HIII." This invention also relates to TGF alpha HIII polypeptides, as well as vectors, host cells, antibodies directed to TGF alpha HIII polypeptides, and the recombinant methods for producing the same. Also provided are diagnostic methods for detecting disorders related to TGF alpha HIII, and therapeutic methods for treating such disorders. The invention further relates to screening methods for identifying agonists and antagonists of TGF alpha HIII activity.

### Background of the Invention

Cellular growth and differentiation appear to be initiated, promoted, maintained and regulated by a multiplicity of stimulatory, inhibitory and synergistic factors and hormones. The alteration and/or breakdown of the cellular homeostasis mechanism seems to be a fundamental cause of growth related diseases, including neoplasia. Growth modular factors are implicated in a wide variety of pathological and physiological processes including signal transduction, cell communication, growth and development, embryogenesis, immune response, hematopoiesis cell survival and differentiation, inflammation, tissue repair and remodeling, atherosclerosis and cancer. Epidermal growth factor (EGF), transforming growth factor alpha (TGFa,) betacellulin, amphiregulin, and vaccinia growth factor among other factors are growth and differentiation modulatory proteins produced by a variety of cell types

either under normal physiological conditions or in response to exogenous stimuli and are members of the EGF family.

These peptide growth factors influence wound cells through autocrine and paracrine mechanisms. They also play important roles in normal wound healing in tissues such as skin, cornea and gastrointestinal tract and all share substantial amino acid sequence homology including the conserved placement of three intra-chain disulfide bonds. In addition, all the factors of this family bind to a 170,000 molecular weight transmembrane glycoprotein receptor and activate the tyrosine kinase activity in the receptor's cytoplasmic domain (Buhrow, S.A. et al., *J. Bio. Chem.*, 258:7824-7826 (1983)).

The receptors are expressed by many types of cells including skin keratinocytes, fibroblasts, vascular endothelial cells, and epithelial cells of the GI tract. These peptide growth factors are synthesized by several cells involved in wound healing including platelets, keratinocytes, and activated macrophages. These growth factors have also been implicated in both the stimulation of growth and differentiation of certain cells, for example, neoplasia, and the inhibition of other types of cells.

Betacellulin is a 32-kilodalton glycoprotein that appears to be processed from a larger transmembrane precursor by proteolytic cleavage. The carboxyl-terminal domain of betacellulin has 50% sequence similarity with that of rat transforming growth factor  $\alpha$ . Betacellulin is a potent mitogen for retinal pigment epithelial cells and vascular smooth muscle cells.

Amphiregulin is a bifunctional cell growth regulatory factor which exhibits potent inhibitory activity on DNA synthesis in neoplastic cells, yet promotes the growth of certain normal cells. A wide variety of uses for amphiregulin have been assigned including the treatment of wounds and cancers. For example, amphiregulin has potent anti-proliferative effects in vitro on several human cancer cell lines of epithelial origin. Amphiregulin also induces the proliferation of human foreskin fibroblasts as shown in United States Patent Application No. 5,115,096.

TGF  $\alpha$  has pleiotropic biological effects. The production of certain members of TGF  $\alpha$  is synthesized by a number of oncogenically transformed fibroblasts (Ciardiello et al., *J. Cell Biochem.*, 42:45-57 (1990)) , as well as by a variety of tumors, including renal, breast and squamous carcinomas, melanomas and glioblastomas (Derynck, R. et al., *Cancer Res.*, 47:707-712 (1987)). There is direct evidence that TGF  $\alpha$  expression can be a

contributing factor in the conversion of a normal cell to its tumorigenic counterpart by analyzing transgenic mice in which tumor cells express high levels of TGF alpha. TGF alpha transgenic animals display a variety of neoplastic lesions, depending on the strain of mouse and the choice of promotor regulating TGF alpha expression (Sandgren, et al., Cell, 5 61:1121-1135 (1990)).

TGF alpha also plays a role in normal embryonic development and adult physiology (Derynck, R. Adv. Cancer Res., 58:27-5 (1992)). TGF alpha has been expressed in many tissues including skin, brain, gastrointestinal mucosa and activating macrophages. Accordingly, TGF alpha is an important factor in controlling growth of epithelial cells and 10 has a role in wound healing. TGF alpha has also been found to be angiogenic (Schreiber, et al., Science, 232:1250-1253 (1986)).

Thus, there is a need for polypeptides that proliferation of cells, since disturbances of such regulation may be involved in disorders, such as cancer. Therefore, there is a need for identification and characterization of such human polypeptides which can play a role in 15 detecting, preventing, ameliorating or correcting such disorders.

## Summary of the Invention

The present invention relates to novel polynucleotides and the encoded polypeptides 20 of TGF alpha HIII. Moreover, the present invention relates to vectors, host cells, antibodies, and recombinant and synthetic methods for producing the polypeptides and polynucleotides. Also provided are diagnostic methods for detecting disorders and conditions related to the polypeptides and polynucleotides, and therapeutic methods for treating such disorders and conditions. The invention further relates to screening methods for identifying binding 25 partners of TGF alpha HIII.

Additionally, the polypeptide of the present invention has been putatively identified as transforming growth factor TGF alphaHIII. This identification has been made as a result of amino acid sequence homology to human TGFa.

In accordance with one aspect of the present invention, there are provided novel 30 mature polypeptides, as well as biologically active and diagnostically or therapeutically useful fragments, analogs and derivatives thereof. The polypeptides of the present invention are of human origin.

In accordance with another aspect of the present invention, there are provided isolated nucleic acid molecules encoding the polypeptides of the present invention, including mRNAs, cDNAs, genomic DNAs as well as analogs and biologically active and diagnostically or therapeutically useful fragments thereof.

5 In accordance with another aspect of the present invention there is provided isolated nucleic acid molecule encoding a mature polypeptide expressed by the human cDNA contained in ATCC Deposit No. 97342.

10 In accordance with yet a further aspect of the present invention, there are provided processes for producing such polypeptide by recombinant techniques comprising culturing recombinant prokaryotic and/or eukaryotic host cells, containing a nucleic acid sequence encoding a polypeptide of the present invention.

15 In accordance with yet a further aspect of the present invention, there are provided processes for utilizing such polypeptides, or polynucleotides encoding such polypeptides for therapeutic purposes, for example, to stimulate wound healing to restore normal neurological functioning after trauma or AIDS dementia, to treat ocular disorders, to target certain cells, to treat kidney and liver disorders and, to promote hair follicular development, to stimulate angiogenesis for the treatment of burns, ulcers and corneal incisions and to stimulate embryogenesis.

20 In accordance with yet a further aspect of the present invention, there is also provided nucleic acid probes comprising nucleic acid molecules of sufficient length to specifically hybridize to nucleic acid sequences of the present invention.

In accordance with yet a further aspect of the present invention, there are provided antibodies against such polypeptides.

25 In accordance with yet a further aspect of the present invention, there are provided agonists to the polypeptide of the present invention.

In accordance with yet another aspect of the present invention, there are provided antagonists to such polypeptides, which may be used to inhibit the action of such polypeptides, for example, in the treatment of corneal inflammation, neoplasia, for example, tumors and cancers and for psoriasis.

30 In accordance with still another aspect of the present invention, there are provided diagnostic assays for detecting diseases related to overexpression of the polypeptide of the present invention and mutations in the nucleic acid sequences encoding such polypeptide.



In accordance with yet a further aspect of the present invention, there is provided a process for utilizing such polypeptides, or polynucleotides encoding such polypeptides, for in vitro purposes related to scientific research, synthesis of DNA and manufacture of DNA vectors.

These and other aspects of the present invention should be apparent to those skilled in the art from the teachings herein.

## Brief Description of the Drawings

Figure 1 depicts the cDNA sequence (SEQ ID NO:1) and corresponding deduced amino acid sequence (SEQ ID NO:2) of TGF alpha HIII. The standard one letter abbreviations for amino acids are used. The putative signal sequence has been underlined.

Figure 2 is an illustration of comparative amino acid sequence homology between TGF alpha HIII (top line) and human TGF alpha -HI (bottom line; SEQ ID NO:3). Darkened amino acids denote the conserved EGF motif domain which is shown to be conserved in the polypeptide of the present invention. By examining the regions of amino acids shaded and/or boxed, the skilled artisan can readily identify conserved domains between the two polypeptides. These conserved domains are preferred embodiments of the present invention.

Figure 3 shows an analysis of the TGF alpha HIII amino acid sequence. Alpha, beta, turn and coil regions; hydrophilicity and hydrophobicity; amphipathic regions; flexible regions; antigenic index and surface probability are shown, and all were generated using the default settings. In the "Antigenic Index or Jameson-Wolf" graph, the positive peaks indicate locations of the highly antigenic regions of the TGF alpha HIII protein, i.e., regions from which epitope-bearing peptides of the invention can be obtained. The domains defined by these graphs are contemplated by the present invention.

The data presented in Figure 3 are also represented in tabular form in Table I. The columns are labeled with the headings "Res", "Position", and Roman Numerals I-XIV. The column headings refer to the following features of the amino acid sequence presented in Figure 3, and Table I: "Res": amino acid residue of SEQ ID NO:2 and Figures 1A and 1B; "Position": position of the corresponding residue within SEQ ID NO:2 and Figures 1A and 1B; I: Alpha, Regions - Garnier-Robson; II: Alpha, Regions - Chou-Fasman; III: Beta,

Regions - Garnier-Robson; IV: Beta, Regions - Chou-Fasman; V: Turn, Regions - Garnier-Robson; VI: Turn, Regions - Chou-Fasman; VII: Coil, Regions - Garnier-Robson; VIII: Hydrophilicity Plot - Kyte-Doolittle; IX: Hydrophobicity Plot - Hopp-Woods; X: Alpha, Amphipathic Regions - Eisenberg; XI: Beta, Amphipathic Regions - Eisenberg; XII: Flexible Regions - Karplus-Schulz; XIII: Antigenic Index - Jameson-Wolf; and XIV: Surface Probability Plot - Emini.

Figure 4 shows TGF alpha HIII stimulatory activity in AoSMC alamar blue proliferation assay. Lanes 1 and 2 are negative controls and lane 4 is PDGF-BB, a positive protein control.

## Detailed Description

### Definitions

The following definitions are provided to facilitate understanding of certain terms used throughout this specification.

In the present invention, "isolated" refers to material removed from its original environment (e.g., the natural environment if it is naturally occurring), and thus is altered "by the hand of man" from its natural state. For example, an isolated polynucleotide could be part of a vector or a composition of matter, or could be contained within a cell, and still be "isolated" because that vector, composition of matter, or particular cell is not the original environment of the polynucleotide. The term "isolated" does not refer to genomic or cDNA libraries, whole cell total or mRNA preparations, genomic DNA preparations (including those separated by electrophoresis and transferred onto blots), sheared whole cell genomic DNA preparations or other compositions where the art demonstrates no distinguishing features of the polynucleotide/sequences of the present invention.

In the present invention, a "secreted" TGF alpha HIII protein refers to a protein capable of being directed to the ER, secretory vesicles, or the extracellular space as a result of a signal sequence, as well as a TGF alpha HIII protein released into the extracellular space without necessarily containing a signal sequence. If the TGF alpha HIII secreted protein is released into the extracellular space, the TGF alpha HIII secreted protein can undergo extracellular processing to produce a "mature" TGF alpha HIII protein. Release into the extracellular space can occur by many mechanisms, including exocytosis and proteolytic cleavage.

As used herein, a TGF alpha HIII "polynucleotide" refers to a molecule having a nucleic acid sequence contained in SEQ ID NO:1 or the cDNA contained within the clone deposited with the ATCC. For example, the TGF alpha HIII polynucleotide can contain the nucleotide sequence of the full length cDNA sequence, including the 5' and 3' untranslated sequences, the coding region, with or without the signal sequence, the secreted protein coding region, as well as fragments, epitopes, domains, and variants of the nucleic acid sequence. Moreover, as used herein, a TGF alpha HIII "polypeptide" refers to a molecule having the translated amino acid sequence generated from the polynucleotide as broadly defined.

In specific embodiments, the polynucleotides of the invention are at least 15, at least 30, at least 50, at least 100, at least 125, at least 500, or at least 1000 continuous nucleotides but are less than or equal to 300 kb, 200 kb, 100 kb, 50 kb, 15 kb, 10 kb, 7.5kb, 5 kb, 2.5 kb, 2.0 kb, or 1 kb, in length. In a further embodiment, polynucleotides of the invention comprise a portion of the coding sequences, as disclosed herein, but do not comprise all or a portion of any intron. In another embodiment, the polynucleotides comprising coding sequences do not contain coding sequences of a genomic flanking gene (i.e., 5' or 3' to the TGF alpha HIII gene of interest in the genome). In other embodiments, the polynucleotides of the invention do not contain the coding sequence of more than 1000, 500, 250, 100, 50, 25, 20, 15, 10, 5, 4, 3, 2, or 1 genomic flanking gene(s).

In the present invention, the full length TGF alpha HIII sequence identified as SEQ ID NO:1 was generated by overlapping sequences of the deposited clone (contig analysis). A representative clone containing all or most of the sequence for SEQ ID NO:1 was deposited with the American Type Culture Collection ("ATCC") on November 20, 1995, and was given the ATCC Deposit Number 97342. The ATCC is located at 10801 University Boulevard, Manassas, VA 20110-2209, USA. The ATCC deposit was made pursuant to the terms of the Budapest Treaty on the international recognition of the deposit of microorganisms for purposes of patent procedure.

A TGF alpha HIII "polynucleotide" also includes those polynucleotides capable of hybridizing, under stringent hybridization conditions, to sequences contained in SEQ ID NO:1, the complement thereof, or the cDNA within the deposited clone. "Stringent hybridization conditions" refers to an overnight incubation at 42 degree C in a solution comprising 50% formamide, 5x SSC (750 mM NaCl, 75 mM trisodium citrate), 50 mM sodium phosphate (pH 7.6), 5x Denhardt's solution, 10% dextran sulfate, and 20 µg/ml

denatured, sheared salmon sperm DNA, followed by washing the filters in 0.1x SSC at about 65 degree C.

Also contemplated are nucleic acid molecules that hybridize to the TGF alpha HIII polynucleotides lower stringency hybridization conditions. Changes in the stringency of hybridization and signal detection are primarily accomplished through the manipulation of formamide concentration (lower percentages of formamide result in lowered stringency); salt conditions, or temperature. For example, lower stringency conditions include an overnight incubation at 37 degree C in a solution comprising 6X SSPE (20X SSPE = 3M NaCl; 0.2M NaH<sub>2</sub>PO<sub>4</sub>; 0.02M EDTA, pH 7.4), 0.5% SDS, 30% formamide, 100 ug/ml salmon sperm blocking DNA; followed by washes at 50 degree C with 1XSSPE, 0.1% SDS. In addition, to achieve even lower stringency, washes performed following stringent hybridization can be done at higher salt concentrations (e.g. 5X SSC).

Note that variations in the above conditions may be accomplished through the inclusion and/or substitution of alternate blocking reagents used to suppress background in hybridization experiments. Typical blocking reagents include Denhardt's reagent, BLOTTO, heparin, denatured salmon sperm DNA, and commercially available proprietary formulations. The inclusion of specific blocking reagents may require modification of the hybridization conditions described above, due to problems with compatibility.

Of course, a polynucleotide which hybridizes only to polyA<sup>+</sup> sequences (such as any 3' terminal polyA<sup>+</sup> tract of a cDNA shown in the sequence listing), or to a complementary stretch of T (or U) residues, would not be included in the definition of "polynucleotide," since such a polynucleotide would hybridize to any nucleic acid molecule containing a poly (A) stretch or the complement thereof (e.g., practically any double-stranded cDNA clone generated using dT as a primer).

The TGF alpha HIII polynucleotide can be composed of any polyribonucleotide or polydeoxribonucleotide, which may be unmodified RNA or DNA or modified RNA or DNA. For example, TGF alpha HIII polynucleotides can be composed of single- and double-stranded DNA, DNA that is a mixture of single- and double-stranded regions, single- and double-stranded RNA, and RNA that is mixture of single- and double-stranded regions, hybrid molecules comprising DNA and RNA that may be single-stranded or, more typically, double-stranded or a mixture of single- and double-stranded regions. In addition, the TGF alpha HIII polynucleotides can be composed of triple-stranded regions comprising RNA or

DNA or both RNA and DNA. TGF alpha HIII polynucleotides may also contain one or more modified bases or DNA or RNA backbones modified for stability or for other reasons. "Modified" bases include, for example, tritylated bases and unusual bases such as inosine. A variety of modifications can be made to DNA and RNA; thus, "polynucleotide" embraces

5 chemically, enzymatically, or metabolically modified forms.

TGF alpha HIII polypeptides can be composed of amino acids joined to each other by peptide bonds or modified peptide bonds, i.e., peptide isosteres, and may contain amino acids other than the 20 gene-encoded amino acids. The TGF alpha HIII polypeptides may be modified by either natural processes, such as posttranslational processing, or by chemical

10 modification techniques which are well known in the art. Such modifications are well described in basic texts and in more detailed monographs, as well as in a voluminous research literature. Modifications can occur anywhere in the TGF alpha HIII polypeptide, including the peptide backbone, the amino acid side-chains and the amino or carboxyl termini. It will be appreciated that the same type of modification may be present in the same or varying

15 degrees at several sites in a given TGF alpha HIII polypeptide. Also, a given TGF alpha HIII polypeptide may contain many types of modifications. TGF alpha HIII polypeptides may be branched, for example, as a result of ubiquitination, and they may be cyclic, with or without branching. Cyclic, branched, and branched cyclic TGF alpha HIII polypeptides may result from posttranslation natural processes or may be made by synthetic methods. Modifications

20 include acetylation, acylation, ADP-ribosylation, amidation, covalent attachment of flavin, covalent attachment of a heme moiety, covalent attachment of a nucleotide or nucleotide derivative, covalent attachment of a lipid or lipid derivative, covalent attachment of phosphatidylinositol, cross-linking, cyclization, disulfide bond formation, demethylation, formation of covalent cross-links, formation of cysteine, formation of pyroglutamate,

25 formylation, gamma-carboxylation, glycosylation, GPI anchor formation, hydroxylation, iodination, methylation, myristoylation, oxidation, pegylation, proteolytic processing, phosphorylation, prenylation, racemization, selenoylation, sulfation, transfer-RNA mediated addition of amino acids to proteins such as arginylation, and ubiquitination. (See, for instance, PROTEINS - STRUCTURE AND MOLECULAR PROPERTIES, 2nd Ed., T. E.

30 Creighton, W. H. Freeman and Company, New York (1993); POSTTRANSLATIONAL COVALENT MODIFICATION OF PROTEINS, B. C. Johnson, Ed., Academic Press, New

York, pgs. 1-12 (1983); Seifter et al., Meth Enzymol 182:626-646 (1990); Rattan et al., Ann NY Acad Sci 663:48-62 (1992).)

"SEQ ID NO:1" refers to a TGF alpha HIII polynucleotide sequence while "SEQ ID NO:2" refers to a TGF alpha HIII polypeptide sequence.

5 A TGF alpha HIII polypeptide "having biological activity" refers to polypeptides exhibiting activity similar, but not necessarily identical to, an activity of a TGF alpha HIII polypeptide, including mature forms, as measured in a particular biological assay, with or without dose dependency. In the case where dose dependency does exist, it need not be identical to that of the TGF alpha HIII polypeptide, but rather substantially similar to the  
10 dose-dependence in a given activity as compared to the TGF alpha HIII polypeptide (i.e., the candidate polypeptide will exhibit greater activity or not more than about 25-fold less and, preferably, not more than about tenfold less activity, and most preferably, not more than about three-fold less activity relative to the TGF alpha HIII polypeptide.)

#### 15 TGF alpha HIII Polynucleotides and Polypeptides

In accordance with an aspect of the present invention, there is provided an isolated nucleic acid (polynucleotide) which encodes for the mature polypeptide having the deduced amino acid sequence of Figure 1 (SEQ ID NO: 2).

The polynucleotide of this invention was discovered in a human testes cDNA library.  
20 It is structurally related to the TGF alpha gene family. It contains an open reading frame encoding a polypeptide of 229 amino acids, which exhibits significant homology to a number of members of the TGF alpha gene family; these members include TGF alpha itself as well as other members such as amphiregulin and cripto. Furthermore, the six cysteine residues occurring in all members in a characteristic motif are conserved in TGF alpha HIII.

~~43~~ The full-length polypeptide of the present invention as set forth in Figure 1 (SEQ ID NO:2) has a putative signal sequence which comprises amino acid 1 through amino acid 25 of Figure 1 (SEQ ID NO:2) which aids in secretion of the polypeptide from the cell. Amino acid 126 through amino acid 177 of SEQ ID NO:2 represent the active site of the protein of the present invention. Further, amino acid 178 through amino acid 204 represents a putative  
30 transmembrane portion which is thought to be necessary to direct the polypeptide to particular target locations for the carrying out of biological functions as hereinafter described. The transmembrane portion may also be cleaved from the polypeptide such that

4  
Ant  
B3  
the putative soluble portion of the polypeptide of the present invention comprises amino acid 1 through amino acid 177 of SEQ ID NO:2. The protein exhibits the highest degree of homology to TGF alpha.

5  
B4 5  
In accordance with another aspect of the present invention there are provided isolated polynucleotides encoding a mature polypeptide expressed by the DNA contained in ATCC Deposit No. 97342, deposited with the American Type Culture Collection, 12301 Park Lawn Drive, Rockville, Maryland 20852, USA, on November 20, 1995. The deposited material is a bluescript plasmid (Stratagene, La Jolla, CA) that contains the full-length TGF alpha HIII cDNA. The deposit has been made under the terms of the Budapest Treaty on the  
10 International Recognition of the Deposit of Microorganisms for purposes of Patent Procedure. The strain will be irrevocably and without restriction or condition released to the public upon the issuance of a patent. These deposits are provided merely as convenience to those of skill in the art and are not an admission that a deposit is required under 35 U.S.C. §112. The sequence of the polynucleotides contained in the deposited materials, as well as  
15 the amino acid sequence of the polypeptides encoded thereby, are controlling in the event of any conflict with any description of sequences herein. A license may be required to make, use or sell the deposited materials, and no such license is hereby granted. References to "polynucleotides" throughout this specification includes the DNA of the deposit referred to above.

20 The polynucleotide of the present invention may be in the form of RNA or in the form of DNA, which DNA includes cDNA, genomic DNA, and synthetic DNA. The DNA may be double-stranded or single-stranded, and if single stranded may be the coding strand or non-coding (anti-sense) strand. The coding sequence which encodes the mature polypeptide may be identical to the coding sequence shown in Figure 1 (SEQ ID NO:1) or  
25 may be a different coding sequence which coding sequence, as a result of the redundancy or degeneracy of the genetic code, encodes the same mature polypeptide as the DNA of Figure 1 (SEQ ID NO:1).

30 The polynucleotide which encodes for the mature polypeptide of Figure 1 (SEQ ID NO:2) may include, but is not limited to: only the coding sequence for the mature polypeptide; the coding sequence for the mature polypeptide and additional coding sequence such as a leader or secretory sequence or a proprotein sequence; the coding sequence for the mature polypeptide (and optionally additional coding sequence) and non-coding sequence,

such as introns or non-coding sequence 51 and/or 31 of the coding sequence for the mature polypeptide.

Thus, the term "polynucleotide encoding a polypeptide" encompasses a polynucleotide which includes only coding sequence for the polypeptide as well as a  
5 polynucleotide which includes additional coding and/or non-coding sequence.

The present invention further relates to variants of the hereinabove described polynucleotides which encode for fragments, analogs and derivatives of the polypeptide having the deduced amino acid sequence of Figure 1 (SEQ ID NO:2). The variant of the polynucleotide may be a naturally occurring allelic variant of the polynucleotide or a  
10 non-naturally occurring variant of the polynucleotide.

Thus, the present invention, includes polynucleotides encoding the same mature polypeptide as shown in Figure 1 (SEQ ID NO:2) as well as variants of such polynucleotides which variants encode for a fragment, derivative or analog of the polypeptide of Figure 1 (SEQ ID NO:2). Such nucleotide variants include deletion variants, substitution variants and  
15 addition or insertion variants.

As hereinabove indicated, the polynucleotide may have a coding sequence which is a naturally occurring allelic variant of the coding sequence shown in Figure 1 (SEQ ID NO:1). As known in the art, an allelic variant is an alternate form of a polynucleotide sequence which may have a substitution, deletion or addition of one or more nucleotides, which does  
20 not substantially alter the function of the encoded polypeptide.

The present invention also includes polynucleotides, wherein the coding sequence for the mature polypeptide may be fused in the same reading frame to a polynucleotide sequence which aids in expression and secretion of a polypeptide from a host cell, for example, a leader sequence which functions as a secretory sequence for controlling transport of a  
25 polypeptide from the cell. The polypeptide having a leader sequence is a preprotein and may have the leader sequence cleaved by the host cell to form the mature form of the polypeptide. The polynucleotides may also encode for a proprotein which is the mature protein plus additional 5' amino acid residues. A mature protein having a prosequence is a proprotein and is an inactive form of the protein. Once the prosequence is cleaved an active mature protein remains. Thus, for example, the polynucleotide of the present invention may encode  
30 for a mature protein, or for a protein having a prosequence or for a protein having both a prosequence and a presequence (leader sequence).



The polynucleotides of the present invention may also have the coding sequence fused in frame to a marker sequence which allows for purification of the polypeptide of the present invention. The marker sequence may be a hexa-histidine tag supplied by a pQE-9 vector to provide for purification of the mature polypeptide fused to the marker in the case of a bacterial host, or, for example, the marker sequence may be a hemagglutinin (HA) tag when a mammalian host, e.g. COS-7 cells, is used. The HA tag corresponds to an epitope derived from the influenza hemagglutinin protein (Wilson, I., et al., Cell, 37:767 (1984)).

The term "gene" means the segment of DNA involved in producing a polypeptide chain; it includes regions preceding and following the coding region (leader and trailer) as well as intervening sequences (introns) between individual coding segments (exons).

The TGF alpha HIII nucleotide sequence identified as SEQ ID NO:1 was assembled from partially homologous ("overlapping") sequences obtained from the deposited clone. The overlapping sequences were assembled into a single contiguous sequence of high redundancy resulting in a final sequence identified as SEQ ID NO:1.

Therefore, SEQ ID NO:1 and the translated SEQ ID NO:2 are sufficiently accurate and otherwise suitable for a variety of uses well known in the art and described further below. For instance, SEQ ID NO:1 is useful for designing nucleic acid hybridization probes that will detect nucleic acid sequences contained in SEQ ID NO:1 or the cDNA contained in the deposited clone. These probes will also hybridize to nucleic acid molecules in biological samples, thereby enabling a variety of forensic and diagnostic methods of the invention. Similarly, polypeptides identified from SEQ ID NO:2 may be used, for example, to generate antibodies which bind specifically to proteins TGF alpha HIII.

Nevertheless, DNA sequences generated by sequencing reactions can contain sequencing errors. The errors exist as misidentified nucleotides, or as insertions or deletions of nucleotides in the generated DNA sequence. The erroneously inserted or deleted nucleotides cause frame shifts in the reading frames of the predicted amino acid sequence. In these cases, the predicted amino acid sequence diverges from the actual amino acid sequence, even though the generated DNA sequence may be greater than 99.9% identical to the actual DNA sequence (for example, one base insertion or deletion in an open reading frame of over 1000 bases).

Accordingly, for those applications requiring precision in the nucleotide sequence or the amino acid sequence, the present invention provides not only the generated nucleotide

sequence identified as SEQ ID NO:1 and the predicted translated amino acid sequence identified as SEQ ID NO:2, but also a sample of plasmid DNA containing a human cDNA of TGF alpha HIII deposited with the ATCC. The nucleotide sequence of the deposited TGF alpha HIII clone can readily be determined by sequencing the deposited clone in accordance with known methods. The predicted TGF alpha HIII amino acid sequence can then be verified from such deposits. Moreover, the amino acid sequence of the protein encoded by the deposited clone can also be directly determined by peptide sequencing or by expressing the protein in a suitable host cell containing the deposited human TGF alpha HIII cDNA, collecting the protein, and determining its sequence.

The present invention also relates to the TGF alpha HIII gene corresponding to SEQ ID NO:1, SEQ ID NO:2, or the deposited clone. The TGF alpha HIII gene can be isolated in accordance with known methods using the sequence information disclosed herein. Such methods include preparing probes or primers from the disclosed sequence and identifying or amplifying the TGF alpha HIII gene from appropriate sources of genomic material.

Also provided in the present invention are allelic variants, orthologs, and/or species homologs. Procedures known in the art can be used to obtain full-length genes, allelic variants, splice variants, full-length coding portions, orthologs, and/or species homologs of genes corresponding to SEQ ID NO:1, SEQ ID NO:2, or a the deposited clone, using information from the sequences disclosed herein or the clones deposited with the ATCC. For example, allelic variants and/or species homologs may be isolated and identified by making suitable probes or primers from the sequences provided herein and screening a suitable nucleic acid source for allelic variants and/or the desired homologue.

The TGF alpha HIII polypeptides can be prepared in any suitable manner. Such polypeptides include isolated naturally occurring polypeptides, recombinantly produced polypeptides, synthetically produced polypeptides, or polypeptides produced by a combination of these methods. Means for preparing such polypeptides are well understood in the art.

The TGF alpha HIII polypeptides may be in the form of the secreted protein, including the mature form, or may be a part of a larger protein, such as a fusion protein (see below). It is often advantageous to include an additional amino acid sequence which contains secretory or leader sequences, pro-sequences, sequences which aid in purification, such as multiple histidine residues, or an additional sequence for stability during recombinant production.

TGF alpha HIII polypeptides are preferably provided in an isolated form, and preferably are substantially purified. A recombinantly produced version of a TGF alpha HIII polypeptide, including the secreted polypeptide, can be substantially purified using techniques described herein or otherwise known in the art, such as, for example, by the one-step method described in Smith and Johnson, Gene 67:31-40 (1988). TGF alpha HIII polypeptides also can be purified from natural, synthetic or recombinant sources using techniques described herein or otherwise known in the art, such as, for example, antibodies of the invention raised against the TGF alpha HIII protein.

The present invention provides a polynucleotide comprising, or alternatively consisting of, the nucleic acid sequence of SEQ ID NO:1, and/or a cDNA contained in ATCC deposit 97342. The present invention also provides a polypeptide comprising, or alternatively, consisting of, the polypeptide sequence of SEQ ID NO:2 and/or a polypeptide encoded by the cDNA contained in ATCC deposit 97342. Polynucleotides encoding a polypeptide comprising, or alternatively consisting of the polypeptide sequence of SEQ ID NO:2 and/or a polypeptide sequence encoded by the cDNA contained in ATCC deposit 97342 are also encompassed by the invention.

### Signal Sequences

The present invention also encompasses mature forms of the polypeptide having the polypeptide sequence of SEQ ID NO:2 and/or the polypeptide sequence encoded by the cDNA in a deposited clone. Polynucleotides encoding the mature forms (such as, for example, the polynucleotide sequence in SEQ ID NO:1 and/or the polynucleotide sequence contained in the cDNA of a deposited clone) are also encompassed by the invention. According to the signal hypothesis, proteins secreted by mammalian cells have a signal or secretory leader sequence which is cleaved from the mature protein once export of the growing protein chain across the rough endoplasmic reticulum has been initiated. Most mammalian cells and even insect cells cleave secreted proteins with the same specificity. However, in some cases, cleavage of a secreted protein is not entirely uniform, which results in two or more mature species of the protein. Further, it has long been known that cleavage specificity of a secreted protein is ultimately determined by the primary structure of the complete protein, that is, it is inherent in the amino acid sequence of the polypeptide.

Methods for predicting whether a protein has a signal sequence, as well as the cleavage point for that sequence, are available. For instance, the method of McGeoch, *Virus Res.* 3:271-286 (1985), uses the information from a short N-terminal charged region and a subsequent uncharged region of the complete (uncleaved) protein. The method of von Heinje, *Nucleic Acids Res.* 14:4683-4690 (1986) uses the information from the residues surrounding the cleavage site, typically residues -13 to +2, where +1 indicates the amino terminus of the secreted protein. The accuracy of predicting the cleavage points of known mammalian secretory proteins for each of these methods is in the range of 75-80%. (von Heinje, *supra.*) However, the two methods do not always produce the same predicted cleavage point(s) for a given protein.

In the present case, the deduced amino acid sequence of the secreted polypeptide was analyzed by a computer program called SignalP (Henrik Nielsen et al., *Protein Engineering* 10:1-6 (1997)), which predicts the cellular location of a protein based on the amino acid sequence. As part of this computational prediction of localization, the methods of McGeoch and von Heinje are incorporated.

As one of ordinary skill would appreciate, however, cleavage sites sometimes vary from organism to organism and cannot be predicted with absolute certainty. Accordingly, the present invention provides secreted polypeptides having a sequence shown in SEQ ID NO:2 which have an N-terminus beginning within 5 residues (i.e., + or - 5 residues) of the predicted cleavage point. Similarly, it is also recognized that in some cases, cleavage of the signal sequence from a secreted protein is not entirely uniform, resulting in more than one secreted species. These polypeptides, and the polynucleotides encoding such polypeptides, are contemplated by the present invention.

Moreover, the signal sequence identified by the above analysis may not necessarily predict the naturally occurring signal sequence. For example, the naturally occurring signal sequence may be further upstream from the predicted signal sequence. However, it is likely that the predicted signal sequence will be capable of directing the secreted protein to the ER. Nonetheless, the present invention provides the mature protein produced by expression of the polynucleotide sequence of SEQ ID NO:1 and/or the polynucleotide sequence contained in the cDNA of a deposited clone, in a mammalian cell (e.g., COS cells, as described below). These polypeptides, and the polynucleotides encoding such polypeptides, are contemplated by the present invention.

### Polynucleotide and Polypeptide Variants

5 The present invention is directed to variants of the polynucleotide sequence disclosed in SEQ ID NO:1, the complementary strand thereto, and/or the cDNA sequence contained in a deposited clone.

The present invention also encompasses variants of the polypeptide sequence disclosed in SEQ ID NO:2 and/or encoded by a deposited clone.

10 "Variant" refers to a polynucleotide or polypeptide differing from the TGF alpha HIII polynucleotide or polypeptide, but retaining essential properties thereof. Generally, variants are overall closely similar, and, in many regions, identical to the TGF alpha HIII polynucleotide or polypeptide.

15 The present invention is also directed to nucleic acid molecules which comprise, or alternatively consist of, a nucleotide sequence which is at least 70%, 80%, 85%, 90%, 95%, 96%, 97%, 98% or 99% identical to, for example, the nucleotide coding sequence in SEQ ID NO:1 or the complementary strand thereto, the nucleotide coding sequence contained in a deposited cDNA clone or the complementary strand thereto, a nucleotide sequence encoding the polypeptide of SEQ ID NO:2, a nucleotide sequence encoding the polypeptide encoded by the cDNA contained in a deposited clone, and/or polynucleotide fragments of any of these nucleic acid molecules (e.g., those fragments described herein). Polynucleotides which  
20 hybridize to these nucleic acid molecules under stringent hybridization conditions or lower stringency conditions are also encompassed by the invention, as are polypeptides encoded by these polynucleotides.

25 The present invention is also directed to polypeptides which comprise, or alternatively consist of, an amino acid sequence which is at least 70%, 80%, 85%, 90%, 95%, 96%, 97%, 98%, 99% identical to, for example, the polypeptide sequence shown in SEQ ID NO:2, the polypeptide sequence encoded by the cDNA contained in a deposited clone, and/or polypeptide fragments of any of these polypeptides (e.g., those fragments described herein).

30 By a nucleic acid having a nucleotide sequence at least, for example, 95% "identical" to a reference nucleotide sequence of the present invention, it is intended that the nucleotide sequence of the nucleic acid is identical to the reference sequence except that the nucleotide sequence may include up to five point mutations per each 100 nucleotides of the reference nucleotide sequence encoding the TGF alpha HIII polypeptide. In other words, to obtain a

nucleic acid having a nucleotide sequence at least 95% identical to a reference nucleotide sequence, up to 5% of the nucleotides in the reference sequence may be deleted or substituted with another nucleotide, or a number of nucleotides up to 5% of the total nucleotides in the reference sequence may be inserted into the reference sequence. The query sequence may be an entire sequence shown of SEQ ID NO:1, the ORF (open reading frame), or any fragment specified as described herein.

As a practical matter, whether any particular nucleic acid molecule or polypeptide is at least 80%, 85%, 90%, 95%, 96%, 97%, 98% or 99% identical to a nucleotide sequence of the present invention can be determined conventionally using known computer programs. A preferred method for determining the best overall match between a query sequence (a sequence of the present invention) and a subject sequence, also referred to as a global sequence alignment, can be determined using the FASTDB computer program based on the algorithm of Brutlag et al. (Comp. App. Biosci. (1990) 6:237-245.) In a sequence alignment the query and subject sequences are both DNA sequences. An RNA sequence can be compared by converting U's to T's. The result of said global sequence alignment is in percent identity. Preferred parameters used in a FASTDB alignment of DNA sequences to calculate percent identity are: Matrix=Unitary, k-tuple=4, Mismatch Penalty=1, Joining Penalty=30, Randomization Group Length=0, Cutoff Score=1, Gap Penalty=5, Gap Size Penalty 0.05, Window Size=500 or the length of the subject nucleotide sequence, whichever is shorter.

If the subject sequence is shorter than the query sequence because of 5' or 3' deletions, not because of internal deletions, a manual correction must be made to the results. This is because the FASTDB program does not account for 5' and 3' truncations of the subject sequence when calculating percent identity. For subject sequences truncated at the 5' or 3' ends, relative to the query sequence, the percent identity is corrected by calculating the number of bases of the query sequence that are 5' and 3' of the subject sequence, which are not matched/aligned, as a percent of the total bases of the query sequence. Whether a nucleotide is matched/aligned is determined by results of the FASTDB sequence alignment. This percentage is then subtracted from the percent identity, calculated by the above FASTDB program using the specified parameters, to arrive at a final percent identity score. This corrected score is what is used for the purposes of the present invention. Only bases outside the 5' and 3' bases of the subject sequence, as displayed by the FASTDB alignment,

which are not matched/aligned with the query sequence, are calculated for the purposes of manually adjusting the percent identity score.

For example, a 90 base subject sequence is aligned to a 100 base query sequence to determine percent identity. The deletions occur at the 5' end of the subject sequence and therefore, the FASTDB alignment does not show a matched/alignment of the first 10 bases at 5' end. The 10 unpaired bases represent 10% of the sequence (number of bases at the 5' and 3' ends not matched/total number of bases in the query sequence) so 10% is subtracted from the percent identity score calculated by the FASTDB program. If the remaining 90 bases were perfectly matched the final percent identity would be 90%. In another example, a 90 base subject sequence is compared with a 100 base query sequence. This time the deletions are internal deletions so that there are no bases on the 5' or 3' of the subject sequence which are not matched/aligned with the query. In this case the percent identity calculated by FASTDB is not manually corrected. Once again, only bases 5' and 3' of the subject sequence which are not matched/aligned with the query sequence are manually corrected for. No other manual corrections are to be made for the purposes of the present invention.

By a polypeptide having an amino acid sequence at least, for example, 95% "identical" to a query amino acid sequence of the present invention, it is intended that the amino acid sequence of the subject polypeptide is identical to the query sequence except that the subject polypeptide sequence may include up to five amino acid alterations per each 100 amino acids of the query amino acid sequence. In other words, to obtain a polypeptide having an amino acid sequence at least 95% identical to a query amino acid sequence, up to 5% of the amino acid residues in the subject sequence may be inserted, deleted, (indels) or substituted with another amino acid. These alterations of the reference sequence may occur at the amino or carboxy terminal positions of the reference amino acid sequence or anywhere between those terminal positions, interspersed either individually among residues in the reference sequence or in one or more contiguous groups within the reference sequence.

As a practical matter, whether any particular polypeptide is at least 80%, 85%, 90%, 95%, 96%, 97%, 98% or 99% identical to, for instance, the amino acid sequences of SEQ ID NO:2 or to the amino acid sequence encoded by the cDNA contained in a deposited clone can be determined conventionally using known computer programs. A preferred method for determining the best overall match between a query sequence (a sequence of the present invention) and a subject sequence, also referred to as a global sequence alignment, can be

determined using the FASTDB computer program based on the algorithm of Brutlag et al. (Comp. App. Biosci. 6:237-245(1990)). In a sequence alignment the query and subject sequences are either both nucleotide sequences or both amino acid sequences. The result of said global sequence alignment is in percent identity. Preferred parameters used in a FASTDB amino acid alignment are: Matrix=PAM 0, k-tuple=2, Mismatch Penalty=1, Joining Penalty=20, Randomization Group Length=0, Cutoff Score=1, Window Size=sequence length, Gap Penalty=5, Gap Size Penalty=0.05, Window Size=500 or the length of the subject amino acid sequence, whichever is shorter.

If the subject sequence is shorter than the query sequence due to N- or C-terminal deletions, not because of internal deletions, a manual correction must be made to the results. This is because the FASTDB program does not account for N- and C-terminal truncations of the subject sequence when calculating global percent identity. For subject sequences truncated at the N- and C-termini, relative to the query sequence, the percent identity is corrected by calculating the number of residues of the query sequence that are N- and C-terminal of the subject sequence, which are not matched/aligned with a corresponding subject residue, as a percent of the total bases of the query sequence. Whether a residue is matched/aligned is determined by results of the FASTDB sequence alignment. This percentage is then subtracted from the percent identity, calculated by the above FASTDB program using the specified parameters, to arrive at a final percent identity score. This final percent identity score is what is used for the purposes of the present invention. Only residues to the N- and C-termini of the subject sequence, which are not matched/aligned with the query sequence, are considered for the purposes of manually adjusting the percent identity score. That is, only query residue positions outside the farthest N- and C-terminal residues of the subject sequence.

For example, a 90 amino acid residue subject sequence is aligned with a 100 residue query sequence to determine percent identity. The deletion occurs at the N-terminus of the subject sequence and therefore, the FASTDB alignment does not show a matching/alignment of the first 10 residues at the N-terminus. The 10 unpaired residues represent 10% of the sequence (number of residues at the N- and C- termini not matched/total number of residues in the query sequence) so 10% is subtracted from the percent identity score calculated by the FASTDB program. If the remaining 90 residues were perfectly matched the final percent identity would be 90%. In another example, a 90 residue subject sequence is compared with



a 100 residue query sequence. This time the deletions are internal deletions so there are no residues at the N- or C-termini of the subject sequence which are not matched/aligned with the query. In this case the percent identity calculated by FASTDB is not manually corrected. Once again, only residue positions outside the N- and C-terminal ends of the subject sequence, as displayed in the FASTDB alignment, which are not matched/aligned with the query sequence are manually corrected for. No other manual corrections are to be made for the purposes of the present invention.

The TGF alpha HIII variants may contain alterations in the coding regions, non-coding regions, or both. Especially preferred are polynucleotide variants containing alterations which produce silent substitutions, additions, or deletions, but do not alter the properties or activities of the encoded polypeptide. Nucleotide variants produced by silent substitutions due to the degeneracy of the genetic code are preferred. Moreover, variants in which 5-10, 1-5, or 1-2 amino acids are substituted, deleted, or added in any combination are also preferred. TGF alpha HIII polynucleotide variants can be produced for a variety of reasons, e.g., to optimize codon expression for a particular host (change codons in the human mRNA to those preferred by a bacterial host such as *E. coli*).

Naturally occurring TGF alpha HIII variants are called "allelic variants," and refer to one of several alternate forms of a gene occupying a given locus on a chromosome of an organism. (Genes II, Lewin, B., ed., John Wiley & Sons, New York (1985).) These allelic variants can vary at either the polynucleotide and/or polypeptide level and are included in the present invention. Alternatively, non-naturally occurring variants may be produced by mutagenesis techniques or by direct synthesis.

Using known methods of protein engineering and recombinant DNA technology, variants may be generated to improve or alter the characteristics of the TGF alpha HIII polypeptides. For instance, one or more amino acids can be deleted from the N-terminus or C-terminus of the secreted protein without substantial loss of biological function. The authors of Ron et al., *J. Biol. Chem.* 268: 2984-2988 (1993), reported variant KGF proteins having heparin binding activity even after deleting 3, 8, or 27 amino-terminal amino acid residues. Similarly, Interferon gamma exhibited up to ten times higher activity after deleting 8-10 amino acid residues from the carboxy terminus of this protein. (Dobeli et al., *J. Biotechnology* 7:199-216 (1988).)

Moreover, ample evidence demonstrates that variants often retain a biological activity similar to that of the naturally occurring protein. For example, Gayle and coworkers (J. Biol. Chem 268:22105-22111 (1993)) conducted extensive mutational analysis of human cytokine IL-1a. They used random mutagenesis to generate over 3,500 individual IL-1a mutants that averaged 2.5 amino acid changes per variant over the entire length of the molecule. Multiple mutations were examined at every possible amino acid position. The investigators found that "[m]ost of the molecule could be altered with little effect on either [binding or biological activity]." (See, Abstract.) In fact, only 23 unique amino acid sequences, out of more than 3,500 nucleotide sequences examined, produced a protein that significantly differed in activity from wild-type.

Furthermore, even if deleting one or more amino acids from the N-terminus or C-terminus of a polypeptide results in modification or loss of one or more biological functions, other biological activities may still be retained. For example, the ability of a deletion variant to induce and/or to bind antibodies which recognize the secreted form will likely be retained when less than the majority of the residues of the secreted form are removed from the N-terminus or C-terminus. Whether a particular polypeptide lacking N- or C-terminal residues of a protein retains such immunogenic activities can readily be determined by routine methods described herein and otherwise known in the art.

Thus, the invention further includes TGF alpha HIII polypeptide variants which show substantial biological activity. Such variants include deletions, insertions, inversions, repeats, and substitutions selected according to general rules known in the art so as have little effect on activity.

The present application is directed to nucleic acid molecules at least 90%, 95%, 96%, 97%, 98% or 99% identical to the nucleic acid sequences disclosed herein, (e.g., encoding a polypeptide having the amino acid sequence of an N and/or C terminal deletion disclosed below as m-n of SEQ ID NO:2), irrespective of whether they encode a polypeptide having TGF alpha HIII functional activity. This is because even where a particular nucleic acid molecule does not encode a polypeptide having TGF alpha HIII functional activity, one of skill in the art would still know how to use the nucleic acid molecule, for instance, as a hybridization probe or a polymerase chain reaction (PCR) primer. Uses of the nucleic acid molecules of the present invention that do not encode a polypeptide having TGF alpha HIII functional activity include, inter alia, (1) isolating a TGF alpha HIII gene or allelic or splice

variants thereof in a cDNA library; (2) in situ hybridization (e.g., "FISH") to metaphase chromosomal spreads to provide precise chromosomal location of the TGF alpha HIII gene, as described in Verma et al., Human Chromosomes: A Manual of Basic Techniques, Pergamon Press, New York (1988); and (3) Northern Blot analysis for detecting TGF alpha HIII mRNA expression in specific tissues.

Preferred, however, are nucleic acid molecules having sequences at least 90%, 95%, 96%, 97%, 98% or 99% identical to the nucleic acid sequences disclosed herein, which do, in fact, encode a polypeptide having TGF alpha HIII functional activity. By "a polypeptide having TGF alpha HIII functional activity" is intended polypeptides exhibiting activity similar, but not necessarily identical, to a functional activity of the TGF alpha HIII polypeptides of the present invention (e.g., complete (full-length) TGF alpha HIII, mature TGF alpha HIII and soluble TGF alpha HIII (e.g., having sequences contained in the extracellular domain of TGF alpha HIII) as measured, for example, in a particular immunoassay or biological assay. For example, a TGF alpha HIII functional activity can routinely be measured by determining the ability of a TGF alpha HIII polypeptide to bind a TGF alpha HIII ligand. TGF alpha HIII functional activity may also be measured by determining the ability of a polypeptide, such as cognate ligand which is free or expressed on a cell surface, to induce cells expressing the polypeptide.

Of course, due to the degeneracy of the genetic code, one of ordinary skill in the art will immediately recognize that a large number of the nucleic acid molecules having a sequence at least 90%, 95%, 96%, 97%, 98%, or 99% identical to the nucleic acid sequence of the deposited cDNA, the nucleic acid sequence shown in Figure 1 (SEQ ID NO:1), or fragments thereof, will encode polypeptides "having TGF alpha HIII functional activity." In fact, since degenerate variants of any of these nucleotide sequences all encode the same polypeptide, in many instances, this will be clear to the skilled artisan even without performing the above described comparison assay. It will be further recognized in the art that, for such nucleic acid molecules that are not degenerate variants, a reasonable number will also encode a polypeptide having TGF alpha HIII functional activity. This is because the skilled artisan is fully aware of amino acid substitutions that are either less likely or not likely to significantly effect protein function (e.g., replacing one aliphatic amino acid with a second aliphatic amino acid), as further described below.

For example, guidance concerning how to make phenotypically silent amino acid substitutions is provided in Bowie et al., "Deciphering the Message in Protein Sequences: Tolerance to Amino Acid Substitutions," *Science* 247:1306-1310 (1990), wherein the authors indicate that there are two main strategies for studying the tolerance of an amino acid sequence to change.

The first strategy exploits the tolerance of amino acid substitutions by natural selection during the process of evolution. By comparing amino acid sequences in different species, conserved amino acids can be identified. These conserved amino acids are likely important for protein function. In contrast, the amino acid positions where substitutions have been tolerated by natural selection indicates that these positions are not critical for protein function. Thus, positions tolerating amino acid substitution could be modified while still maintaining biological activity of the protein.

The second strategy uses genetic engineering to introduce amino acid changes at specific positions of a cloned gene to identify regions critical for protein function. For example, site directed mutagenesis or alanine-scanning mutagenesis (introduction of single alanine mutations at every residue in the molecule) can be used. (Cunningham and Wells, *Science* 244:1081-1085 (1989).) The resulting mutant molecules can then be tested for biological activity.

As the authors state, these two strategies have revealed that proteins are surprisingly tolerant of amino acid substitutions. The authors further indicate which amino acid changes are likely to be permissive at certain amino acid positions in the protein. For example, most buried (within the tertiary structure of the protein) amino acid residues require nonpolar side chains, whereas few features of surface side chains are generally conserved. Moreover, tolerated conservative amino acid substitutions involve replacement of the aliphatic or hydrophobic amino acids Ala, Val, Leu and Ile; replacement of the hydroxyl residues Ser and Thr; replacement of the acidic residues Asp and Glu; replacement of the amide residues Asn and Gln, replacement of the basic residues Lys, Arg, and His; replacement of the aromatic residues Phe, Tyr, and Trp, and replacement of the small-sized amino acids Ala, Ser, Thr, Met, and Gly.

For example, site directed changes at the amino acid level of TGF alpha HIII can be made by replacing a particular amino acid with a conservative amino acid. Preferred conservative mutations include: M1 replaced with A, G, I, L, S, T, or V; A2 replaced with G,

I, L, S, T, M, or V; H4 replaced with K, or R; G5 replaced with A, I, L, S, T, M, or V; G7 replaced with A, I, L, S, T, M, or V; S8 replaced with A, G, I, L, T, M, or V; L9 replaced with A, G, I, S, T, M, or V; T10 replaced with A, G, I, L, S, M, or V; T11 replaced with A, G, I, L, S, M, or V; L12 replaced with A, G, I, S, T, M, or V; V13 replaced with A, G, I, L, S, T, or M; W15 replaced with F, or Y; A16 replaced with G, I, L, S, T, M, or V; A17 replaced with G, I, L, S, T, M, or V; A18 replaced with G, I, L, S, T, M, or V; L19 replaced with A, G, I, S, T, M, or V; L20 replaced with A, G, I, S, T, M, or V; L21 replaced with A, G, I, S, T, M, or V; A22 replaced with G, I, L, S, T, M, or V; L23 replaced with A, G, I, S, T, M, or V; G24 replaced with A, I, L, S, T, M, or V; V25 replaced with A, G, I, L, S, T, or M; E26 replaced with D; R27 replaced with H, or K; A28 replaced with G, I, L, S, T, M, or V; L29 replaced with A, G, I, S, T, M, or V; A30 replaced with G, I, L, S, T, M, or V; L31 replaced with A, G, I, S, T, M, or V; E33 replaced with D; I34 replaced with A, G, L, S, T, M, or V; T36 replaced with A, G, I, L, S, M, or V; Q37 replaced with N; G40 replaced with A, I, L, S, T, M, or V; S41 replaced with A, G, I, L, T, M, or V; V42 replaced with A, G, I, L, S, T, or M; Q43 replaced with N; N44 replaced with Q; L45 replaced with A, G, I, S, T, M, or V; S46 replaced with A, G, I, L, T, M, or V; K47 replaced with H, or R; V48 replaced with A, G, I, L, S, T, or M; A49 replaced with G, I, L, S, T, M, or V; F50 replaced with W, or Y; Y51 replaced with F, or W; K53 replaced with H, or R; T54 replaced with A, G, I, L, S, M, or V; T55 replaced with A, G, I, L, S, M, or V; R56 replaced with H, or K; E57 replaced with D; L58 replaced with A, G, I, S, T, M, or V; M59 replaced with A, G, I, L, S, T, or V; L60 replaced with A, G, I, S, T, M, or V; H61 replaced with K, or R; A62 replaced with G, I, L, S, T, M, or V; R63 replaced with H, or K; L66 replaced with A, G, I, S, T, M, or V; N67 replaced with Q; Q68 replaced with N; K69 replaced with H, or R; G70 replaced with A, I, L, S, T, M, or V; T71 replaced with A, G, I, L, S, M, or V; I72 replaced with A, G, L, S, T, M, or V; L73 replaced with A, G, I, S, T, M, or V; G74 replaced with A, I, L, S, T, M, or V; L75 replaced with A, G, I, S, T, M, or V; D76 replaced with E; L77 replaced with A, G, I, S, T, M, or V; Q78 replaced with N; N79 replaced with Q; S81 replaced with A, G, I, L, T, M, or V; L82 replaced with A, G, I, S, T, M, or V; E83 replaced with D; D84 replaced with E; G86 replaced with A, I, L, S, T, M, or V; N88 replaced with Q; F89 replaced with W, or Y; H90 replaced with K, or R; Q91 replaced with N; A92 replaced with G, I, L, S, T, M, or V; H93 replaced with K, or R; T94 replaced with A, G, I, L, S, M, or V; T95 replaced with A, G, I, L, S, M, or V; V96 replaced with A, G, I, L, S, T, or M; I97 replaced with A, G, L, S, T, M, or V; I98

replaced with A, G, L, S, T, M, or V; D99 replaced with E; L100 replaced with A, G, I, S, T, M, or V; Q101 replaced with N; A102 replaced with G, I, L, S, T, M, or V; N103 replaced with Q; L105 replaced with A, G, I, S, T, M, or V; K106 replaced with H, or R; G107 replaced with A, I, L, S, T, M, or V; D108 replaced with E; L109 replaced with A, G, I, S, T, M, or V; A110 replaced with G, I, L, S, T, M, or V; N111 replaced with Q; T112 replaced with A, G, I, L, S, M, or V; F113 replaced with W, or Y; R114 replaced with H, or K; G115 replaced with A, I, L, S, T, M, or V; F116 replaced with W, or Y; T117 replaced with A, G, I, L, S, M, or V; Q118 replaced with N; L119 replaced with A, G, I, S, T, M, or V; Q120 replaced with N; T121 replaced with A, G, I, L, S, M, or V; L122 replaced with A, G, I, S, T, M, or V; I123 replaced with A, G, L, S, T, M, or V; L124 replaced with A, G, I, S, T, M, or V; Q126 replaced with N; H127 replaced with K, or R; V128 replaced with A, G, I, L, S, T, or M; N129 replaced with Q; G132 replaced with A, I, L, S, T, M, or V; G133 replaced with A, I, L, S, T, M, or V; I134 replaced with A, G, L, S, T, M, or V; N135 replaced with Q; A136 replaced with G, I, L, S, T, M, or V; W137 replaced with F, or Y; N138 replaced with Q; T139 replaced with A, G, I, L, S, M, or V; I140 replaced with A, G, L, S, T, M, or V; T141 replaced with A, G, I, L, S, M, or V; S142 replaced with A, G, I, L, T, M, or V; Y143 replaced with F, or W; I144 replaced with A, G, L, S, T, M, or V; D145 replaced with E; N146 replaced with Q; Q147 replaced with N; I148 replaced with A, G, L, S, T, M, or V; Q150 replaced with N; G151 replaced with A, I, L, S, T, M, or V; Q152 replaced with N; K153 replaced with H, or R; N154 replaced with Q; L155 replaced with A, G, I, S, T, M, or V; N157 replaced with Q; N158 replaced with Q; T159 replaced with A, G, I, L, S, M, or V; G160 replaced with A, I, L, S, T, M, or V; D161 replaced with E; E163 replaced with D; M164 replaced with A, G, I, L, S, T, or V; E167 replaced with D; N168 replaced with Q; G169 replaced with A, I, L, S, T, M, or V; S170 replaced with A, G, I, L, T, M, or V; V172 replaced with A, G, I, L, S, T, or M; D174 replaced with E; G175 replaced with A, I, L, S, T, M, or V; G177 replaced with A, I, L, S, T, M, or V; L178 replaced with A, G, I, S, T, M, or V; L179 replaced with A, G, I, S, T, M, or V; Q180 replaced with N; V182 replaced with A, G, I, L, S, T, or M; A184 replaced with G, I, L, S, T, M, or V; D185 replaced with E; G186 replaced with A, I, L, S, T, M, or V; F187 replaced with W, or Y; H188 replaced with K, or R; G189 replaced with A, I, L, S, T, M, or V; Y190 replaced with F, or W; K191 replaced with H, or R; M193 replaced with A, G, I, L, S, T, or V; R194 replaced with H, or K; Q195 replaced with N; G196 replaced with A, I, L, S, T, M, or V; S197 replaced with A, G, I,

L, T, M, or V; F198 replaced with W, or Y; S199 replaced with A, G, I, L, T, M, or V; L200 replaced with A, G, I, S, T, M, or V; L201 replaced with A, G, I, S, T, M, or V; M202 replaced with A, G, I, L, S, T, or V; F203 replaced with W, or Y; F204 replaced with W, or Y; G205 replaced with A, I, L, S, T, M, or V; I206 replaced with A, G, L, S, T, M, or V; L207 replaced with A, G, I, S, T, M, or V; G208 replaced with A, I, L, S, T, M, or V; A209 replaced with G, I, L, S, T, M, or V; T210 replaced with A, G, I, L, S, M, or V; T211 replaced with A, G, I, L, S, M, or V; L212 replaced with A, G, I, S, T, M, or V; S213 replaced with A, G, I, L, T, M, or V; V214 replaced with A, G, I, L, S, T, or M; S215 replaced with A, G, I, L, T, M, or V; I216 replaced with A, G, L, S, T, M, or V; L217 replaced with A, G, I, S, T, M, or V; L218 replaced with A, G, I, S, T, M, or V; W219 replaced with F, or Y; A220 replaced with G, I, L, S, T, M, or V; T221 replaced with A, G, I, L, S, M, or V; Q222 replaced with N; R223 replaced with H, or K; R224 replaced with H, or K; K225 replaced with H, or R; A226 replaced with G, I, L, S, T, M, or V; K227 replaced with H, or R; T228 replaced with A, G, I, L, S, M, or V; S229 replaced with A, G, I, L, T, M, or V.

The resulting constructs can be routinely screened for activities or functions described throughout the specification and known in the art. Preferably, the resulting constructs have an increased and/or a decreased TGF alpha HIII activity or function, while the remaining TGF alpha HIII activities or functions are maintained. More preferably, the resulting constructs have more than one increased and/or decreased TGF alpha HIII activity or function, while the remaining TGF alpha HIII activities or functions are maintained.

Besides conservative amino acid substitution, variants of TGF alpha HIII include (i) substitutions with one or more of the non-conserved amino acid residues, where the substituted amino acid residues may or may not be one encoded by the genetic code, or (ii) substitution with one or more of amino acid residues having a substituent group, or (iii) fusion of the mature polypeptide with another compound, such as a compound to increase the stability and/or solubility of the polypeptide (for example, polyethylene glycol), or (iv) fusion of the polypeptide with additional amino acids, such as, for example, an IgG Fc fusion region peptide, or leader or secretory sequence, or a sequence facilitating purification. Such variant polypeptides are deemed to be within the scope of those skilled in the art from the teachings herein.

For example, TGF alpha HIII polypeptide variants containing amino acid substitutions of charged amino acids with other charged or neutral amino acids may produce proteins with

improved characteristics, such as less aggregation. Aggregation of pharmaceutical formulations both reduces activity and increases clearance due to the aggregate's immunogenic activity. (Pinckard et al., Clin. Exp. Immunol. 2:331-340 (1967); Robbins et al., Diabetes 36: 838-845 (1987); Cleland et al., Crit. Rev. Therapeutic Drug Carrier Systems 10:307-377 (1993).)

For example, preferred non-conservative substitutions of TGF alpha HIII include: M1 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; A2 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; P3 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, A, G, I, L, S, T, M, V, N, Q, F, W, Y, or C; H4 replaced with D, E, A, G, I, L, S, T, M, V, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; G5 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; P6 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, A, G, I, L, S, T, M, V, N, Q, F, W, Y, or C; G7 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; S8 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; L9 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; T10 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; T11 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; L12 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; V13 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; P14 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, A, G, I, L, S, T, M, V, N, Q, F, W, Y, or C; W15 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, A, G, I, L, S, T, M, V, P, or C; A16 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; A17 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; A18 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; L19 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; L20 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; L21 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; A22 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; L23 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; G24 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; V25 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; E26 replaced with H, K, R, A, G, I, L, S, T, M, V, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; R27 replaced with D, E, A, G, I, L, S, T, M, V, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; A28 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; L29 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; A30 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; L31 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; P32 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, A, G, I, L, S, T, M, V, N, Q, F, W, Y, or C; E33 replaced with H, K, R, A, G, I, L, S, T, M, V, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; I34 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; C35 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, A, G, I, L, S, T, M, V, N, Q, F, W, Y, or P; T36 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; Q37 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, A, G, I, L, S, T, M, V, F, W, Y, P, or C; C38 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, A, G, I, L, S, T, M, V, N, Q, F, W, Y, or P; P39 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, A,



G, I, L, S, T, M, V, N, Q, F, W, Y, or C; G40 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; S41 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; V42 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; Q43 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, A, G, I, L, S, T, M, V, F, W, Y, P, or C; N44 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, A, G, I, L, S, T, M, V, F, W, Y, P, or C; L45 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; S46 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; K47 replaced with D, E, A, G, I, L, S, T, M, V, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; V48 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; A49 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; F50 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, A, G, I, L, S, T, M, V, P, or C; Y51 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, A, G, I, L, S, T, M, V, P, or C; C52 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, A, G, I, L, S, T, M, V, N, Q, F, W, Y, or P; K53 replaced with D, E, A, G, I, L, S, T, M, V, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; T54 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; T55 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; R56 replaced with D, E, A, G, I, L, S, T, M, V, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; E57 replaced with H, K, R, A, G, I, L, S, T, M, V, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; L58 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; M59 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; L60 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; H61 replaced with D, E, A, G, I, L, S, T, M, V, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; A62 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; R63 replaced with D, E, A, G, I, L, S, T, M, V, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; C64 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, A, G, I, L, S, T, M, V, N, Q, F, W, Y, or P; C65 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, A, G, I, L, S, T, M, V, N, Q, F, W, Y, or P; L66 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; N67 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, A, G, I, L, S, T, M, V, F, W, Y, P, or C; Q68 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, A, G, I, L, S, T, M, V, F, W, Y, P, or C; K69 replaced with D, E, A, G, I, L, S, T, M, V, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; G70 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; T71 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; I72 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; L73 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; G74 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; L75 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; D76 replaced with H, K, R, A, G, I, L, S, T, M, V, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; L77 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; Q78 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, A, G, I, L, S, T, M, V, F, W, Y, P, or C; N79 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, A, G, I, L, S, T, M, V, F, W, Y, P, or C; C80 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, A, G, I, L, S, T, M, V, N, Q, F, W, Y, or P; S81 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; L82 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; E83 replaced with H, K, R, A, G, I, L, S, T, M, V, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; D84 replaced with H, K, R, A, G, I, L, S, T, M, V, N,

Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; P85 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, A, G, I, L, S, T, M, V, N, Q, F, W, Y, or C; G86 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; P87 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, A, G, I, L, S, T, M, V, N, Q, F, W, Y, or C; N88 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, A, G, I, L, S, T, M, V, F, W, Y, P, or C; F89 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, A, G, I, L, S, T, M, V, P, or C; H90 replaced with D, E, A, G, I, L, S, T, M, V, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; Q91 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, A, G, I, L, S, T, M, V, F, W, Y, P, or C; A92 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; H93 replaced with D, E, A, G, I, L, S, T, M, V, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; T94 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; T95 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; V96 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; I97 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; I98 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; D99 replaced with H, K, R, A, G, I, L, S, T, M, V, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; L100 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; Q101 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, A, G, I, L, S, T, M, V, F, W, Y, P, or C; A102 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; N103 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, A, G, I, L, S, T, M, V, F, W, Y, P, or C; P104 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, A, G, I, L, S, T, M, V, N, Q, F, W, Y, or C; L105 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; K106 replaced with D, E, A, G, I, L, S, T, M, V, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; G107 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; D108 replaced with H, K, R, A, G, I, L, S, T, M, V, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; L109 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; A110 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; N111 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, A, G, I, L, S, T, M, V, F, W, Y, P, or C; T112 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; F113 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, A, G, I, L, S, T, M, V, P, or C; R114 replaced with D, E, A, G, I, L, S, T, M, V, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; G115 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; F116 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, A, G, I, L, S, T, M, V, P, or C; T117 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; Q118 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, A, G, I, L, S, T, M, V, F, W, Y, P, or C; L119 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; Q120 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, A, G, I, L, S, T, M, V, F, W, Y, P, or C; T121 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; L122 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; I123 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; L124 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; P125 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, A, G, I, L, S, T, M, V, N, Q, F, W, Y, or C; Q126 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, A, G, I, L, S, T, M, V, F, W, Y, P, or C; H127 replaced with D, E, A, G, I, L, S, T, M, V, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; V128 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; N129 replaced with D, E, H, K, R,

2025 RELEASE UNDER E.O. 14176

A, G, I, L, S, T, M, V, F, W, Y, P, or C; C130 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, A, G, I, L, S, T, M, V, N, Q, F, W, Y, or P; P131 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, A, G, I, L, S, T, M, V, N, Q, F, W, Y, or C; G132 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; G133 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; I134 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; N135 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, A, G, I, L, S, T, M, V, F, W, Y, P, or C; A136 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; W137 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, A, G, I, L, S, T, M, V, P, or C; N138 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, A, G, I, L, S, T, M, V, F, W, Y, P, or C; T139 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; I140 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; T141 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; S142 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; Y143 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, A, G, I, L, S, T, M, V, P, or C; I144 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; D145 replaced with H, K, R, A, G, I, L, S, T, M, V, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; N146 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, A, G, I, L, S, T, M, V, F, W, Y, P, or C; Q147 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, A, G, I, L, S, T, M, V, F, W, Y, P, or C; I148 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; C149 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, A, G, I, L, S, T, M, V, N, Q, F, W, Y, or P; Q150 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, A, G, I, L, S, T, M, V, F, W, Y, P, or C; G151 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; Q152 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, A, G, I, L, S, T, M, V, F, W, Y, P, or C; K153 replaced with D, E, A, G, I, L, S, T, M, V, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; N154 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, A, G, I, L, S, T, M, V, F, W, Y, P, or C; L155 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; C156 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, A, G, I, L, S, T, M, V, N, Q, F, W, Y, or P; N157 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, A, G, I, L, S, T, M, V, F, W, Y, P, or C; N158 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, A, G, I, L, S, T, M, V, F, W, Y, P, or C; T159 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; G160 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; D161 replaced with H, K, R, A, G, I, L, S, T, M, V, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; P162 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, A, G, I, L, S, T, M, V, N, Q, F, W, Y, or C; E163 replaced with H, K, R, A, G, I, L, S, T, M, V, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; M164 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; C165 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, A, G, I, L, S, T, M, V, N, Q, F, W, Y, or P; P166 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, A, G, I, L, S, T, M, V, N, Q, F, W, Y, or C; E167 replaced with H, K, R, A, G, I, L, S, T, M, V, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; N168 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, A, G, I, L, S, T, M, V, F, W, Y, P, or C; G169 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; S170 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; C171 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, A, G, I, L, S, T, M, V, N, Q, F, W, Y, or P; V172 replaced with

D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; P173 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, A, G, I, L, S, T, M, V, N, Q, F, W, Y, or C; D174 replaced with H, K, R, A, G, I, L, S, T, M, V, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; G175 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; P176 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, A, G, I, L, S, T, M, V, N, Q, F, W, Y, or C; G177 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; L178 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; L179 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; Q180 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, A, G, I, L, S, T, M, V, F, W, Y, P, or C; C181 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, A, G, I, L, S, T, M, V, N, Q, F, W, Y, or P; V182 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; C183 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, A, G, I, L, S, T, M, V, N, Q, F, W, Y, or P; A184 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; D185 replaced with H, K, R, A, G, I, L, S, T, M, V, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; G186 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; F187 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, A, G, I, L, S, T, M, V, P, or C; H188 replaced with D, E, A, G, I, L, S, T, M, V, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; G189 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; Y190 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, A, G, I, L, S, T, M, V, P, or C; K191 replaced with D, E, A, G, I, L, S, T, M, V, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; C192 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, A, G, I, L, S, T, M, V, N, Q, F, W, Y, or P; M193 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; R194 replaced with D, E, A, G, I, L, S, T, M, V, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; Q195 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, A, G, I, L, S, T, M, V, F, W, Y, P, or C; G196 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; S197 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; F198 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, A, G, I, L, S, T, M, V, P, or C; S199 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; L200 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; L201 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; M202 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; F203 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, A, G, I, L, S, T, M, V, P, or C; F204 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, A, G, I, L, S, T, M, V, P, or C; G205 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; I206 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; L207 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; G208 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; A209 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; T210 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; T211 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; L212 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; S213 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; V214 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; S215 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; I216 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; L217 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; L218

2025 RELEASE UNDER E.O. 14176

replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; W219 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, A, G, I, L, S, T, M, V, P, or C; A220 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; T221 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; Q222 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, A, G, I, L, S, T, M, V, F, W, Y, P, or C; R223 replaced with D, E, A, G, I, L, S, T, M, V, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; R224 replaced with D, E, A, G, I, L, S, T, M, V, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; K225 replaced with D, E, A, G, I, L, S, T, M, V, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; A226 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; K227 replaced with D, E, A, G, I, L, S, T, M, V, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; T228 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C; S229 replaced with D, E, H, K, R, N, Q, F, W, Y, P, or C.

The resulting constructs can be routinely screened for activities or functions described throughout the specification and known in the art. Preferably, the resulting constructs have an increased and/or decreased TGF alpha HIII activity or function, while the remaining TGF alpha HIII activities or functions are maintained. More preferably, the resulting constructs have more than one increased and/or decreased TGF alpha HIII activity or function, while the remaining TGF alpha HIII activities or functions are maintained.

Additionally, more than one amino acid (e.g., 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9 and 10) can be replaced with the substituted amino acids as described above (either conservative or nonconservative). The substituted amino acids can occur in the full length, mature, or proprotein form of TGF alpha HIII protein, as well as the N- and C- terminal deletion mutants, having the general formula m-n, listed below.

A further embodiment of the invention relates to a polypeptide which comprises the amino acid sequence of a TGF alpha HIII polypeptide having an amino acid sequence which contains at least one amino acid substitution, but not more than 50 amino acid substitutions, even more preferably, not more than 40 amino acid substitutions, still more preferably, not more than 30 amino acid substitutions, and still even more preferably, not more than 20 amino acid substitutions. Of course, in order of ever-increasing preference, it is highly preferable for a polypeptide to have an amino acid sequence which comprises the amino acid sequence of a TGF alpha HIII polypeptide, which contains at least one, but not more than 10, 9, 8, 7, 6, 5, 4, 3, 2 or 1 amino acid substitutions. In specific embodiments, the number of additions, substitutions, and/or deletions in the amino acid sequence of Figure 1 or fragments thereof (e.g., the mature form and/or other fragments described herein), is 1-5, 5-10, 5-25, 5-50, 10-50 or 50-150, conservative amino acid substitutions are preferable.

### Polynucleotide and Polypeptide Fragments

The present invention is also directed to polynucleotide fragments of the polynucleotides of the invention. In the present invention, a "polynucleotide fragment" refers to a short polynucleotide having a nucleic acid sequence which: is a portion of that contained in a deposited clone, or encoding the polypeptide encoded by the cDNA in a deposited clone; is a portion of that shown in SEQ ID NO:1 or the complementary strand thereto, or is a portion of a polynucleotide sequence encoding the polypeptide of SEQ ID NO:2. The nucleotide fragments of the invention are preferably at least about 15 nt, and more preferably at least about 20 nt, still more preferably at least about 30 nt, and even more preferably, at least about 40 nt, at least about 50 nt, at least about 75 nt, or at least about 150 nt in length. A fragment "at least 20 nt in length," for example, is intended to include 20 or more contiguous bases from the cDNA sequence contained in a deposited clone or the nucleotide sequence shown in SEQ ID NO:1. In this context "about" includes the particularly recited value, a value larger or smaller by several (5, 4, 3, 2, or 1) nucleotides, at either terminus or at both termini. These nucleotide fragments have uses that include, but are not limited to, as diagnostic probes and primers as discussed herein. Of course, larger fragments (e.g., 50, 150, 500, 600, 2000 nucleotides) are preferred.

Moreover, representative examples of polynucleotide fragments of the invention, include, for example, fragments comprising, or alternatively consisting of, a sequence from about nucleotide number 1-50, 51-100, 101-150, 151-200, 201-250, 251-300, 301-350, 351-400, 401-450, 451-500, 501-550, 551-600, 651-700, 701-750, 751-800, 800-850, 851-900, 901-950, 951-1000, 1001-1050, 1051-1100, 1101-1150, 1151-1200, 1201-1250, 1251-1300, 1301-1350, 1351-1400, 1401-1450, 1451-1500, 1501-1550, 1551-1600, 1601-1650, 1651-1700, 1701-1750, 1751-1800, 1801-1850, 1851-1900, 1901-1950, 1951-2000, or 2001 to the end of SEQ ID NO:1, or the complementary strand thereto, or the cDNA contained in the deposited clone. In this context "about" includes the particularly recited ranges, and ranges larger or smaller by several (5, 4, 3, 2, or 1) nucleotides, at either terminus or at both termini. Preferably, these fragments encode a polypeptide which has biological activity. More preferably, these polynucleotides can be used as probes or primers as discussed herein. Polynucleotides which hybridize to these nucleic acid molecules under stringent hybridization conditions or lower stringency conditions are also encompassed by the invention, as are

polypeptides encoded by these polynucleotides. In the present invention, a "polypeptide fragment" refers to an amino acid sequence which is a portion of that contained in SEQ ID NO:2 or encoded by the cDNA contained in the deposited clone. Protein (polypeptide) fragments may be "free-standing," or comprised within a larger polypeptide of which the fragment forms a part or region, most preferably as a single continuous region. Representative examples of polypeptide fragments of the invention, include, for example, fragments comprising, or alternatively consisting of, from about amino acid number 1-20, 21-40, 41-60, 61-80, 81-100, 102-120, 121-140, 141-160, or 161 to the end of the coding region. Moreover, polypeptide fragments can be about 20, 30, 40, 50, 60, 70, 80, 90, 100, 110, 120, 130, 140, or 150 amino acids in length. In this context "about" includes the particularly recited ranges or values, and ranges or values larger or smaller by several (5, 4, 3, 2, or 1) amino acids, at either extreme or at both extremes. Polynucleotides encoding these polypeptides are also encompassed by the invention.

Even if deletion of one or more amino acids from the N-terminus of a protein results in modification or loss of one or more biological functions of the protein, other functional activities (e.g., biological activities, ability to multimerize, ability to bind TGF alpha HIII ligand) may still be retained. For example, the ability of shortened TGF alpha HIII muteins to induce and/or bind to antibodies which recognize the complete or mature forms of the polypeptides generally will be retained when less than the majority of the residues of the complete or mature polypeptide are removed from the N-terminus. Whether a particular polypeptide lacking N-terminal residues of a complete polypeptide retains such immunologic activities can readily be determined by routine methods described herein and otherwise known in the art. It is not unlikely that an TGF alpha HIII mutein with a large number of deleted N-terminal amino acid residues may retain some biological or immunogenic activities. In fact, peptides composed of as few as six TGF alpha HIII amino acid residues may often evoke an immune response.

Preferred polypeptide fragments include the secreted protein as well as the mature form. Further preferred polypeptide fragments include the secreted protein or the mature form having a continuous series of deleted residues from the amino or the carboxy terminus, or both. For example, any number of amino acids,

Accordingly, polypeptide fragments include the secreted TGF alpha HIII protein as well as the mature form. Further preferred polypeptide fragments include the secreted TGF

alpha HIII protein or the mature form having a continuous series of deleted residues from the amino or the carboxy terminus, or both. For example, any number of amino acids, ranging from 1-60, can be deleted from the amino terminus of either the secreted TGF alpha HIII polypeptide or the mature form. Similarly, any number of amino acids, ranging from 1-30, can be deleted from the carboxy terminus of the secreted TGF alpha HIII protein or mature form. Furthermore, any combination of the above amino and carboxy terminus deletions are preferred. Similarly, polynucleotides encoding these polypeptide fragments are also preferred.

Particularly, N-terminal deletions of the TGF alpha HIII polypeptide can be described by the general formula m-229, where m is an integer from 2 to 223, where m corresponds to the position of the amino acid residue identified in SEQ ID NO:2. More in particular, the invention provides polynucleotides encoding polypeptides comprising, or alternatively consisting of, the amino acid sequence of residues of: A-2 to S-229; P-3 to S-229; H-4 to S-229; G-5 to S-229; P-6 to S-229; G-7 to S-229; S-8 to S-229; L-9 to S-229; T-10 to S-229; T-11 to S-229; L-12 to S-229; V-13 to S-229; P-14 to S-229; W-15 to S-229; A-16 to S-229; A-17 to S-229; A-18 to S-229; L-19 to S-229; L-20 to S-229; L-21 to S-229; A-22 to S-229; L-23 to S-229; G-24 to S-229; V-25 to S-229; E-26 to S-229; R-27 to S-229; A-28 to S-229; L-29 to S-229; A-30 to S-229; L-31 to S-229; P-32 to S-229; E-33 to S-229; I-34 to S-229; C-35 to S-229; T-36 to S-229; Q-37 to S-229; C-38 to S-229; P-39 to S-229; G-40 to S-229; S-41 to S-229; V-42 to S-229; Q-43 to S-229; N-44 to S-229; L-45 to S-229; S-46 to S-229; K-47 to S-229; V-48 to S-229; A-49 to S-229; F-50 to S-229; Y-51 to S-229; C-52 to S-229; K-53 to S-229; T-54 to S-229; T-55 to S-229; R-56 to S-229; E-57 to S-229; L-58 to S-229; M-59 to S-229; L-60 to S-229; H-61 to S-229; A-62 to S-229; R-63 to S-229; C-64 to S-229; C-65 to S-229; L-66 to S-229; N-67 to S-229; Q-68 to S-229; K-69 to S-229; G-70 to S-229; T-71 to S-229; I-72 to S-229; L-73 to S-229; G-74 to S-229; L-75 to S-229; D-76 to S-229; L-77 to S-229; Q-78 to S-229; N-79 to S-229; C-80 to S-229; S-81 to S-229; L-82 to S-229; E-83 to S-229; D-84 to S-229; P-85 to S-229; G-86 to S-229; P-87 to S-229; N-88 to S-229; F-89 to S-229; H-90 to S-229; Q-91 to S-229; A-92 to S-229; H-93 to S-229; T-94 to S-229; T-95 to S-229; V-96 to S-229; I-97 to S-229; I-98 to S-229; D-99 to S-229; L-100 to S-229; Q-101 to S-229; A-102 to S-229; N-103 to S-229; P-104 to S-229; L-105 to S-229; K-106 to S-229; G-107 to S-229; D-108 to S-229; L-109 to S-229; A-110 to S-229; N-111 to S-229; T-112 to S-229; F-113 to S-229; R-114 to S-229; G-115 to S-229; F-116 to S-229; T-117 to S-229; Q-118 to S-229; L-119 to S-229; Q-120 to S-229; T-121 to S-229; L-122 to S-229; I-123 to S-



229; L-124 to S-229; P-125 to S-229; Q-126 to S-229; H-127 to S-229; V-128 to S-229; N-129 to S-229; C-130 to S-229; P-131 to S-229; G-132 to S-229; G-133 to S-229; I-134 to S-229; N-135 to S-229; A-136 to S-229; W-137 to S-229; N-138 to S-229; T-139 to S-229; I-140 to S-229; T-141 to S-229; S-142 to S-229; Y-143 to S-229; I-144 to S-229; D-145 to S-229; N-146 to S-229; Q-147 to S-229; I-148 to S-229; C-149 to S-229; Q-150 to S-229; G-151 to S-229; Q-152 to S-229; K-153 to S-229; N-154 to S-229; L-155 to S-229; C-156 to S-229; N-157 to S-229; N-158 to S-229; T-159 to S-229; G-160 to S-229; D-161 to S-229; P-162 to S-229; E-163 to S-229; M-164 to S-229; C-165 to S-229; P-166 to S-229; E-167 to S-229; N-168 to S-229; G-169 to S-229; S-170 to S-229; C-171 to S-229; V-172 to S-229; P-173 to S-229; D-174 to S-229; G-175 to S-229; P-176 to S-229; G-177 to S-229; L-178 to S-229; L-179 to S-229; Q-180 to S-229; C-181 to S-229; V-182 to S-229; C-183 to S-229; A-184 to S-229; D-185 to S-229; G-186 to S-229; F-187 to S-229; H-188 to S-229; G-189 to S-229; Y-190 to S-229; K-191 to S-229; C-192 to S-229; M-193 to S-229; R-194 to S-229; Q-195 to S-229; G-196 to S-229; S-197 to S-229; F-198 to S-229; S-199 to S-229; L-200 to S-229; L-201 to S-229; M-202 to S-229; F-203 to S-229; F-204 to S-229; G-205 to S-229; I-206 to S-229; L-207 to S-229; G-208 to S-229; A-209 to S-229; T-210 to S-229; T-211 to S-229; L-212 to S-229; S-213 to S-229; V-214 to S-229; S-215 to S-229; I-216 to S-229; L-217 to S-229; L-218 to S-229; W-219 to S-229; A-220 to S-229; T-221 to S-229; Q-222 to S-229; R-223 to S-229; and/or R-224 to S-229 of SEQ ID NO:2. Polynucleotides encoding these polypeptides are also encompassed by the invention.

Also as mentioned above, even if deletion of one or more amino acids from the C-terminus of a protein results in modification or loss of one or more biological functions of the protein, other functional activities (e.g., biological activities, ability to multimerize, ability to bind TGF alpha HIII ligand) may still be retained. For example the ability of the shortened TGF-alpha HIII mutein to induce and/or bind to antibodies which recognize the complete or mature forms of the polypeptide generally will be retained when less than the majority of the residues of the complete or mature polypeptide are removed from the C-terminus. Whether a particular polypeptide lacking C-terminal residues of a complete polypeptide retains such immunologic activities can readily be determined by routine methods described herein and otherwise known in the art. It is not unlikely that an TGF alpha HIII mutein with a large number of deleted C-terminal amino acid residues may retain

what legend?

some biological or immunogenic activities. In fact, peptides composed of as few as six TGF alpha HIII amino acid residues may often evoke an immune response.

Accordingly, the present invention further provides polypeptides having one or more residues deleted from the carboxy terminus of the amino acid sequence of the TGF alpha HIII polypeptide shown in Figure 1 (SEQ ID NO:2), as described by the general formula 1-n, where n is an integer from 6 to 229, where n corresponds to the position of amino acid residue identified in SEQ ID NO:2. More in particular, the invention provides polynucleotides encoding polypeptides comprising, or alternatively consisting of, the amino acid sequence of residues of: E-26 to T-228; E-26 to K-227; E-26 to A-226; E-26 to K-225; E-26 to R-224; E-26 to R-223; E-26 to Q-222; E-26 to T-221; E-26 to A-220; E-26 to W-219; E-26 to L-218; E-26 to L-217; E-26 to I-216; E-26 to S-215; E-26 to V-214; E-26 to S-213; E-26 to L-212; E-26 to T-211; E-26 to T-210; E-26 to A-209; E-26 to G-208; E-26 to L-207; E-26 to I-206; E-26 to G-205; E-26 to F-204; E-26 to F-203; E-26 to M-202; E-26 to L-201; E-26 to L-200; E-26 to S-199; E-26 to F-198; E-26 to S-197; E-26 to G-196; E-26 to Q-195; E-26 to R-194; E-26 to M-193; E-26 to C-192; E-26 to K-191; E-26 to Y-190; E-26 to G-189; E-26 to H-188; E-26 to F-187; E-26 to G-186; E-26 to D-185; E-26 to A-184; E-26 to C-183; E-26 to V-182; E-26 to C-181; E-26 to Q-180; E-26 to L-179; E-26 to L-178; E-26 to G-177; E-26 to P-176; E-26 to G-175; E-26 to D-174; E-26 to P-173; E-26 to V-172; E-26 to C-171; E-26 to S-170; E-26 to G-169; E-26 to N-168; E-26 to E-167; E-26 to P-166; E-26 to C-165; E-26 to M-164; E-26 to E-163; E-26 to P-162; E-26 to D-161; E-26 to G-160; E-26 to T-159; E-26 to N-158; E-26 to N-157; E-26 to C-156; E-26 to L-155; E-26 to N-154; E-26 to K-153; E-26 to Q-152; E-26 to G-151; E-26 to Q-150; E-26 to C-149; E-26 to I-148; E-26 to Q-147; E-26 to N-146; E-26 to D-145; E-26 to I-144; E-26 to Y-143; E-26 to S-142; E-26 to T-141; E-26 to I-140; E-26 to T-139; E-26 to N-138; E-26 to W-137; E-26 to A-136; E-26 to N-135; E-26 to I-134; E-26 to G-133; E-26 to G-132; E-26 to P-131; E-26 to C-130; E-26 to N-129; E-26 to V-128; E-26 to H-127; E-26 to Q-126; E-26 to P-125; E-26 to L-124; E-26 to I-123; E-26 to L-122; E-26 to T-121; E-26 to Q-120; E-26 to L-119; E-26 to Q-118; E-26 to T-117; E-26 to F-116; E-26 to G-115; E-26 to R-114; E-26 to F-113; E-26 to T-112; E-26 to N-111; E-26 to A-110; E-26 to L-109; E-26 to D-108; E-26 to G-107; E-26 to K-106; E-26 to L-105; E-26 to P-104; E-26 to N-103; E-26 to A-102; E-26 to Q-101; E-26 to L-100; E-26 to D-99; E-26 to I-98; E-26 to I-97; E-26 to V-96; E-26 to T-95; E-26 to T-94; E-26 to H-93; E-26 to A-92; E-26 to Q-91; E-26 to H-90; E-26 to F-89;

E-26 to N-88; E-26 to P-87; E-26 to G-86; E-26 to P-85; E-26 to D-84; E-26 to E-83; E-26 to L-82; E-26 to S-81; E-26 to C-80; E-26 to N-79; E-26 to Q-78; E-26 to L-77; E-26 to D-76; E-26 to L-75; E-26 to G-74; E-26 to L-73; E-26 to I-72; E-26 to T-71; E-26 to G-70; E-26 to K-69; E-26 to Q-68; E-26 to N-67; E-26 to L-66; E-26 to C-65; E-26 to C-64; E-26 to R-63; E-26 to A-62; E-26 to H-61; E-26 to L-60; E-26 to M-59; E-26 to L-58; E-26 to E-57; E-26 to R-56; E-26 to T-55; E-26 to T-54; E-26 to K-53; E-26 to C-52; E-26 to Y-51; E-26 to F-50; E-26 to A-49; E-26 to V-48; E-26 to K-47; E-26 to S-46; E-26 to L-45; E-26 to N-44; E-26 to Q-43; E-26 to V-42; E-26 to S-41; E-26 to G-40; E-26 to P-39; E-26 to C-38; E-26 to Q-37; E-26 to T-36; E-26 to C-35; E-26 to I-34; E-26 to E-33; and/or E-26 to P-32 of SEQ ID NO:2. Polynucleotides encoding these polypeptides are also encompassed by the invention.

Moreover, a signal sequence may be added to these C-terminal constructs. For example, amino acids 1-25 of SEQ ID NO:2, amino acids 2-25 of SEQ ID NO:2, amino acids 3-25 of SEQ ID NO:2, amino acids 4-25 of SEQ ID NO:2, amino acids 5-25 of SEQ ID NO:2, amino acids 6-25 of SEQ ID NO:2, amino acids 7-25 of SEQ ID NO:2, amino acids 8-25 of SEQ ID NO:2, amino acids 9-25 of SEQ ID NO:2, amino acids 10-25 of SEQ ID NO:2, amino acids 11-25 of SEQ ID NO:2, amino acids 12-25 of SEQ ID NO:2, amino acids 13-25 of SEQ ID NO:2, amino acids 14-25 of SEQ ID NO:2, amino acids 15-25 of SEQ ID NO:2, amino acids 16-25 of SEQ ID NO:2, amino acids 17-25 of SEQ ID NO:2, amino acids 18-25 of SEQ ID NO:2, amino acids 19-25 of SEQ ID NO:2, amino acids 20-25 of SEQ ID NO:2, amino acids 21-25 of SEQ ID NO:2, amino acids 22-25 of SEQ ID NO:2, amino acids 23-25 of SEQ ID NO:2, amino acids 24-25 of SEQ ID NO:2, or amino acid 25 of SEQ ID NO:2 can be added to the N-terminus of each C-terminal constructs listed above.

In addition, any of the above listed N- or C-terminal deletions can be combined to produce a N- and C-terminal deleted TGF alpha HIII polypeptide. The invention also provides polypeptides having one or more amino acids deleted from both the amino and the carboxyl termini, which may be described generally as having residues m-n of SEQ ID NO:2, where n and m are integers as described above. Polynucleotides encoding these polypeptides are also encompassed by the invention.

Also included are a nucleotide sequence encoding a polypeptide consisting of a portion of the complete TGF alpha HIII amino acid sequence encoded by the cDNA clone contained in ATCC Deposit No. 97342, where this portion excludes any integer of amino

acid residues from 1 to about 228 amino acids from the amino terminus of the complete amino acid sequence encoded by the cDNA clone contained in ATCC Deposit No. 97342, or any integer of amino acid residues from 1 to about 228 amino acids from the carboxy terminus, or any combination of the above amino terminal and carboxy terminal deletions, of the complete amino acid sequence encoded by the cDNA clone contained in ATCC Deposit No. 97342. Polynucleotides encoding all of the above deletion mutant polypeptide forms also are provided.

The present application is also directed to proteins containing polypeptides at least 90%, 95%, 96%, 97%, 98% or 99% identical to the TGF alpha HIII polypeptide sequence set forth herein m-n. In preferred embodiments, the application is directed to proteins containing polypeptides at least 90%, 95%, 96%, 97%, 98% or 99% identical to polypeptides having the amino acid sequence of the specific TGF alpha HIII N- and C-terminal deletions recited herein. Polynucleotides encoding these polypeptides are also encompassed by the invention.

Additional preferred polypeptide fragments comprise, or alternatively consist of, the amino acid sequence of residues: M-1 to W-15; A-2 to A-16; P-3 to A-17; H-4 to A-18; G-5 to L-19; P-6 to L-20; G-7 to L-21; S-8 to A-22; L-9 to L-23; T-10 to G-24; T-11 to V-25; L-12 to E-26; V-13 to R-27; P-14 to A-28; W-15 to L-29; A-16 to A-30; A-17 to L-31; A-18 to P-32; L-19 to E-33; L-20 to I-34; L-21 to C-35; A-22 to T-36; L-23 to Q-37; G-24 to C-38; V-25 to P-39; E-26 to G-40; R-27 to S-41; A-28 to V-42; L-29 to Q-43; A-30 to N-44; L-31 to L-45; P-32 to S-46; E-33 to K-47; I-34 to V-48; C-35 to A-49; T-36 to F-50; Q-37 to Y-51; C-38 to C-52; P-39 to K-53; G-40 to T-54; S-41 to T-55; V-42 to R-56; Q-43 to E-57; N-44 to L-58; L-45 to M-59; S-46 to L-60; K-47 to H-61; V-48 to A-62; A-49 to R-63; F-50 to C-64; Y-51 to C-65; C-52 to L-66; K-53 to N-67; T-54 to Q-68; T-55 to K-69; R-56 to G-70; E-57 to T-71; L-58 to I-72; M-59 to L-73; L-60 to G-74; H-61 to L-75; A-62 to D-76; R-63 to L-77; C-64 to Q-78; C-65 to N-79; L-66 to C-80; N-67 to S-81; Q-68 to L-82; K-69 to E-83; G-70 to D-84; T-71 to P-85; I-72 to G-86; L-73 to P-87; G-74 to N-88; L-75 to F-89; D-76 to H-90; L-77 to Q-91; Q-78 to A-92; N-79 to H-93; C-80 to T-94; S-81 to T-95; L-82 to V-96; E-83 to I-97; D-84 to I-98; P-85 to D-99; G-86 to L-100; P-87 to Q-101; N-88 to A-102; F-89 to N-103; H-90 to P-104; Q-91 to L-105; A-92 to K-106; H-93 to G-107; T-94 to D-108; T-95 to L-109; V-96 to A-110; I-97 to N-111; I-98 to T-112; D-99 to F-113; L-100 to R-114; Q-101 to G-115; A-102 to F-116; N-103 to T-117; P-104 to Q-118; L-105 to L-119; K-106 to Q-120; G-107 to T-121; D-108 to L-122; L-109 to I-123; A-110 to L-124; N-111 to P-125; T-

112 to Q-126; F-113 to H-127; R-114 to V-128; G-115 to N-129; F-116 to C-130; T-117 to P-131; Q-118 to G-132; L-119 to G-133; Q-120 to I-134; T-121 to N-135; L-122 to A-136; I-123 to W-137; L-124 to N-138; P-125 to T-139; Q-126 to I-140; H-127 to T-141; V-128 to S-142; N-129 to Y-143; C-130 to I-144; P-131 to D-145; G-132 to N-146; G-133 to Q-147; I-134 to I-148; N-135 to C-149; A-136 to Q-150; W-137 to G-151; N-138 to Q-152; T-139 to K-153; I-140 to N-154; T-141 to L-155; S-142 to C-156; Y-143 to N-157; I-144 to N-158; D-145 to T-159; N-146 to G-160; Q-147 to D-161; I-148 to P-162; C-149 to E-163; Q-150 to M-164; G-151 to C-165; Q-152 to P-166; K-153 to E-167; N-154 to N-168; L-155 to G-169; C-156 to S-170; N-157 to C-171; N-158 to V-172; T-159 to P-173; G-160 to D-174; D-161 to G-175; P-162 to P-176; E-163 to G-177; M-164 to L-178; C-165 to L-179; P-166 to Q-180; E-167 to C-181; N-168 to V-182; G-169 to C-183; S-170 to A-184; C-171 to D-185; V-172 to G-186; P-173 to F-187; D-174 to H-188; G-175 to G-189; P-176 to Y-190; G-177 to K-191; L-178 to C-192; L-179 to M-193; Q-180 to R-194; C-181 to Q-195; V-182 to G-196; C-183 to S-197; A-184 to F-198; D-185 to S-199; G-186 to L-200; F-187 to L-201; H-188 to M-202; G-189 to F-203; Y-190 to F-204; K-191 to G-205; C-192 to I-206; M-193 to L-207; R-194 to G-208; Q-195 to A-209; G-196 to T-210; S-197 to T-211; F-198 to L-212; S-199 to S-213; L-200 to V-214; L-201 to S-215; M-202 to I-216; F-203 to L-217; F-204 to L-218; G-205 to W-219; I-206 to A-220; L-207 to T-221; G-208 to Q-222; A-209 to R-223; T-210 to R-224; T-211 to K-225; L-212 to A-226; S-213 to K-227; V-214 to T-228; S-215 to S-229 of SEQ ID NO:2. These polypeptide fragments may retain the biological activity of TGF alpha HIII polypeptides of the invention and/or may be useful to generate or screen for antibodies, as described further below. Polynucleotides encoding these polypeptide fragments are also encompassed by the invention.

Preferably, the polynucleotide fragments of the invention encode a polypeptide which demonstrates a TGF alpha HIII functional activity. By a polypeptide demonstrating a TGF alpha HIII "functional activity" is meant, a polypeptide capable of displaying one or more known functional activities associated with a full-length (complete) TGF alpha HIII protein. Such functional activities include, but are not limited to, biological activity, antigenicity [ability to bind (or compete with a TGF alpha HIII polypeptide for binding) to an anti-TGF alpha HIII antibody], immunogenicity (ability to generate antibody which binds to a TGF alpha HIII polypeptide), ability to form multimers with TGF alpha HIII polypeptides of the invention, and ability to bind to a receptor or ligand for a TGF alpha HIII polypeptide.

The functional activity of TGF alpha HIII polypeptides, and fragments, variants derivatives, and analogs thereof, can be assayed by various methods.

For example, in one embodiment where one is assaying for the ability to bind or compete with full-length TGF alpha HIII polypeptide for binding to anti-TGF alpha HIII antibody, various immunoassays known in the art can be used, including but not limited to, competitive and non-competitive assay systems using techniques such as radioimmunoassays, ELISA (enzyme linked immunosorbent assay), "sandwich" immunoassays, immunoradiometric assays, gel diffusion precipitation reactions, immunodiffusion assays, in situ immunoassays (using colloidal gold, enzyme or radioisotope labels, for example), western blots, precipitation reactions, agglutination assays (e.g., gel agglutination assays, hemagglutination assays), complement fixation assays, immunofluorescence assays, protein A assays, and immunoelectrophoresis assays, etc. In one embodiment, antibody binding is detected by detecting a label on the primary antibody. In another embodiment, the primary antibody is detected by detecting binding of a secondary antibody or reagent to the primary antibody. In a further embodiment, the secondary antibody is labeled. Many means are known in the art for detecting binding in an immunoassay and are within the scope of the present invention.

In another embodiment, where a TGF alpha HIII ligand is identified, or the ability of a polypeptide fragment, variant or derivative of the invention to multimerize is being evaluated, binding can be assayed, e.g., by means well-known in the art, such as, for example, reducing and non-reducing gel chromatography, protein affinity chromatography, and affinity blotting. See generally, Phizicky, E., et al., 1995, Microbiol. Rev. 59:94-123. In another embodiment, physiological correlates of TGF alpha HIII binding to its substrates (signal transduction) can be assayed.

In addition, assays described herein (see Examples) and otherwise known in the art may routinely be applied to measure the ability of TGF alpha HIII polypeptides and fragments, variants derivatives and analogs thereof to elicit TGF alpha HIII related biological activity (either in vitro or in vivo). Other methods will be known to the skilled artisan and are within the scope of the invention.

Among the especially preferred fragments of the invention are fragments characterized by structural or functional attributes of TGF alpha HIII. Such fragments include amino acid residues that comprise alpha-helix and alpha-helix forming regions

(“alpha-regions”), beta-sheet and beta-sheet-forming regions (“beta-regions”), turn and turn-forming regions (“turn-regions”), coil and coil-forming regions (“coil-regions”), hydrophilic regions, hydrophobic regions, alpha amphipathic regions, beta amphipathic regions, surface forming regions, and high antigenic index regions (i.e., containing four or more contiguous amino acids having an antigenic index of greater than or equal to 1.5, as identified using the default parameters of the Jameson-Wolf program) of complete (i.e., full-length) TGF alpha HIII (SEQ ID NO:2). Certain preferred regions are those set out in Figure 3 and include, but are not limited to, regions of the aforementioned types identified by analysis of the amino acid sequence depicted in Figure 1 (SEQ ID NO:2), such preferred regions include; Garnier-  
 5 Robson predicted alpha-regions, beta-regions, turn-regions, and coil-regions; Chou-Fasman predicted alpha-regions, beta-regions, turn-regions, and coil-regions; Kyte-Doolittle predicted hydrophilic and hydrophobic regions; Eisenberg alpha and beta amphipathic regions; Emini surface-forming regions; and Jameson-Wolf high antigenic index regions, as predicted using the default parameters of these computer programs. Polynucleotides encoding these  
 10 polypeptides are also encompassed by the invention.

In additional embodiments, the polynucleotides of the invention encode functional attributes of TGF alpha HIII. Preferred embodiments of the invention in this regard include fragments that comprise alpha-helix and alpha-helix forming regions (“alpha-regions”), beta-sheet and beta-sheet forming regions (“beta-regions”), turn and turn-forming regions  
 20 (“turn-regions”), coil and coil-forming regions (“coil-regions”), hydrophilic regions, hydrophobic regions, alpha amphipathic regions, beta amphipathic regions, flexible regions, surface-forming regions and high antigenic index regions of TGF alpha HIII.

The data representing the structural or functional attributes of TGF alpha HIII set forth in Figure 1 and/or Table I, as described above, was generated using the various modules and algorithms of the DNA\*STAR set on default parameters. In a preferred embodiment, the data  
 25 presented in columns VIII, IX, XIII, and XIV of Table I can be used to determine regions of TGF alpha HIII which exhibit a high degree of potential for antigenicity. Regions of high antigenicity are determined from the data presented in columns VIII, IX, XIII, and/or IV by choosing values which represent regions of the polypeptide which are likely to be exposed on  
 30 the surface of the polypeptide in an environment in which antigen recognition may occur in the process of initiation of an immune response.

The tabular format of the data in Figure 3 may be used to easily determine specific boundaries of a preferred region.

- 5 The tabular format of the data in Figure 3 may be used to easily determine specific boundaries of a preferred region.

10



Table I

	Res	Position	I	II	III	IV	V	VI	VII	VIII	IX	X	XI	XII	XIII	XIV
	Met	1	.	.	B	.	.	.	.	0.17	G	.	.	.	-0.10	0.79
5	Ala	2	.	.	B	.	.	.	.	0.34	G	.	.	.	-0.10	0.61
	Pro	3	.	.	B	.	.	.	.	0.39	G	.	.	.	-0.10	0.74
	His	4	.	.	.	.	.	.	C	0.48	G	.	.	.	0.10	0.74
	Gly	5	.	.	.	.	.	T	C	0.06	G	.	.	F	0.45	0.98
	Pro	6	.	.	.	.	.	T	C	0.34	G	.	.	F	0.45	0.52
10	Gly	7	.	.	.	.	T	T	.	0.62	G	.	.	F	0.65	0.55
	Ser	8	.	.	.	.	.	T	C	0.02	G	*	.	F	0.45	0.81
	Leu	9	.	.	B	B	.	.	.	-0.80	G	*	.	F	-0.45	0.43
	Thr	10	.	.	B	B	.	.	.	-0.67	G	.	.	F	-0.45	0.32
	Thr	11	.	.	B	B	.	.	.	-0.74	G	.	.	F	-0.45	0.37
	Leu	12	.	.	B	B	.	.	.	-0.99	G	.	.	.	-0.60	0.48
15	Val	13	.	.	B	B	.	.	.	-1.28	G	.	.	.	-0.60	0.33
	Pro	14	.	A	B	.	.	.	.	-1.06	G	*	.	.	-0.60	0.23
	Trp	15	.	A	B	.	.	.	.	-1.56	G	.	.	.	-0.60	0.29
	Ala	16	A	A	.	.	.	.	.	-2.06	G	.	.	.	-0.60	0.32
20	Ala	17	A	A	.	.	.	.	.	-2.06	G	.	.	.	-0.60	0.17
	Ala	18	A	A	.	.	.	.	.	-1.79	G	.	.	.	-0.60	0.13
	Leu	19	.	A	B	.	.	.	.	-2.39	G	.	.	.	-0.60	0.13
	Leu	20	.	A	B	.	.	.	.	-2.44	G	.	.	.	-0.60	0.11
	Leu	21	.	A	B	.	.	.	.	-2.71	G	.	.	.	-0.60	0.11
25	Ala	22	.	A	B	.	.	.	.	-2.12	G	*	.	.	-0.60	0.10
	Leu	23	.	A	B	.	.	.	.	-1.42	G	*	.	.	-0.60	0.20
	Gly	24	.	A	B	.	.	.	.	-1.20	.	*	.	.	0.30	0.48
	Val	25	.	A	B	.	.	.	.	-1.20	.	*	.	.	0.30	0.48
	Glu	26	.	A	B	.	.	.	.	-0.98	.	*	.	.	0.30	0.48
30	Arg	27	.	A	B	.	.	.	.	-1.20	.	*	.	.	0.30	0.49
	Ala	28	.	A	B	.	.	.	.	-0.60	G	*	.	.	-0.30	0.54
	Leu	29	.	A	B	.	.	.	.	-0.26	.	.	.	.	0.30	0.48
	Ala	30	.	A	.	.	.	.	C	-0.29	.	.	.	.	0.50	0.43
	Leu	31	.	A	B	.	.	.	.	-0.96	G	.	.	.	-0.60	0.30
35	Pro	32	.	A	.	.	T	.	.	-1.38	G	.	*	.	-0.20	0.19
	Glu	33	.	A	.	.	T	.	.	-0.79	G	.	.	.	0.10	0.27
	Ile	34	.	A	B	.	.	.	.	-0.64	G	.	.	.	-0.30	0.58
	Cys	35	.	A	B	.	.	.	.	-0.27	G	*	*	.	-0.30	0.20
	Thr	36	.	A	B	.	.	.	.	0.20	G	*	*	.	-0.30	0.18
40	Gln	37	.	A	B	.	.	.	.	0.11	G	*	*	F	-0.45	0.25
	Cys	38	.	.	B	.	.	T	.	-0.74	G	*	*	F	0.25	0.63
	Pro	39	.	.	.	.	T	T	.	0.14	G	*	*	F	0.65	0.32
	Gly	40	.	.	.	.	T	T	.	0.81	G	*	.	F	0.65	0.32
	Ser	41	.	.	B	.	.	T	.	0.31	G	*	.	F	0.25	0.97
45	Val	42	.	.	B	.	.	.	.	0.01	G	*	.	F	0.05	0.52
	Gln	43	.	.	B	.	.	.	.	0.72	G	*	*	F	0.05	0.70
	Asn	44	.	A	B	.	.	.	.	0.08	.	*	.	F	0.60	1.05
	Leu	45	.	A	B	.	.	.	.	-0.17	G	*	*	F	0.00	1.05
	Ser	46	.	A	B	.	.	.	.	-0.57	G	*	.	F	-0.15	0.61
50	Lys	47	.	A	B	.	.	.	.	0.04	G	*	.	.	-0.30	0.33
	Val	48	.	A	B	.	.	.	.	-0.62	G	*	*	.	-0.60	0.63
	Ala	49	.	A	B	.	.	.	.	-0.58	G	*	*	.	-0.60	0.25
	Phe	50	.	A	B	.	.	.	.	-0.08	G	*	*	.	-0.30	0.25
	Tyr	51	.	.	B	B	.	.	.	-0.09	G	.	*	.	-0.60	0.49
55	Cys	52	.	.	B	B	.	.	.	-0.02	G	.	*	.	-0.60	0.69
	Lys	53	.	.	.	B	T	.	.	0.83	G	*	.	.	0.25	1.57
	Thr	54	.	A	.	B	.	.	C	0.61	.	*	.	F	1.10	1.74
	Thr	55	.	A	.	B	.	.	C	0.71	.	*	.	F	1.10	2.67
	Arg	56	A	A	.	B	.	.	.	0.14	.	*	.	F	0.90	1.32
60	Glu	57	.	A	B	B	.	.	.	0.78	.	*	.	.	0.30	0.76
	Leu	58	.	A	B	.	.	.	.	0.14	.	*	*	.	0.30	0.71

Table I (continued)

Res	Position	I	II	III	IV	V	VI	VII	VIII	IX	X	XI	XII	XIII	XIV
-----	----------	---	----	-----	----	---	----	-----	------	----	---	----	-----	------	-----

Table I (continued)

Res Position		I	II	III	IV	V	VI	VII	VIII	IX	X	XI	XII	XIII	XIV
Gly	115	.	.	.	B	T	.	.	0.43	G	*	*	F	0.25	0.83

	Phe	116	.	A	.	B	T	.	.	0.43	G	*	*	F	-0.05	0.79
	Thr	117	.	A	B	B	.	.	.	0.43	G	*	*	F	-0.15	0.70
	Gln	118	.	A	B	B	.	.	.	0.32	G	*	*	F	-0.30	1.02
5	Leu	119	.	A	B	B	.	.	.	-0.68	G	*	*	F	-0.45	0.97
	Gln	120	.	A	B	B	.	.	.	-1.14	G	*	.	F	-0.45	0.47
	Thr	121	.	A	B	B	.	.	.	-0.66	G	*	.	.	-0.60	0.23
	Leu	122	.	A	B	B	.	.	.	-0.34	G	.	.	.	-0.60	0.42
	Ile	123	.	A	B	B	.	.	.	-0.38	G	.	*	.	-0.60	0.42
10	Leu	124	.	A	B	B	.	.	.	-0.42	G	.	.	.	-0.60	0.40
	Pro	125	.	.	B	B	.	.	.	-0.42	G	.	.	.	-0.60	0.36
	Gln	126	.	.	B	B	.	.	.	-0.78	G	.	.	.	-0.60	0.82
	His	127	.	.	B	B	.	.	.	-0.18	G	.	.	.	-0.60	0.53
	Val	128	.	.	B	B	.	.	.	0.37	G	.	.	.	-0.30	0.53
15	Asn	129	.	.	B	B	.	.	.	0.83	G	*	*	.	-0.30	0.31
	Cys	130	.	.	B	.	.	.	.	0.16	G	.	*	F	-0.05	0.22
	Pro	131	.	.	.	.	T	T	.	0.16	G	.	*	F	0.35	0.21
	Gly	132	.	.	.	.	T	T	.	-0.40	G	.	*	F	0.65	0.21
	Gly	133	.	.	.	.	T	T	.	0.17	G	.	*	F	0.35	0.40
20	Ile	134	.	.	.	.	.	.	C	0.17	G	.	.	F	-0.05	0.27
	Asn	135	.	.	B	.	.	.	.	0.52	G	*	.	.	-0.40	0.44
	Ala	136	.	.	B	B	.	.	.	-0.16	G	*	.	.	-0.60	0.64
	Trp	137	.	.	B	B	.	.	.	-0.12	G	*	.	.	-0.60	0.64
	Asn	138	.	.	B	B	.	.	.	-0.08	G	*	.	.	-0.60	0.57
25	Thr	139	.	.	B	B	.	.	.	0.57	G	*	*	F	-0.45	0.76
	Ile	140	.	.	B	B	.	.	.	-0.32	G	*	*	F	-0.30	1.13
	Thr	141	.	.	B	B	.	.	.	0.27	G	*	.	F	-0.45	0.49
	Ser	142	.	.	B	B	.	.	.	0.56	G	*	*	F	-0.45	0.57
	Tyr	143	.	.	.	B	.	.	.	0.56	G	*	*	.	-0.05	1.31
30	Ile	144	.	.	.	.	T	T	.	-0.02	G	*	*	F	0.80	1.57
	Asp	145	.	.	.	.	T	T	.	0.20	G	*	*	F	0.65	0.82
	Asn	146	.	.	.	.	T	T	.	0.51	G	*	.	F	0.35	0.28
	Gln	147	.	.	B	.	.	T	.	0.47	G	*	.	.	0.38	0.69
	Ile	148	.	.	B	.	.	.	.	0.71	.	*	.	.	1.06	0.41
35	Cys	149	.	.	B	.	.	.	.	1.64	G	*	*	.	0.94	0.44
	Gln	150	.	.	.	.	T	T	.	1.64	.	*	.	F	2.37	0.51
	Gly	151	.	.	.	.	T	T	.	0.83	.	*	.	F	2.80	1.17
	Gln	152	.	.	.	.	T	T	.	0.17	.	*	.	F	2.52	1.80
	Lys	153	.	.	.	.	T	.	.	1.06	.	*	.	F	1.89	0.56
40	Asn	154	.	.	.	.	T	.	.	1.72	.	*	.	F	1.61	0.91
	Leu	155	.	.	B	.	.	.	.	1.41	.	*	.	.	0.78	0.84
	Cys	156	.	.	B	.	.	.	.	1.41	.	*	.	.	0.84	0.61
	Asn	157	.	.	.	.	T	.	.	1.41	G	*	.	F	1.13	0.37
	Asn	158	.	.	.	.	T	T	.	1.16	.	*	.	F	2.27	0.76
45	Thr	159	.	.	.	.	T	T	.	1.16	.	.	*	F	2.76	2.19
	Gly	160	.	.	.	.	T	T	.	1.37	.	.	.	F	3.40	2.35
	Asp	161	.	.	.	.	.	T	C	1.37	.	.	*	F	2.86	1.45
	Pro	162	.	.	.	.	.	.	C	1.16	.	.	*	F	2.18	0.54
	Glu	163	.	.	B	.	.	.	.	1.16	.	.	.	.	2.10	0.84
50	Met	164	.	.	B	.	.	.	.	1.47	.	.	*	.	2.07	0.87
	Cys	165	.	.	B	.	.	T	.	1.47	.	.	*	.	2.24	0.91
	Pro	166	.	.	.	.	T	T	.	1.17	.	.	.	F	3.10	0.52
	Glu	167	.	.	.	.	T	T	.	0.71	.	.	.	F	2.49	0.70
	Asn	168	.	.	.	.	T	T	.	-0.14	.	.	.	F	2.18	0.70
55	Gly	169	.	.	.	.	T	.	.	0.24	.	*	.	F	1.67	0.34
	Ser	170	.	.	.	.	T	.	.	0.91	.	*	.	F	1.61	0.30

Table I (continued)

Res Position	I	II	III	IV	V	VI	VII	VIII	IX	X	XI	XII	XIII	XIV
60	Cys	171	.	.	B	.	.	0.78	.	*	.	F	1.15	0.31
	Val	172	.	.	B	.	T	0.57	.	.	.	F	1.60	0.31
	Pro	173	.	.	.	T	T	0.22	.	.	.	F	2.25	0.36
	Asp	174	.	.	.	T	T	-0.24	.	*	.	F	2.50	0.67

5	Gly	175	.	.	.	.	T	C	-0.76	G	*	.	F	1.45	0.74
	Pro	176	.	.	.	T	.	.	-0.09	G	*	.	F	1.20	0.39
	Gly	177	.	.	B	T	.	.	0.10	G	*	.	F	0.75	0.41
	Leu	178	.	B	B	.	.	.	-0.54	G	*	.	.	-0.35	0.22
	Leu	179	.	B	B	.	.	.	-1.21	G	.	.	.	-0.60	0.11
	Gln	180	.	B	B	.	.	.	-1.46	G	.	.	.	-0.60	0.06
	Cys	181	.	B	B	.	.	.	-1.24	G	.	.	.	-0.60	0.07
	Val	182	.	B	B	.	.	.	-1.24	G	.	.	.	-0.30	0.14
10	Cys	183	.	B	.	.	T	.	-1.13	G	.	.	.	0.10	0.08
	Ala	184	.	B	.	.	T	.	-0.36	G	*	.	.	-0.20	0.13
	Asp	185	.	.	.	T	T	.	-0.70	G	.	.	.	0.20	0.24
	Gly	186	.	.	.	T	T	.	-0.28	G	.	.	.	0.50	0.45
	Phe	187	.	.	.	T	.	.	0.62	G	.	.	.	0.30	0.69
15	His	188	.	.	.	T	T	.	0.62	.	.	.	.	1.10	0.83
	Gly	189	.	.	.	T	T	.	0.61	G	.	*	.	0.20	0.45
	Tyr	190	.	.	.	T	T	.	0.72	G	*	.	.	0.20	0.51
	Lys	191	.	B	.	.	T	.	1.07	.	*	.	.	0.70	0.74
	Cys	192	.	B	.	.	.	.	1.42	.	*	.	.	0.93	1.29
20	Met	193	.	B	.	.	.	.	1.16	.	*	.	.	1.06	0.82
	Arg	194	.	B	.	.	T	.	0.80	.	*	.	F	1.99	0.55
	Gln	195	.	B	.	.	T	.	0.74	G	*	.	F	1.37	0.88
	Gly	196	.	.	.	T	T	.	-0.11	.	*	.	F	2.80	1.20
	Ser	197	.	.	.	.	T	C	-0.26	G	.	.	F	1.57	0.50
25	Phe	198	.	B	B	.	.	.	-0.26	G	*	.	.	0.24	0.24
	Ser	199	.	B	B	.	.	.	-1.07	G	*	.	.	-0.04	0.24
	Leu	200	.	B	B	.	.	.	-1.77	G	.	*	.	-0.32	0.16
	Leu	201	.	B	B	.	.	.	-1.77	G	.	*	.	-0.60	0.16
	Met	202	.	B	B	.	.	.	-2.36	G	.	.	.	-0.60	0.11
30	Phe	203	.	B	B	.	.	.	-2.47	G	.	.	.	-0.60	0.10
	Phe	204	.	B	B	.	.	.	-2.51	G	.	.	.	-0.60	0.10
	Gly	205	.	B	B	.	.	.	-2.29	G	.	.	.	-0.60	0.10
	Ile	206	.	B	B	.	.	.	-1.79	G	.	.	.	-0.60	0.11
	Leu	207	.	B	B	.	.	.	-1.50	G	.	.	.	-0.60	0.19
35	Gly	208	.	.	B	.	.	C	-1.61	G	.	.	.	-0.40	0.28
	Ala	209	.	.	B	.	.	C	-1.21	G	.	.	.	-0.40	0.32
	Thr	210	.	.	B	.	.	C	-1.72	G	.	.	F	-0.25	0.53
	Thr	211	.	B	B	.	.	.	-1.13	G	.	*	F	-0.45	0.40
	Leu	212	.	B	B	.	.	.	-1.21	G	.	.	.	-0.60	0.52
40	Ser	213	.	B	B	.	.	.	-1.68	G	.	*	.	-0.60	0.25
	Val	214	.	B	B	.	.	.	-1.90	G	.	*	.	-0.60	0.15
	Ser	215	.	B	B	.	.	.	-1.88	G	.	*	.	-0.60	0.15
	Ile	216	.	B	B	.	.	.	-2.16	G	.	*	.	-0.60	0.11
	Leu	217	.	B	B	.	.	.	-1.66	G	.	*	.	-0.60	0.16
45	Leu	218	.	B	B	.	.	.	-1.36	G	*	*	.	-0.60	0.17
	Trp	219	.	B	B	.	.	.	-0.39	G	.	*	.	-0.60	0.41
	Ala	220	.	B	B	.	.	.	0.02	G	.	.	.	-0.34	0.98
	Thr	221	.	B	B	.	.	.	0.96	.	.	.	F	1.12	2.33
	Gln	222	.	B	B	.	.	.	1.18	.	*	*	F	1.68	4.44
50	Arg	223	.	.	B	T	.	.	2.03	.	*	*	F	2.34	4.44
	Arg	224	.	.	B	T	.	.	2.01	.	.	*	F	2.60	6.15
	Lys	225	.	.	B	T	.	.	2.30	.	.	*	F	2.34	5.13
	Ala	226	.	A	.	T	.	.	2.22	.	*	*	F	2.08	3.51

Table I (continued)

55	Res	Position	I	II	III	IV	V	VI	VII	VIII	IX	X	XI	XII	XIII	XIV
	Lys	227	.	A	.	.	.	.	C	1.83	.	*	*	.	1.47	2.29
	Thr	228	.	A	B	.	.	.	.	1.33	.	*	*	.	1.01	1.46
60	Ser	229	.	A	B	.	.	.	.	0.83	.	*	.	.	0.45	1.85

Among highly preferred fragments in this regard are those that comprise regions of TGF alpha HIII that combine several structural features, such as several of the features set out above.

5 Other preferred polypeptide fragments are biologically active TGF alpha HIII fragments. Biologically active fragments are those exhibiting activity similar, but not necessarily identical, to an activity of the TGF alpha HIII polypeptide. The biological activity of the fragments may include an improved desired activity, or a decreased undesirable activity. Polynucleotides encoding these polypeptide fragments are also encompassed by the  
10 invention.

However, many polynucleotide sequences, such as EST sequences, are publicly available and accessible through sequence databases. Some of these sequences are related to SEQ ID NO:1 and may have been publicly available prior to conception of the present invention. Preferably, such related polynucleotides are specifically excluded from the scope  
15 of the present invention. To list every related sequence would be cumbersome. Accordingly, preferably excluded from the present invention are one or more polynucleotides comprising a nucleotide sequence described by the general formula of a-b, where a is any integer between 1 to 909 of SEQ ID NO:1, b is an integer of 15 to 923, where both a and b correspond to the positions of nucleotide residues shown in SEQ ID NO:1, and where the b is greater than or  
20 equal to a + 14.

### **Epitopes and Antibodies**

The present invention encompasses polypeptides comprising, or alternatively consisting of, an epitope of the polypeptide having an amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO:2,  
25 or an epitope of the polypeptide sequence encoded by a polynucleotide sequence contained in ATCC Deposit No: 97342 or encoded by a polynucleotide that hybridizes to the complement of the sequence of SEQ ID NO:1 or contained in ATCC Deposit No: 97342 under stringent hybridization conditions or lower stringency hybridization conditions as defined supra. The present invention further encompasses polynucleotide sequences encoding an epitope of a  
30 polypeptide sequence of the invention (such as, for example, the sequence disclosed in SEQ ID NO:1), polynucleotide sequences of the complementary strand of a polynucleotide sequence encoding an epitope of the invention, and polynucleotide sequences which

hybridize to the complementary strand under stringent hybridization conditions or lower stringency hybridization conditions defined supra.

The term "epitopes," as used herein, refers to portions of a polypeptide having antigenic or immunogenic activity in an animal, preferably a mammal, and most preferably in a human. In a preferred embodiment, the present invention encompasses a polypeptide comprising an epitope, as well as the polynucleotide encoding this polypeptide. An "immunogenic epitope," as used herein, is defined as a portion of a protein that elicits an antibody response in an animal, as determined by any method known in the art, for example, by the methods for generating antibodies described infra. (See, for example, Geysen et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 81:3998- 4002 (1983)). The term "antigenic epitope," as used herein, is defined as a portion of a protein to which an antibody can immunospecifically bind its antigen as determined by any method well known in the art, for example, by the immunoassays described herein. Immunospecific binding excludes non-specific binding but does not necessarily exclude cross- reactivity with other antigens. Antigenic epitopes need not necessarily be immunogenic.

Fragments which function as epitopes may be produced by any conventional means. (See, e.g., Houghten, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 82:5131-5135 (1985), further described in U.S. Patent No. 4,631,211).

In the present invention, antigenic epitopes preferably contain a sequence of at least 4, at least 5, at least 6, at least 7, more preferably at least 8, at least 9, at least 10, at least 11, at least 12, at least 13, at least 14, at least 15, at least 20, at least 25, at least 30, at least 40, at least 50, and, most preferably, between about 15 to about 30 amino acids. Preferred polypeptides comprising immunogenic or antigenic epitopes are at least 10, 15, 20, 25, 30, 35, 40, 45, 50, 55, 60, 65, 70, 75, 80, 85, 90, 95, or 100 amino acid residues in length. Additional non-exclusive preferred antigenic epitopes include the antigenic epitopes disclosed herein, as well as portions thereof. Antigenic epitopes are useful, for example, to raise antibodies, including monoclonal antibodies, that specifically bind the epitope. Preferred antigenic epitopes include the antigenic epitopes disclosed herein, as well as any combination of two, three, four, five or more of these antigenic epitopes. Antigenic epitopes can be used as the target molecules in immunoassays. (See, for instance, Wilson et al., Cell 37:767-778 (1984); Sutcliffe et al., Science 219:660-666 (1983)).

Similarly, immunogenic epitopes can be used, for example, to induce antibodies according to methods well known in the art. (See, for instance, Sutcliffe et al., supra; Wilson et al., supra; Chow et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 82:910-914; and Bittle et al., J. Gen. Virol. 66:2347-2354 (1985). Preferred immunogenic epitopes include the immunogenic epitopes disclosed herein, as well as any combination of two, three, four, five or more of these immunogenic epitopes. The polypeptides comprising one or more immunogenic epitopes may be presented for eliciting an antibody response together with a carrier protein, such as an albumin, to an animal system (such as rabbit or mouse), or, if the polypeptide is of sufficient length (at least about 25 amino acids), the polypeptide may be presented without a carrier. However, immunogenic epitopes comprising as few as 8 to 10 amino acids have been shown to be sufficient to raise antibodies capable of binding to, at the very least, linear epitopes in a denatured polypeptide (e.g., in Western blotting).

Epitope-bearing polypeptides of the present invention may be used to induce antibodies according to methods well known in the art including, but not limited to, in vivo immunization, in vitro immunization, and phage display methods. See, e.g., Sutcliffe et al., supra; Wilson et al., supra, and Bittle et al., J. Gen. Virol., 66:2347-2354 (1985). If in vivo immunization is used, animals may be immunized with free peptide; however, anti-peptide antibody titer may be boosted by coupling the peptide to a macromolecular carrier, such as keyhole limpet hemacyanin (KLH) or tetanus toxoid. For instance, peptides containing cysteine residues may be coupled to a carrier using a linker such as maleimidobenzoyl- N-hydroxysuccinimide ester (MBS), while other peptides may be coupled to carriers using a more general linking agent such as glutaraldehyde. Animals such as rabbits, rats and mice are immunized with either free or carrier- coupled peptides, for instance, by intraperitoneal and/or intradermal injection of emulsions containing about 100 µg of peptide or carrier protein and Freund's adjuvant or any other adjuvant known for stimulating an immune response. Several booster injections may be needed, for instance, at intervals of about two weeks, to provide a useful titer of anti-peptide antibody which can be detected, for example, by ELISA assay using free peptide adsorbed to a solid surface. The titer of anti-peptide antibodies in serum from an immunized animal may be increased by selection of anti-peptide antibodies, for instance, by adsorption to the peptide on a solid support and elution of the selected antibodies according to methods well known in the art.

As one of skill in the art will appreciate, and as discussed above, the polypeptides of the present invention comprising an immunogenic or antigenic epitope can be fused to other polypeptide sequences. For example, the polypeptides of the present invention may be fused with the constant domain of immunoglobulins (IgA, IgE, IgG, IgM), or portions thereof (CH1, CH2, CH3, or any combination thereof and portions thereof) resulting in chimeric polypeptides. Such fusion proteins may facilitate purification and may increase half-life in vivo. This has been shown for chimeric proteins consisting of the first two domains of the human CD4-polypeptide and various domains of the constant regions of the heavy or light chains of mammalian immunoglobulins. See, e.g., EP 394,827; Traunecker et al., *Nature*, 331:84-86 (1988). Enhanced delivery of an antigen across the epithelial barrier to the immune system has been demonstrated for antigens (e.g., insulin) conjugated to an FcRn binding partner such as IgG or Fc fragments (see, e.g., PCT Publications WO 96/22024 and WO 99/04813). IgG Fusion proteins that have a disulfide-linked dimeric structure due to the IgG portion desulfide bonds have also been found to be more efficient in binding and neutralizing other molecules than monomeric polypeptides or fragments thereof alone. See, e.g., Fountoulakis et al., *J. Biochem.*, 270:3958-3964 (1995). Nucleic acids encoding the above epitopes can also be recombined with a gene of interest as an epitope tag (e.g., the hemagglutinin ("HA") tag or flag tag) to aid in detection and purification of the expressed polypeptide. For example, a system described by Janknecht et al. allows for the ready purification of non-denatured fusion proteins expressed in human cell lines (Janknecht et al., 1991, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 88:8972- 897). In this system, the gene of interest is subcloned into a vaccinia recombination plasmid such that the open reading frame of the gene is translationally fused to an amino-terminal tag consisting of six histidine residues. The tag serves as a matrix binding domain for the fusion protein. Extracts from cells infected with the recombinant vaccinia virus are loaded onto Ni<sup>2+</sup> nitriloacetic acid-agarose column and histidine-tagged proteins can be selectively eluted with imidazole-containing buffers.

Additional fusion proteins of the invention may be generated through the techniques of gene-shuffling, motif-shuffling, exon-shuffling, and/or codon-shuffling (collectively referred to as "DNA shuffling"). DNA shuffling may be employed to modulate the activities of polypeptides of the invention, such methods can be used to generate polypeptides with altered activity, as well as agonists and antagonists of the polypeptides. See, generally, U.S.



Patent Nos. 5,605,793; 5,811,238; 5,830,721; 5,834,252; and 5,837,458, and Patten et al., Curr. Opinion Biotechnol. 8:724-33 (1997); Harayama, Trends Biotechnol. 16(2):76-82 (1998); Hansson, et al., J. Mol. Biol. 287:265-76 (1999); and Lorenzo and Blasco, Biotechniques 24(2):308- 13 (1998) (each of these patents and publications are hereby  
5 incorporated by reference in its entirety). In one embodiment, alteration of polynucleotides corresponding to SEQ ID NO:1 and the polypeptides encoded by these polynucleotides may be achieved by DNA shuffling. DNA shuffling involves the assembly of two or more DNA segments by homologous or site-specific recombination to generate variation in the polynucleotide sequence. In another embodiment, polynucleotides of the invention, or the  
10 encoded polypeptides, may be altered by being subjected to random mutagenesis by error-prone PCR, random nucleotide insertion or other methods prior to recombination. In another embodiment, one or more components, motifs, sections, parts, domains, fragments, etc., of a polynucleotide encoding a polypeptide of the invention may be recombined with one or more components, motifs, sections, parts, domains, fragments, etc. of one or more heterologous  
15 molecules.

### **Antibodies**

Further polypeptides of the invention relate to antibodies and T-cell antigen receptors (TCR) which immunospecifically bind a polypeptide, polypeptide fragment, or variant of  
20 SEQ ID NO:2, and/or an epitope, of the present invention (as determined by immunoassays well known in the art for assaying specific antibody-antigen binding). Antibodies of the invention include, but are not limited to, polyclonal, monoclonal, multispecific, human, humanized or chimeric antibodies, single chain antibodies, Fab fragments, F(ab') fragments, fragments produced by a Fab expression library, anti-idiotypic (anti-Id) antibodies  
25 (including, e.g., anti-Id antibodies to antibodies of the invention), and epitope-binding fragments of any of the above. The term "antibody," as used herein, refers to immunoglobulin molecules and immunologically active portions of immunoglobulin molecules, i.e., molecules that contain an antigen binding site that immunospecifically binds an antigen. The immunoglobulin molecules of the invention can be of any type (e.g., IgG,  
30 IgE, IgM, IgD, IgA and IgY), class (e.g., IgG1, IgG2, IgG3, IgG4, IgA1 and IgA2) or subclass of immunoglobulin molecule.

Most preferably the antibodies are human antigen-binding antibody fragments of the present invention and include, but are not limited to, Fab, Fab' and F(ab')<sub>2</sub>, Fd, single-chain Fvs (scFv), single-chain antibodies, disulfide-linked Fvs (sdFv) and fragments comprising either a VL or VH domain. Antigen-binding antibody fragments, including single-chain antibodies, may comprise the variable region(s) alone or in combination with the entirety or a portion of the following: hinge region, CH1, CH2, and CH3 domains. Also included in the invention are antigen-binding fragments also comprising any combination of variable region(s) with a hinge region, CH1, CH2, and CH3 domains. The antibodies of the invention may be from any animal origin including birds and mammals. Preferably, the antibodies are human, murine (e.g., mouse and rat), donkey, ship rabbit, goat, guinea pig, camel, horse, or chicken. As used herein, "human" antibodies include antibodies having the amino acid sequence of a human immunoglobulin and include antibodies isolated from human immunoglobulin libraries or from animals transgenic for one or more human immunoglobulin and that do not express endogenous immunoglobulins, as described infra and, for example in, U.S. Patent No. 5,939,598 by Kucherlapati et al.

The antibodies of the present invention may be monospecific, bispecific, trispecific or of greater multispecificity. Multispecific antibodies may be specific for different epitopes of a polypeptide of the present invention or may be specific for both a polypeptide of the present invention as well as for a heterologous epitope, such as a heterologous polypeptide or solid support material. See, e.g., PCT publications WO 93/17715; WO 92/08802; WO 91/00360; WO 92/05793; Tutt, et al., J. Immunol. 147:60-69 (1991); U.S. Patent Nos. 4,474,893; 4,714,681; 4,925,648; 5,573,920; 5,601,819; Kostelny et al., J. Immunol. 148:1547-1553 (1992).

Antibodies of the present invention may be described or specified in terms of the epitope(s) or portion(s) of a polypeptide of the present invention which they recognize or specifically bind. The epitope(s) or polypeptide portion(s) may be specified as described herein, e.g., by N-terminal and C-terminal positions, by size in contiguous amino acid residues, or listed in the Tables and Figures. Preferred epitopes of the invention include: C38-N44; K53-L60; C65-I72; L77-F89; Q101-L109; I144-G177; A184-F198; and/or T221-S229 of SEQ ID NO:2, as well as polynucleotides that encode these epitopes. Antibodies which specifically bind any epitope or polypeptide of the present invention may also be excluded. Therefore,

the present invention includes antibodies that specifically bind polypeptides of the present invention, and allows for the exclusion of the same.

Antibodies of the present invention may also be described or specified in terms of their cross-reactivity. Antibodies that do not bind any other analog, ortholog, or homolog of a polypeptide of the present invention are included. Antibodies that bind polypeptides with at least 95%, at least 90%, at least 85%, at least 80%, at least 75%, at least 70%, at least 65%, at least 60%, at least 55%, and at least 50% identity (as calculated using methods known in the art and described herein) to a polypeptide of the present invention are also included in the present invention. In specific embodiments, antibodies of the present invention cross-react with murine, rat and/or rabbit homologs of human proteins and the corresponding epitopes thereof. Antibodies that do not bind polypeptides with less than 95%, less than 90%, less than 85%, less than 80%, less than 75%, less than 70%, less than 65%, less than 60%, less than 55%, and less than 50% identity (as calculated using methods known in the art and described herein) to a polypeptide of the present invention are also included in the present invention. In a specific embodiment, the above-described cross-reactivity is with respect to any single specific antigenic or immunogenic polypeptide, or combination(s) of 2, 3, 4, 5, or more of the specific antigenic and/or immunogenic polypeptides disclosed herein. Further included in the present invention are antibodies which bind polypeptides encoded by polynucleotides which hybridize to a polynucleotide of the present invention under stringent hybridization conditions (as described herein). Antibodies of the present invention may also be described or specified in terms of their binding affinity to a polypeptide of the invention. Preferred binding affinities include those with a dissociation constant or  $K_d$  less than  $5 \times 10^{-2}$  M,  $10^{-2}$  M,  $5 \times 10^{-3}$  M,  $10^{-3}$  M,  $5 \times 10^{-4}$  M,  $10^{-4}$  M,  $5 \times 10^{-5}$  M,  $10^{-5}$  M,  $5 \times 10^{-6}$  M,  $10^{-6}$  M,  $5 \times 10^{-7}$  M,  $10^{-7}$  M,  $5 \times 10^{-8}$  M,  $10^{-8}$  M,  $5 \times 10^{-9}$  M,  $10^{-9}$  M,  $5 \times 10^{-10}$  M,  $10^{-10}$  M,  $5 \times 10^{-11}$  M,  $10^{-11}$  M,  $5 \times 10^{-12}$  M,  $10^{-12}$  M,  $5 \times 10^{-13}$  M,  $10^{-13}$  M,  $5 \times 10^{-14}$  M,  $10^{-14}$  M,  $5 \times 10^{-15}$  M, or  $10^{-15}$  M.

The invention also provides antibodies that competitively inhibit binding of an antibody to an epitope of the invention as determined by any method known in the art for determining competitive binding, for example, the immunoassays described herein. In preferred embodiments, the antibody competitively inhibits binding to the epitope by at least 95%, at least 90%, at least 85 %, at least 80%, at least 75%, at least 70%, at least 60%, or at least 50%.

Antibodies of the present invention may act as agonists or antagonists of the polypeptides of the present invention. For example, the present invention includes antibodies which disrupt the receptor/ligand interactions with the polypeptides of the invention either partially or fully. Preferably, antibodies of the present invention bind an antigenic epitope disclosed herein, or a portion thereof. The invention features both receptor-specific antibodies and ligand-specific antibodies. The invention also features receptor-specific antibodies which do not prevent ligand binding but prevent receptor activation. Receptor activation (i.e., signaling) may be determined by techniques described herein or otherwise known in the art. For example, receptor activation can be determined by detecting the phosphorylation (e.g., tyrosine or serine/threonine) of the receptor or its substrate by immunoprecipitation followed by western blot analysis (for example, as described supra). In specific embodiments, antibodies are provided that inhibit ligand activity or receptor activity by at least 95%, at least 90%, at least 85%, at least 80%, at least 75%, at least 70%, at least 60%, or at least 50% of the activity in absence of the antibody.

The invention also features receptor-specific antibodies which both prevent ligand binding and receptor activation as well as antibodies that recognize the receptor-ligand complex, and, preferably, do not specifically recognize the unbound receptor or the unbound ligand. Likewise, included in the invention are neutralizing antibodies which bind the ligand and prevent binding of the ligand to the receptor, as well as antibodies which bind the ligand, thereby preventing receptor activation, but do not prevent the ligand from binding the receptor. Further included in the invention are antibodies which activate the receptor. These antibodies may act as receptor agonists, i.e., potentiate or activate either all or a subset of the biological activities of the ligand-mediated receptor activation, for example, by inducing dimerization of the receptor. The antibodies may be specified as agonists, antagonists or inverse agonists for biological activities comprising the specific biological activities of the peptides of the invention disclosed herein. The above antibody agonists can be made using methods known in the art. See, e.g., PCT publication WO 96/40281; U.S. Patent No. 5,811,097; Deng et al., *Blood* 92(6):1981-1988 (1998); Chen et al., *Cancer Res.* 58(16):3668-3678 (1998); Harrop et al., *J. Immunol.* 161(4):1786-1794 (1998); Zhu et al., *Cancer Res.* 58(15):3209-3214 (1998); Yoon et al., *J. Immunol.* 160(7):3170-3179 (1998); Prat et al., *J. Cell. Sci.* 111(Pt2):237-247 (1998); Pitard et al., *J. Immunol. Methods* 205(2):177-190 (1997); Liautard et al., *Cytokine* 9(4):233-241 (1997); Carlson et al., *J. Biol.*

Chem. 272(17):11295-11301 (1997); Taryman et al., Neuron 14(4):755-762 (1995); Muller et al., Structure 6(9):1153-1167 (1998); Bartunek et al., Cytokine 8(1):14-20 (1996) (which are all incorporated by reference herein in their entireties).

Antibodies of the present invention may be used, for example, but not limited to, to purify, detect, and target the polypeptides of the present invention, including both in vitro and in vivo diagnostic and therapeutic methods. For example, the antibodies have use in immunoassays for qualitatively and quantitatively measuring levels of the polypeptides of the present invention in biological samples. See, e.g., Harlow et al., Antibodies: A Laboratory Manual, (Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory Press, 2nd ed. 1988) (incorporated by reference herein in its entirety).

As discussed in more detail below, the antibodies of the present invention may be used either alone or in combination with other compositions. The antibodies may further be recombinantly fused to a heterologous polypeptide at the N- or C-terminus or chemically conjugated (including covalently and non-covalently conjugations) to polypeptides or other compositions. For example, antibodies of the present invention may be recombinantly fused or conjugated to molecules useful as labels in detection assays and effector molecules such as heterologous polypeptides, drugs, radionuclides, or toxins. See, e.g., PCT publications WO 92/08495; WO 91/14438; WO 89/12624; U.S. Patent No. 5,314,995; and EP 396,387.

The antibodies of the invention include derivatives that are modified, i.e., by the covalent attachment of any type of molecule to the antibody such that covalent attachment does not prevent the antibody from generating an anti-idiotypic response. For example, but not by way of limitation, the antibody derivatives include antibodies that have been modified, e.g., by glycosylation, acetylation, pegylation, phosphorylation, amidation, derivatization by known protecting/blocking groups, proteolytic cleavage, linkage to a cellular ligand or other protein, etc. Any of numerous chemical modifications may be carried out by known techniques, including, but not limited to specific chemical cleavage, acetylation, formylation, metabolic synthesis of tunicamycin, etc. Additionally, the derivative may contain one or more non-classical amino acids.

The antibodies of the present invention may be generated by any suitable method known in the art. Polyclonal antibodies to an antigen-of-interest can be produced by various procedures well known in the art. For example, a polypeptide of the invention can be administered to various host animals including, but not limited to, rabbits, mice, rats, etc. to

induce the production of sera containing polyclonal antibodies specific for the antigen. Various adjuvants may be used to increase the immunological response, depending on the host species, and include but are not limited to, Freund's (complete and incomplete), mineral gels such as aluminum hydroxide, surface active substances such as lysolecithin, pluronic polyols, polyanions, peptides, oil emulsions, keyhole limpet hemocyanins, dinitrophenol, and potentially useful human adjuvants such as BCG (bacille Calmette-Guerin) and corynebacterium parvum. Such adjuvants are also well known in the art.

Monoclonal antibodies can be prepared using a wide variety of techniques known in the art including the use of hybridoma, recombinant, and phage display technologies, or a combination thereof. For example, monoclonal antibodies can be produced using hybridoma techniques including those known in the art and taught, for example, in Harlow et al., Antibodies: A Laboratory Manual, (Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory Press, 2nd ed. 1988); Hammerling, et al., in: Monoclonal Antibodies and T-Cell Hybridomas 563-681 (Elsevier, N.Y., 1981) (said references incorporated by reference in their entireties). The term "monoclonal antibody" as used herein is not limited to antibodies produced through hybridoma technology. The term "monoclonal antibody" refers to an antibody that is derived from a single clone, including any eukaryotic, prokaryotic, or phage clone, and not the method by which it is produced.

Methods for producing and screening for specific antibodies using hybridoma technology are routine and well known in the art and are discussed in detail in the Examples. In a non-limiting example, mice can be immunized with a polypeptide of the invention or a cell expressing such peptide. Once an immune response is detected, e.g., antibodies specific for the antigen are detected in the mouse serum, the mouse spleen is harvested and splenocytes isolated. The splenocytes are then fused by well known techniques to any suitable myeloma cells, for example cells from cell line SP20 available from the ATCC. Hybridomas are selected and cloned by limited dilution. The hybridoma clones are then assayed by methods known in the art for cells that secrete antibodies capable of binding a polypeptide of the invention. Ascites fluid, which generally contains high levels of antibodies, can be generated by immunizing mice with positive hybridoma clones.

Accordingly, the present invention provides methods of generating monoclonal antibodies as well as antibodies produced by the method comprising culturing a hybridoma cell secreting an antibody of the invention wherein, preferably, the hybridoma is generated by

fusing splenocytes isolated from a mouse immunized with an antigen of the invention with myeloma cells and then screening the hybridomas resulting from the fusion for hybridoma clones that secrete an antibody able to bind a polypeptide of the invention.

Antibody fragments which recognize specific epitopes may be generated by known techniques. For example, Fab and F(ab')<sub>2</sub> fragments of the invention may be produced by proteolytic cleavage of immunoglobulin molecules, using enzymes such as papain (to produce Fab fragments) or pepsin (to produce F(ab')<sub>2</sub> fragments). F(ab')<sub>2</sub> fragments contain the variable region, the light chain constant region and the CH1 domain of the heavy chain.

For example, the antibodies of the present invention can also be generated using various phage display methods known in the art. In phage display methods, functional antibody domains are displayed on the surface of phage particles which carry the polynucleotide sequences encoding them. In a particular embodiment, such phage can be utilized to display antigen binding domains expressed from a repertoire or combinatorial antibody library (e.g., human or murine). Phage expressing an antigen binding domain that binds the antigen of interest can be selected or identified with antigen, e.g., using labeled antigen or antigen bound or captured to a solid surface or bead. Phage used in these methods are typically filamentous phage including fd and M13 binding domains expressed from phage with Fab, Fv or disulfide stabilized Fv antibody domains recombinantly fused to either the phage gene III or gene VIII protein. Examples of phage display methods that can be used to make the antibodies of the present invention include those disclosed in Brinkman et al., J. Immunol. Methods 182:41-50 (1995); Ames et al., J. Immunol. Methods 184:177-186 (1995); Kettleborough et al., Eur. J. Immunol. 24:952-958 (1994); Persic et al., Gene 187 9-18 (1997); Burton et al., Advances in Immunology 57:191-280 (1994); PCT application No. PCT/GB91/01134; PCT publications WO 90/02809; WO 91/10737; WO 92/01047; WO 92/18619; WO 93/11236; WO 95/15982; WO 95/20401; and U.S. Patent Nos. 5,698,426; 5,223,409; 5,403,484; 5,580,717; 5,427,908; 5,750,753; 5,821,047; 5,571,698; 5,427,908; 5,516,637; 5,780,225; 5,658,727; 5,733,743 and 5,969,108; each of which is incorporated herein by reference in its entirety.

As described in the above references, after phage selection, the antibody coding regions from the phage can be isolated and used to generate whole antibodies, including human antibodies, or any other desired antigen binding fragment, and expressed in any

desired host, including mammalian cells, insect cells, plant cells, yeast, and bacteria, e.g., as described in detail below. For example, techniques to recombinantly produce Fab, Fab' and F(ab')<sub>2</sub> fragments can also be employed using methods known in the art such as those disclosed in PCT publication WO 92/22324; Mullinax et al., *BioTechniques* 12(6):864-869 (1992); and Sawai et al., *AJRI* 34:26-34 (1995); and Better et al., *Science* 240:1041-1043 (1988) (said references incorporated by reference in their entireties).

Examples of techniques which can be used to produce single-chain Fvs and antibodies include those described in U.S. Patents 4,946,778 and 5,258,498; Huston et al., *Methods in Enzymology* 203:46-88 (1991); Shu et al., *PNAS* 90:7995-7999 (1993); and Skerra et al., *Science* 240:1038-1040 (1988). For some uses, including in vivo use of antibodies in humans and in vitro detection assays, it may be preferable to use chimeric, humanized, or human antibodies. A chimeric antibody is a molecule in which different portions of the antibody are derived from different animal species, such as antibodies having a variable region derived from a murine monoclonal antibody and a human immunoglobulin constant region. Methods for producing chimeric antibodies are known in the art. See e.g., Morrison, *Science* 229:1202 (1985); Oi et al., *BioTechniques* 4:214 (1986); Gillies et al., (1989) *J. Immunol. Methods* 125:191-202; U.S. Patent Nos. 5,807,715; 4,816,567; and 4,816,397, which are incorporated herein by reference in their entirety. Humanized antibodies are antibody molecules from non-human species antibody that binds the desired antigen having one or more complementarity determining regions (CDRs) from the non-human species and a framework regions from a human immunoglobulin molecule. Often, framework residues in the human framework regions will be substituted with the corresponding residue from the CDR donor antibody to alter, preferably improve, antigen binding. These framework substitutions are identified by methods well known in the art, e.g., by modeling of the interactions of the CDR and framework residues to identify framework residues important for antigen binding and sequence comparison to identify unusual framework residues at particular positions. (See, e.g., Queen et al., U.S. Patent No. 5,585,089; Riechmann et al., *Nature* 332:323 (1988), which are incorporated herein by reference in their entirety.) Antibodies can be humanized using a variety of techniques known in the art including, for example, CDR-grafting (EP 239,400; PCT publication WO 91/09967; U.S. Patent Nos. 5,225,539; 5,530,101; and 5,585,089), veneering or resurfacing (EP 592,106; EP 519,596; Padlan, *Molecular Immunology* 28(4/5):489-498 (1991); Studnicka et al., *Protein*



Engineering 7(6):805-814 (1994); Roguska. et al., PNAS 91:969-973 (1994)), and chain shuffling (U.S. Patent No. 5,565,332).

Completely human antibodies are particularly desirable for therapeutic treatment of human patients. Human antibodies can be made by a variety of methods known in the art including phage display methods described above using antibody libraries derived from human immunoglobulin sequences. See also, U.S. Patent Nos. 4,444,887 and 4,716,111; and PCT publications WO 98/46645, WO 98/50433, WO 98/24893, WO 98/16654, WO 96/34096, WO 96/33735, and WO 91/10741; each of which is incorporated herein by reference in its entirety.

Human antibodies can also be produced using transgenic mice which are incapable of expressing functional endogenous immunoglobulins, but which can express human immunoglobulin genes. For example, the human heavy and light chain immunoglobulin gene complexes may be introduced randomly or by homologous recombination into mouse embryonic stem cells. Alternatively, the human variable region, constant region, and diversity region may be introduced into mouse embryonic stem cells in addition to the human heavy and light chain genes. The mouse heavy and light chain immunoglobulin genes may be rendered non-functional separately or simultaneously with the introduction of human immunoglobulin loci by homologous recombination. In particular, homozygous deletion of the JH region prevents endogenous antibody production. The modified embryonic stem cells are expanded and microinjected into blastocysts to produce chimeric mice. The chimeric mice are then bred to produce homozygous offspring which express human antibodies. The transgenic mice are immunized in the normal fashion with a selected antigen, e.g., all or a portion of a polypeptide of the invention. Monoclonal antibodies directed against the antigen can be obtained from the immunized, transgenic mice using conventional hybridoma technology. The human immunoglobulin transgenes harbored by the transgenic mice rearrange during B cell differentiation, and subsequently undergo class switching and somatic mutation. Thus, using such a technique, it is possible to produce therapeutically useful IgG, IgA, IgM and IgE antibodies. For an overview of this technology for producing human antibodies, see Lonberg and Huszar, Int. Rev. Immunol. 13:65-93 (1995). For a detailed discussion of this technology for producing human antibodies and human monoclonal antibodies and protocols for producing such antibodies, see, e.g., PCT publications WO 98/24893; WO 92/01047; WO 96/34096; WO 96/33735; European Patent

No. 0 598 877; U.S. Patent Nos. 5,413,923; 5,625,126; 5,633,425; 5,569,825; 5,661,016; 5,545,806; 5,814,318; 5,885,793; 5,916,771; and 5,939,598, which are incorporated by reference herein in their entirety. In addition, companies such as Abgenix, Inc. (Freemont, CA) and Genpharm (San Jose, CA) can be engaged to provide human antibodies directed  
5 against a selected antigen using technology similar to that described above.

Completely human antibodies which recognize a selected epitope can be generated using a technique referred to as "guided selection." In this approach a selected non-human monoclonal antibody, e.g., a mouse antibody, is used to guide the selection of a completely human antibody recognizing the same epitope. (Jespers et al., Bio/technology 12:899-903  
10 (1988)).

Further, antibodies to the polypeptides of the invention can, in turn, be utilized to generate anti-idiotypic antibodies that "mimic" polypeptides of the invention using techniques well known to those skilled in the art. (See, e.g., Greenspan & Bona, FASEB J. 7(5):437-444; (1989) and Nissinoff, J. Immunol. 147(8):2429-2438 (1991)). For example, antibodies  
15 which bind to and competitively inhibit polypeptide multimerization and/or binding of a polypeptide of the invention to a ligand can be used to generate anti-idiotypes that "mimic" the polypeptide multimerization and/or binding domain and, as a consequence, bind to and neutralize polypeptide and/or its ligand. Such neutralizing anti-idiotypes or Fab fragments of such anti-idiotypes can be used in therapeutic regimens to neutralize polypeptide ligand. For  
20 example, such anti-idiotypic antibodies can be used to bind a polypeptide of the invention and/or to bind its ligands/receptors, and thereby block its biological activity.

Antibodies specific to TGF alpha HIII may be used for cancer diagnosis and therapy, since many types of cancer cells up-regulate various members of the TGF alpha family during the process of neoplasia or hyperplasia. These antibodies bind to and inactivate TGF  
25 alpha HIII. Monoclonal antibodies against TGF alpha HIII (and/or its family members) are in clinical use for both the diagnosis and therapy of certain disorders including (but not limited to) hyperplastic and neoplastic growth abnormalities. Upregulation of growth factor expression by neoplastic tissues forms the basis for a variety of serum assays which detect increases in growth factor in the blood of affected patients. These assays are typically applied  
30 not only in diagnostic settings, but are applied in prognostic settings as well (to detect the presence of occult tumor cells following surgery, chemotherapy, etc)

In addition, malignant cells expressing the TGF alpha HIII receptor may be detected by using labeled TGF alpha HIII in a receptor binding assay, or by the use of antibodies to the TGF alpha HIII receptor itself. Cells may be distinguished in accordance with the presence and density of receptors for TGF alpha HIII, thereby providing a means for predicting the susceptibility of such cells to the biological activities of TGF alpha HIII.

### **Polynucleotides Encoding Antibodies**

The invention further provides polynucleotides comprising a nucleotide sequence encoding an antibody of the invention and fragments thereof. The invention also encompasses polynucleotides that hybridize under stringent or lower stringency hybridization conditions, e.g., as defined supra, to polynucleotides that encode an antibody, preferably, that specifically binds to a polypeptide of the invention, preferably, an antibody that binds to a polypeptide having the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO:2.

The polynucleotides may be obtained, and the nucleotide sequence of the polynucleotides determined, by any method known in the art. For example, if the nucleotide sequence of the antibody is known, a polynucleotide encoding the antibody may be assembled from chemically synthesized oligonucleotides (e.g., as described in Kutmeier et al., BioTechniques 17:242 (1994)), which, briefly, involves the synthesis of overlapping oligonucleotides containing portions of the sequence encoding the antibody, annealing and ligating of those oligonucleotides, and then amplification of the ligated oligonucleotides by PCR.

Alternatively, a polynucleotide encoding an antibody may be generated from nucleic acid from a suitable source. If a clone containing a nucleic acid encoding a particular antibody is not available, but the sequence of the antibody molecule is known, a nucleic acid encoding the immunoglobulin may be chemically synthesized or obtained from a suitable source (e.g., an antibody cDNA library, or a cDNA library generated from, or nucleic acid, preferably poly A+ RNA, isolated from, any tissue or cells expressing the antibody, such as hybridoma cells selected to express an antibody of the invention) by PCR amplification using synthetic primers hybridizable to the 3' and 5' ends of the sequence or by cloning using an oligonucleotide probe specific for the particular gene sequence to identify, e.g., a cDNA clone from a cDNA library that encodes the antibody. Amplified nucleic acids generated by

PCR may then be cloned into replicable cloning vectors using any method well known in the art.

Once the nucleotide sequence and corresponding amino acid sequence of the antibody is determined, the nucleotide sequence of the antibody may be manipulated using methods well known in the art for the manipulation of nucleotide sequences, e.g., recombinant DNA techniques, site directed mutagenesis, PCR, etc. (see, for example, the techniques described in Sambrook et al., 1990, *Molecular Cloning, A Laboratory Manual*, 2d Ed., Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory, Cold Spring Harbor, NY and Ausubel et al., eds., 1998, *Current Protocols in Molecular Biology*, John Wiley & Sons, NY, which are both incorporated by reference herein in their entireties ), to generate antibodies having a different amino acid sequence, for example to create amino acid substitutions, deletions, and/or insertions.

In a specific embodiment, the amino acid sequence of the heavy and/or light chain variable domains may be inspected to identify the sequences of the complementarity determining regions (CDRs) by methods that are well know in the art, e.g., by comparison to known amino acid sequences of other heavy and light chain variable regions to determine the regions of sequence hypervariability. Using routine recombinant DNA techniques, one or more of the CDRs may be inserted within framework regions, e.g., into human framework regions to humanize a non-human antibody, as described supra. The framework regions may be naturally occurring or consensus framework regions, and preferably human framework regions (see, e.g., Chothia et al., *J. Mol. Biol.* 278: 457-479 (1998) for a listing of human framework regions). Preferably, the polynucleotide generated by the combination of the framework regions and CDRs encodes an antibody that specifically binds a polypeptide of the invention. Preferably, as discussed supra, one or more amino acid substitutions may be made within the framework regions, and, preferably, the amino acid substitutions improve binding of the antibody to its antigen. Additionally, such methods may be used to make amino acid substitutions or deletions of one or more variable region cysteine residues participating in an intrachain disulfide bond to generate antibody molecules lacking one or more intrachain disulfide bonds. Other alterations to the polynucleotide are encompassed by the present invention and within the skill of the art.

In addition, techniques developed for the production of "chimeric antibodies" (Morrison et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci.* 81:851-855 (1984); Neuberger et al., *Nature* 312:604-608 (1984); Takeda et al., *Nature* 314:452-454 (1985)) by splicing genes from a

mouse antibody molecule of appropriate antigen specificity together with genes from a human antibody molecule of appropriate biological activity can be used. As described supra, a chimeric antibody is a molecule in which different portions are derived from different animal species, such as those having a variable region derived from a murine mAb and a human immunoglobulin constant region, e.g., humanized antibodies.

Alternatively, techniques described for the production of single chain antibodies (U.S. Patent No. 4,946,778; Bird, Science 242:423- 42 (1988); Huston et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 85:5879-5883 (1988); and Ward et al., Nature 334:544-54 (1989)) can be adapted to produce single chain antibodies. Single chain antibodies are formed by linking the heavy and light chain fragments of the Fv region via an amino acid bridge, resulting in a single chain polypeptide. Techniques for the assembly of functional Fv fragments in E. coli may also be used (Skerra et al., Science 242:1038- 1041 (1988)).

#### **Methods of Producing Antibodies**

The antibodies of the invention can be produced by any method known in the art for the synthesis of antibodies, in particular, by chemical synthesis or preferably, by recombinant expression techniques.

Recombinant expression of an antibody of the invention, or fragment, derivative or analog thereof, (e.g., a heavy or light chain of an antibody of the invention or a single chain antibody of the invention), requires construction of an expression vector containing a polynucleotide that encodes the antibody. Once a polynucleotide encoding an antibody molecule or a heavy or light chain of an antibody, or portion thereof (preferably containing the heavy or light chain variable domain), of the invention has been obtained, the vector for the production of the antibody molecule may be produced by recombinant DNA technology using techniques well known in the art. Thus, methods for preparing a protein by expressing a polynucleotide containing an antibody encoding nucleotide sequence are described herein. Methods which are well known to those skilled in the art can be used to construct expression vectors containing antibody coding sequences and appropriate transcriptional and translational control signals. These methods include, for example, in vitro recombinant DNA techniques, synthetic techniques, and in vivo genetic recombination. The invention, thus, provides replicable vectors comprising a nucleotide sequence encoding an antibody molecule of the invention, or a heavy or light chain thereof, or a heavy or light chain variable domain,

operably linked to a promoter. Such vectors may include the nucleotide sequence encoding the constant region of the antibody molecule (see, e.g., PCT Publication WO 86/05807; PCT Publication WO 89/01036; and U.S. Patent No. 5,122,464) and the variable domain of the antibody may be cloned into such a vector for expression of the entire heavy or light chain.

5 The expression vector is transferred to a host cell by conventional techniques and the transfected cells are then cultured by conventional techniques to produce an antibody of the invention. Thus, the invention includes host cells containing a polynucleotide encoding an antibody of the invention, or a heavy or light chain thereof, or a single chain antibody of the invention, operably linked to a heterologous promoter. In preferred embodiments for the  
10 expression of double-chained antibodies, vectors encoding both the heavy and light chains may be co-expressed in the host cell for expression of the entire immunoglobulin molecule, as detailed below.

A variety of host-expression vector systems may be utilized to express the antibody molecules of the invention. Such host-expression systems represent vehicles by which the  
15 coding sequences of interest may be produced and subsequently purified, but also represent cells which may, when transformed or transfected with the appropriate nucleotide coding sequences, express an antibody molecule of the invention in situ. These include but are not limited to microorganisms such as bacteria (e.g., *E. coli*, *B. subtilis*) transformed with recombinant bacteriophage DNA, plasmid DNA or cosmid DNA expression vectors  
20 containing antibody coding sequences; yeast (e.g., *Saccharomyces*, *Pichia*) transformed with recombinant yeast expression vectors containing antibody coding sequences; insect cell systems infected with recombinant virus expression vectors (e.g., baculovirus) containing antibody coding sequences; plant cell systems infected with recombinant virus expression vectors (e.g., cauliflower mosaic virus, CaMV; tobacco mosaic virus, TMV) or transformed  
25 with recombinant plasmid expression vectors (e.g., Ti plasmid) containing antibody coding sequences; or mammalian cell systems (e.g., COS, CHO, BHK, 293, 3T3 cells) harboring recombinant expression constructs containing promoters derived from the genome of mammalian cells (e.g., metallothionein promoter) or from mammalian viruses (e.g., the adenovirus late promoter; the vaccinia virus 7.5K promoter). Preferably, bacterial cells such  
30 as *Escherichia coli*, and more preferably, eukaryotic cells, especially for the expression of whole recombinant antibody molecule, are used for the expression of a recombinant antibody molecule. For example, mammalian cells such as Chinese hamster ovary cells (CHO), in

conjunction with a vector such as the major intermediate early gene promoter element from human cytomegalovirus is an effective expression system for antibodies (Foecking et al., Gene 45:101 (1986); Cockett et al., Bio/Technology 8:2 (1990)).

In bacterial systems, a number of expression vectors may be advantageously selected depending upon the use intended for the antibody molecule being expressed. For example, when a large quantity of such a protein is to be produced, for the generation of pharmaceutical compositions of an antibody molecule, vectors which direct the expression of high levels of fusion protein products that are readily purified may be desirable. Such vectors include, but are not limited, to the *E. coli* expression vector pUR278 (Ruther et al., EMBO J. 2:1791 (1983)), in which the antibody coding sequence may be ligated individually into the vector in frame with the lac Z coding region so that a fusion protein is produced; pIN vectors (Inouye & Inouye, Nucleic Acids Res. 13:3101-3109 (1985); Van Heeke & Schuster, J. Biol. Chem. 24:5503-5509 (1989)); and the like. pGEX vectors may also be used to express foreign polypeptides as fusion proteins with glutathione S-transferase (GST). In general, such fusion proteins are soluble and can easily be purified from lysed cells by adsorption and binding to matrix glutathione-agarose beads followed by elution in the presence of free glutathione. The pGEX vectors are designed to include thrombin or factor Xa protease cleavage sites so that the cloned target gene product can be released from the GST moiety.

In an insect system, *Autographa californica* nuclear polyhedrosis virus (AcNPV) is used as a vector to express foreign genes. The virus grows in *Spodoptera frugiperda* cells. The antibody coding sequence may be cloned individually into non-essential regions (for example the polyhedrin gene) of the virus and placed under control of an AcNPV promoter (for example the polyhedrin promoter).

In mammalian host cells, a number of viral-based expression systems may be utilized. In cases where an adenovirus is used as an expression vector, the antibody coding sequence of interest may be ligated to an adenovirus transcription/translation control complex, e.g., the late promoter and tripartite leader sequence. This chimeric gene may then be inserted in the adenovirus genome by in vitro or in vivo recombination. Insertion in a non-essential region of the viral genome (e.g., region E1 or E3) will result in a recombinant virus that is viable and capable of expressing the antibody molecule in infected hosts. (e.g., see Logan & Shenk, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 81:355-359 (1984)). Specific initiation signals may also be required for efficient translation of inserted antibody coding sequences. These signals

include the ATG initiation codon and adjacent sequences. Furthermore, the initiation codon must be in phase with the reading frame of the desired coding sequence to ensure translation of the entire insert. These exogenous translational control signals and initiation codons can be of a variety of origins, both natural and synthetic. The efficiency of expression may be enhanced by the inclusion of appropriate transcription enhancer elements, transcription terminators, etc. (see Bittner et al., *Methods in Enzymol.* 153:51-544 (1987)).

In addition, a host cell strain may be chosen which modulates the expression of the inserted sequences, or modifies and processes the gene product in the specific fashion desired. Such modifications (e.g., glycosylation) and processing (e.g., cleavage) of protein products may be important for the function of the protein. Different host cells have characteristic and specific mechanisms for the post-translational processing and modification of proteins and gene products. Appropriate cell lines or host systems can be chosen to ensure the correct modification and processing of the foreign protein expressed. To this end, eukaryotic host cells which possess the cellular machinery for proper processing of the primary transcript, glycosylation, and phosphorylation of the gene product may be used. Such mammalian host cells include but are not limited to CHO, VERY, BHK, Hela, COS, MDCK, 293, 3T3, WI38, and in particular, breast cancer cell lines such as, for example, BT483, Hs578T, HTB2, BT20 and T47D, and normal mammary gland cell line such as, for example, CRL7030 and Hs578Bst.

For long-term, high-yield production of recombinant proteins, stable expression is preferred. For example, cell lines which stably express the antibody molecule may be engineered. Rather than using expression vectors which contain viral origins of replication, host cells can be transformed with DNA controlled by appropriate expression control elements (e.g., promoter, enhancer, sequences, transcription terminators, polyadenylation sites, etc.), and a selectable marker. Following the introduction of the foreign DNA, engineered cells may be allowed to grow for 1-2 days in an enriched media, and then are switched to a selective media. The selectable marker in the recombinant plasmid confers resistance to the selection and allows cells to stably integrate the plasmid into their chromosomes and grow to form foci which in turn can be cloned and expanded into cell lines. This method may advantageously be used to engineer cell lines which express the antibody molecule. Such engineered cell lines may be particularly useful in screening and evaluation of compounds that interact directly or indirectly with the antibody molecule.



A number of selection systems may be used, including but not limited to the herpes simplex virus thymidine kinase (Wigler et al., Cell 11:223 (1977)), hypoxanthine-guanine phosphoribosyltransferase (Szybalska & Szybalski, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 48:202 (1992)), and adenine phosphoribosyltransferase (Lowy et al., Cell 22:817 (1980)) genes can be employed in tk-, hgp<sup>r</sup>t- or ap<sup>r</sup>t- cells, respectively. Also, antimetabolite resistance can be used as the basis of selection for the following genes: dhfr, which confers resistance to methotrexate (Wigler et al., Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 77:357 (1980); O'Hare et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 78:1527 (1981)); gpt, which confers resistance to mycophenolic acid (Mulligan & Berg, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 78:2072 (1981)); neo, which confers resistance to the aminoglycoside G-418 Clinical Pharmacy 12:488-505; Wu and Wu, Biotherapy 3:87-95 (1991); Tolstoshev, Ann. Rev. Pharmacol. Toxicol. 32:573-596 (1993); Mulligan, Science 260:926-932 (1993); and Morgan and Anderson, Ann. Rev. Biochem. 62:191-217 (1993); May, 1993, TIB TECH 11(5):155-215); and hyg<sup>r</sup>, which confers resistance to hygromycin (Santerre et al., Gene 30:147 (1984)). Methods commonly known in the art of recombinant DNA technology may be routinely applied to select the desired recombinant clone, and such methods are described, for example, in Ausubel et al. (eds.), Current Protocols in Molecular Biology, John Wiley & Sons, NY (1993); Kriegler, Gene Transfer and Expression, A Laboratory Manual, Stockton Press, NY (1990); and in Chapters 12 and 13, Dracopoli et al. (eds), Current Protocols in Human Genetics, John Wiley & Sons, NY (1994); Colberre-Garapin et al., J. Mol. Biol. 150:1 (1981), which are incorporated by reference herein in their entireties.

The expression levels of an antibody molecule can be increased by vector amplification (for a review, see Bebbington and Hentschel, The use of vectors based on gene amplification for the expression of cloned genes in mammalian cells in DNA cloning, Vol.3. (Academic Press, New York, 1987)). When a marker in the vector system expressing antibody is amplifiable, increase in the level of inhibitor present in culture of host cell will increase the number of copies of the marker gene. Since the amplified region is associated with the antibody gene, production of the antibody will also increase (Crouse et al., Mol. Cell. Biol. 3:257 (1983)).

The host cell may be co-transfected with two expression vectors of the invention, the first vector encoding a heavy chain derived polypeptide and the second vector encoding a light chain derived polypeptide. The two vectors may contain identical selectable markers

which enable equal expression of heavy and light chain polypeptides. Alternatively, a single vector may be used which encodes, and is capable of expressing, both heavy and light chain polypeptides. In such situations, the light chain should be placed before the heavy chain to avoid an excess of toxic free heavy chain (Proudfoot, Nature 322:52 (1986); Kohler, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 77:2197 (1980)). The coding sequences for the heavy and light chains may comprise cDNA or genomic DNA.

Once an antibody molecule of the invention has been produced by an animal, chemically synthesized, or recombinantly expressed, it may be purified by any method known in the art for purification of an immunoglobulin molecule, for example, by chromatography (e.g., ion exchange, affinity, particularly by affinity for the specific antigen after Protein A, and sizing column chromatography), centrifugation, differential solubility, or by any other standard technique for the purification of proteins. In addition, the antibodies of the present invention or fragments thereof can be fused to heterologous polypeptide sequences described herein or otherwise known in the art, to facilitate purification.

The present invention encompasses antibodies recombinantly fused or chemically conjugated (including both covalently and non-covalently conjugations) to a polypeptide (or portion thereof, preferably at least 10, 20, 30, 40, 50, 60, 70, 80, 90 or 100 amino acids of the polypeptide) of the present invention to generate fusion proteins. The fusion does not necessarily need to be direct, but may occur through linker sequences. The antibodies may be specific for antigens other than polypeptides (or portion thereof, preferably at least 10, 20, 30, 40, 50, 60, 70, 80, 90 or 100 amino acids of the polypeptide) of the present invention. For example, antibodies may be used to target the polypeptides of the present invention to particular cell types, either in vitro or in vivo, by fusing or conjugating the polypeptides of the present invention to antibodies specific for particular cell surface receptors. Antibodies fused or conjugated to the polypeptides of the present invention may also be used in in vitro immunoassays and purification methods using methods known in the art. See e.g., Harbor et al., supra, and PCT publication WO 93/21232; EP 439,095; Naramura et al., Immunol. Lett. 39:91-99 (1994); U.S. Patent 5,474,981; Gillies et al., PNAS 89:1428-1432 (1992); Fell et al., J. Immunol. 146:2446-2452(1991), which are incorporated by reference in their entireties.

The present invention further includes compositions comprising the polypeptides of the present invention fused or conjugated to antibody domains other than the variable regions. For example, the polypeptides of the present invention may be fused or conjugated to an

antibody Fc region, or portion thereof. The antibody portion fused to a polypeptide of the present invention may comprise the constant region, hinge region, CH1 domain, CH2 domain, and CH3 domain or any combination of whole domains or portions thereof. The polypeptides may also be fused or conjugated to the above antibody portions to form multimers. For example, Fc portions fused to the polypeptides of the present invention can form dimers through disulfide bonding between the Fc portions. Higher multimeric forms can be made by fusing the polypeptides to portions of IgA and IgM. Methods for fusing or conjugating the polypeptides of the present invention to antibody portions are known in the art. See, e.g., U.S. Patent Nos. 5,336,603; 5,622,929; 5,359,046; 5,349,053; 5,447,851; 5,112,946; EP 307,434; EP 367,166; PCT publications WO 96/04388; WO 91/06570; Ashkenazi et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 88:10535-10539 (1991); Zheng et al., J. Immunol. 154:5590-5600 (1995); and Vil et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 89:11337-11341(1992) (said references incorporated by reference in their entireties).

As discussed, supra, the polypeptides corresponding to a polypeptide, polypeptide fragment, or a variant of SEQ ID NO:2 may be fused or conjugated to the above antibody portions to increase the in vivo half life of the polypeptides or for use in immunoassays using methods known in the art. Further, the polypeptides corresponding to SEQ ID NO:2 may be fused or conjugated to the above antibody portions to facilitate purification. One reported example describes chimeric proteins consisting of the first two domains of the human CD4-polypeptide and various domains of the constant regions of the heavy or light chains of mammalian immunoglobulins. (EP 394,827; Traunecker et al., Nature 331:84-86 (1988). The polypeptides of the present invention fused or conjugated to an antibody having disulfide-linked dimeric structures (due to the IgG) may also be more efficient in binding and neutralizing other molecules, than the monomeric secreted protein or protein fragment alone. (Fountoulakis et al., J. Biochem. 270:3958-3964 (1995)). In many cases, the Fc part in a fusion protein is beneficial in therapy and diagnosis, and thus can result in, for example, improved pharmacokinetic properties. (EP A 232,262). Alternatively, deleting the Fc part after the fusion protein has been expressed, detected, and purified, would be desired. For example, the Fc portion may hinder therapy and diagnosis if the fusion protein is used as an antigen for immunizations. In drug discovery, for example, human proteins, such as hIL-5, have been fused with Fc portions for the purpose of high-throughput screening assays to

identify antagonists of hIL-5. (See, Bennett et al., J. Molecular Recognition 8:52-58 (1995); Johanson et al., J. Biol. Chem. 270:9459-9471 (1995).

Moreover, the antibodies or fragments thereof of the present invention can be fused to marker sequences, such as a peptide to facilitate purification. In preferred embodiments, the marker amino acid sequence is a hexa-histidine peptide, such as the tag provided in a pQE  
5 vector (QIAGEN, Inc., 9259 Eton Avenue, Chatsworth, CA, 91311), among others, many of which are commercially available. As described in Gentz et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 86:821-824 (1989), for instance, hexa-histidine provides for convenient purification of the fusion protein. Other peptide tags useful for purification include, but are not limited to, the  
10 "HA" tag, which corresponds to an epitope derived from the influenza hemagglutinin protein (Wilson et al., Cell 37:767 (1984)) and the "flag" tag.

The present invention further encompasses antibodies or fragments thereof conjugated to a diagnostic or therapeutic agent. The antibodies can be used diagnostically to, for example, monitor the development or progression of a tumor as part of a clinical testing  
15 procedure to, e.g., determine the efficacy of a given treatment regimen. Detection can be facilitated by coupling the antibody to a detectable substance. Examples of detectable substances include various enzymes, prosthetic groups, fluorescent materials, luminescent materials, bioluminescent materials, radioactive materials, positron emitting metals using various positron emission tomographies, and nonradioactive paramagnetic metal ions. The  
20 detectable substance may be coupled or conjugated either directly to the antibody (or fragment thereof) or indirectly, through an intermediate (such as, for example, a linker known in the art) using techniques known in the art. See, for example, U.S. Patent No. 4,741,900 for metal ions which can be conjugated to antibodies for use as diagnostics according to the present invention. Examples of suitable enzymes include horseradish peroxidase, alkaline  
25 phosphatase, beta-galactosidase, or acetylcholinesterase; examples of suitable prosthetic group complexes include streptavidin/biotin and avidin/biotin; examples of suitable fluorescent materials include umbelliferone, fluorescein, fluorescein isothiocyanate, rhodamine, dichlorotriazinylamine fluorescein, dansyl chloride or phycoerythrin; an example of a luminescent material includes luminol; examples of bioluminescent materials include  
30 luciferase, luciferin, and aequorin; and examples of suitable radioactive material include <sup>125</sup>I, <sup>131</sup>I, <sup>111</sup>In or <sup>99</sup>Tc.

Further, an antibody or fragment thereof may be conjugated to a therapeutic moiety such as a cytotoxin, e.g., a cytostatic or cytotoxic agent, a therapeutic agent or a radioactive metal ion, e.g., alpha-emitters such as, for example,  $^{213}\text{Bi}$ . A cytotoxin or cytotoxic agent includes any agent that is detrimental to cells. Examples include paclitaxol, cytochalasin B, gramicidin D, ethidium bromide, emetine, mitomycin, etoposide, teniposide, vincristine, vinblastine, colchicin, doxorubicin, daunorubicin, dihydroxy anthracin dione, mitoxantrone, mithramycin, actinomycin D, 1-dehydrotestosterone, glucocorticoids, procaine, tetracaine, lidocaine, propranolol, and puromycin and analogs or homologs thereof. Therapeutic agents include, but are not limited to, antimetabolites (e.g., methotrexate, 6-mercaptopurine, 6-thioguanine, cytarabine, 5-fluorouracil decarbazine), alkylating agents (e.g., mechlorethamine, thioepa chlorambucil, melphalan, carmustine (BSNU) and lomustine (CCNU), cyclophosphamide, busulfan, dibromomannitol, streptozotocin, mitomycin C, and cis-dichlorodiamine platinum (II) (DDP) cisplatin), anthracyclines (e.g., daunorubicin (formerly daunomycin) and doxorubicin), antibiotics (e.g., dactinomycin (formerly actinomycin), bleomycin, mithramycin, and anthramycin (AMC)), and anti-mitotic agents (e.g., vincristine and vinblastine).

The conjugates of the invention can be used for modifying a given biological response, the therapeutic agent or drug moiety is not to be construed as limited to classical chemical therapeutic agents. For example, the drug moiety may be a protein or polypeptide possessing a desired biological activity. Such proteins may include, for example, a toxin such as abrin, ricin A, pseudomonas exotoxin, or diphtheria toxin; a protein such as tumor necrosis factor,  $\alpha$ -interferon,  $\beta$ -interferon, nerve growth factor, platelet derived growth factor, tissue plasminogen activator, an apoptotic agent, e.g., TNF- $\alpha$ , TNF- $\beta$ , AIM I (See, International Publication No. WO 97/33899), AIM II (See, International Publication No. WO 97/34911), Fas Ligand (Takahashi *et al.*, *Int. Immunol.*, 6:1567-1574 (1994)), VEGI (See, International Publication No. WO 99/23105), a thrombotic agent or an anti-angiogenic agent, e.g., angiostatin or endostatin; or, biological response modifiers such as, for example, lymphokines, interleukin-1 ("IL-1"), interleukin-2 ("IL-2"), interleukin-6 ("IL-6"), granulocyte macrophage colony stimulating factor ("GM-CSF"), granulocyte colony stimulating factor ("G-CSF"), or other growth factors.

Antibodies may also be attached to solid supports, which are particularly useful for immunoassays or purification of the target antigen. Such solid supports include, but are not

limited to, glass, cellulose, polyacrylamide, nylon, polystyrene, polyvinyl chloride or polypropylene.

Techniques for conjugating such therapeutic moiety to antibodies are well known, see, e.g., Arnon et al., "Monoclonal Antibodies For Immunotargeting Of Drugs In Cancer Therapy", in Monoclonal Antibodies And Cancer Therapy, Reisfeld et al. (eds.), pp. 243-56 (Alan R. Liss, Inc. 1985); Hellstrom et al., "Antibodies For Drug Delivery", in Controlled Drug Delivery (2nd Ed.), Robinson et al. (eds.), pp. 623-53 (Marcel Dekker, Inc. 1987); Thorpe, "Antibody Carriers Of Cytotoxic Agents In Cancer Therapy: A Review", in Monoclonal Antibodies '84: Biological And Clinical Applications, Pinchera et al. (eds.), pp. 475-506 (1985); "Analysis, Results, And Future Prospective Of The Therapeutic Use Of Radiolabeled Antibody In Cancer Therapy", in Monoclonal Antibodies For Cancer Detection And Therapy, Baldwin et al. (eds.), pp. 303-16 (Academic Press 1985), and Thorpe et al., "The Preparation And Cytotoxic Properties Of Antibody-Toxin Conjugates", Immunol. Rev. 62:119-58 (1982).

Alternatively, an antibody can be conjugated to a second antibody to form an antibody heteroconjugate as described by Segal in U.S. Patent No. 4,676,980, which is incorporated herein by reference in its entirety.

An antibody, with or without a therapeutic moiety conjugated to it, administered alone or in combination with cytotoxic factor(s) and/or cytokine(s) can be used as a therapeutic.

### **Immunophenotyping**

The antibodies of the invention may be utilized for immunophenotyping of cell lines and biological samples. The translation product of the gene of the present invention may be useful as a cell specific marker, or more specifically as a cellular marker that is differentially expressed at various stages of differentiation and/or maturation of particular cell types. Monoclonal antibodies directed against a specific epitope, or combination of epitopes, will allow for the screening of cellular populations expressing the marker. Various techniques can be utilized using monoclonal antibodies to screen for cellular populations expressing the marker(s), and include magnetic separation using antibody-coated magnetic beads, "panning" with antibody attached to a solid matrix (i.e., plate), and flow cytometry (See, e.g., U.S. Patent 5,985,660; and Morrison *et al.*, *Cell*, 96:737-49 (1999)).

These techniques allow for the screening of particular populations of cells, such as might be found with hematological malignancies (i.e. minimal residual disease (MRD) in acute leukemic patients) and "non-self" cells in transplantations to prevent Graft-versus-Host Disease (GVHD). Alternatively, these techniques allow for the screening of hematopoietic stem and progenitor cells capable of undergoing proliferation and/or differentiation, as might be found in human umbilical cord blood.

### **Assays For Antibody Binding**

The antibodies of the invention may be assayed for immunospecific binding by any method known in the art. The immunoassays which can be used include but are not limited to competitive and non-competitive assay systems using techniques such as western blots, radioimmunoassays, ELISA (enzyme linked immunosorbent assay), "sandwich" immunoassays, immunoprecipitation assays, precipitin reactions, gel diffusion precipitin reactions, immunodiffusion assays, agglutination assays, complement-fixation assays, immunoradiometric assays, fluorescent immunoassays, protein A immunoassays, to name but a few. Such assays are routine and well known in the art (see, e.g., Ausubel et al, eds, 1994, Current Protocols in Molecular Biology, Vol. 1, John Wiley & Sons, Inc., New York, which is incorporated by reference herein in its entirety). Exemplary immunoassays are described briefly below (but are not intended by way of limitation).

Immunoprecipitation protocols generally comprise lysing a population of cells in a lysis buffer such as RIPA buffer (1% NP-40 or Triton X- 100, 1% sodium deoxycholate, 0.1% SDS, 0.15 M NaCl, 0.01 M sodium phosphate at pH 7.2, 1% Trasylol) supplemented with protein phosphatase and/or protease inhibitors (e.g., EDTA, PMSF, aprotinin, sodium vanadate), adding the antibody of interest to the cell lysate, incubating for a period of time (e.g., 1-4 hours) at 4° C, adding protein A and/or protein G sepharose beads to the cell lysate, incubating for about an hour or more at 4° C, washing the beads in lysis buffer and resuspending the beads in SDS/sample buffer. The ability of the antibody of interest to immunoprecipitate a particular antigen can be assessed by, e.g., western blot analysis. One of skill in the art would be knowledgeable as to the parameters that can be modified to increase the binding of the antibody to an antigen and decrease the background (e.g., pre-clearing the cell lysate with sepharose beads). For further discussion regarding

immunoprecipitation protocols see, e.g., Ausubel et al, eds, 1994, Current Protocols in Molecular Biology, Vol. 1, John Wiley & Sons, Inc., New York at 10.16.1.

Western blot analysis generally comprises preparing protein samples, electrophoresis of the protein samples in a polyacrylamide gel (e.g., 8%- 20% SDS-PAGE depending on the molecular weight of the antigen), transferring the protein sample from the polyacrylamide gel to a membrane such as nitrocellulose, PVDF or nylon, blocking the membrane in blocking solution (e.g., PBS with 3% BSA or non-fat milk), washing the membrane in washing buffer (e.g., PBS-Tween 20), blocking the membrane with primary antibody (the antibody of interest) diluted in blocking buffer, washing the membrane in washing buffer, blocking the membrane with a secondary antibody (which recognizes the primary antibody, e.g., an anti-human antibody) conjugated to an enzymatic substrate (e.g., horseradish peroxidase or alkaline phosphatase) or radioactive molecule (e.g.,  $^{32}\text{P}$  or  $^{125}\text{I}$ ) diluted in blocking buffer, washing the membrane in wash buffer, and detecting the presence of the antigen. One of skill in the art would be knowledgeable as to the parameters that can be modified to increase the signal detected and to reduce the background noise. For further discussion regarding western blot protocols see, e.g., Ausubel et al, eds, 1994, Current Protocols in Molecular Biology, Vol. 1, John Wiley & Sons, Inc., New York at 10.8.1.

ELISAs comprise preparing antigen, coating the well of a 96 well microtiter plate with the antigen, adding the antibody of interest conjugated to a detectable compound such as an enzymatic substrate (e.g., horseradish peroxidase or alkaline phosphatase) to the well and incubating for a period of time, and detecting the presence of the antigen. In ELISAs the antibody of interest does not have to be conjugated to a detectable compound; instead, a second antibody (which recognizes the antibody of interest) conjugated to a detectable compound may be added to the well. Further, instead of coating the well with the antigen, the antibody may be coated to the well. In this case, a second antibody conjugated to a detectable compound may be added following the addition of the antigen of interest to the coated well. One of skill in the art would be knowledgeable as to the parameters that can be modified to increase the signal detected as well as other variations of ELISAs known in the art. For further discussion regarding ELISAs see, e.g., Ausubel et al, eds, 1994, Current Protocols in Molecular Biology, Vol. 1, John Wiley & Sons, Inc., New York at 11.2.1.

The binding affinity of an antibody to an antigen and the off-rate of an antibody-antigen interaction can be determined by competitive binding assays. One example of a



competitive binding assay is a radioimmunoassay comprising the incubation of labeled antigen (e.g.,  $^3\text{H}$  or  $^{125}\text{I}$ ) with the antibody of interest in the presence of increasing amounts of unlabeled antigen, and the detection of the antibody bound to the labeled antigen. The affinity of the antibody of interest for a particular antigen and the binding off-rates can be determined from the data by scatchard plot analysis. Competition with a second antibody can also be determined using radioimmunoassays. In this case, the antigen is incubated with antibody of interest conjugated to a labeled compound (e.g.,  $^3\text{H}$  or  $^{125}\text{I}$ ) in the presence of increasing amounts of an unlabeled second antibody.

## 10 Therapeutic Uses

The present invention is further directed to antibody-based therapies which involve administering antibodies of the invention to an animal, preferably a mammal, and most preferably a human, patient for treating one or more of the disclosed diseases, disorders, or conditions. Therapeutic compounds of the invention include, but are not limited to, antibodies of the invention (including fragments, analogs and derivatives thereof as described herein) and nucleic acids encoding antibodies of the invention (including fragments, analogs and derivatives thereof and anti-idiotypic antibodies as described herein). The antibodies of the invention can be used to treat, inhibit or prevent diseases, disorders or conditions associated with aberrant expression and/or activity of a polypeptide of the invention, including, but not limited to, any one or more of the diseases, disorders, or conditions described herein. The treatment and/or prevention of diseases, disorders, or conditions associated with aberrant expression and/or activity of a polypeptide of the invention includes, but is not limited to, alleviating symptoms associated with those diseases, disorders or conditions. Antibodies of the invention may be provided in pharmaceutically acceptable compositions as known in the art or as described herein.

A summary of the ways in which the antibodies of the present invention may be used therapeutically includes binding polynucleotides or polypeptides of the present invention locally or systemically in the body or by direct cytotoxicity of the antibody, e.g. as mediated by complement (CDC) or by effector cells (ADCC). Some of these approaches are described in more detail below. Armed with the teachings provided herein, one of ordinary skill in the art will know how to use the antibodies of the present invention for diagnostic, monitoring or therapeutic purposes without undue experimentation.

The antibodies of this invention may be advantageously utilized in combination with other monoclonal or chimeric antibodies, or with lymphokines or hematopoietic growth factors (such as, e.g., IL-2, IL-3 and IL-7), for example, which serve to increase the number or activity of effector cells which interact with the antibodies.

5 The antibodies of the invention may be administered alone or in combination with other types of treatments (e.g., radiation therapy, chemotherapy, hormonal therapy, immunotherapy and anti-tumor agents). Generally, administration of products of a species origin or species reactivity (in the case of antibodies) that is the same species as that of the patient is preferred. Thus, in a preferred embodiment, human antibodies, fragments  
10 derivatives, analogs, or nucleic acids, are administered to a human patient for therapy or prophylaxis.

It is preferred to use high affinity and/or potent in vivo inhibiting and/or neutralizing antibodies against polypeptides or polynucleotides of the present invention, fragments or regions thereof, for both immunoassays directed to and therapy of disorders related to  
15 polynucleotides or polypeptides, including fragments thereof, of the present invention. Such antibodies, fragments, or regions, will preferably have an affinity for polynucleotides or polypeptides of the invention, including fragments thereof. Preferred binding affinities include those with a dissociation constant or  $K_d$  less than  $5 \times 10^{-2}$  M,  $10^{-2}$  M,  $5 \times 10^{-3}$  M,  $10^{-3}$  M,  $5 \times 10^{-4}$  M,  $10^{-4}$  M,  $5 \times 10^{-5}$  M,  $10^{-5}$  M,  $5 \times 10^{-6}$  M,  $10^{-6}$  M,  $5 \times 10^{-7}$  M,  $10^{-7}$  M,  $5 \times$   
20  $10^{-8}$  M,  $10^{-8}$  M,  $5 \times 10^{-9}$  M,  $10^{-9}$  M,  $5 \times 10^{-10}$  M,  $10^{-10}$  M,  $5 \times 10^{-11}$  M,  $10^{-11}$  M,  $5 \times 10^{-12}$  M,  $10^{-12}$  M,  $5 \times 10^{-13}$  M,  $10^{-13}$  M,  $5 \times 10^{-14}$  M,  $10^{-14}$  M,  $5 \times 10^{-15}$  M, and  $10^{-15}$  M.

### Gene Therapy

In a specific embodiment, nucleic acids comprising sequences encoding antibodies or  
25 functional derivatives thereof, are administered to treat, inhibit or prevent a disease or disorder associated with aberrant expression and/or activity of a polypeptide of the invention, by way of gene therapy. Gene therapy refers to therapy performed by the administration to a subject of an expressed or expressible nucleic acid. In this embodiment of the invention, the nucleic acids produce their encoded protein that mediates a therapeutic effect.

30 Any of the methods for gene therapy available in the art can be used according to the present invention. Exemplary methods are described below.

For general reviews of the methods of gene therapy, see Goldspiel et al., *Clinical Pharmacy* 12:488-505 (1993); Wu and Wu, *Biotherapy* 3:87-95 (1991); Tolstoshev, *Ann. Rev. Pharmacol. Toxicol.* 32:573-596 (1993); Mulligan, *Science* 260:926-932 (1993); and Morgan and Anderson, *Ann. Rev. Biochem.* 62:191-217 (1993); May, *TIBTECH* 11(5):155-215 (1993). Methods commonly known in the art of recombinant DNA technology which can be used are described in Ausubel et al. (eds.), *Current Protocols in Molecular Biology*, John Wiley & Sons, NY (1993); and Kriegler, *Gene Transfer and Expression, A Laboratory Manual*, Stockton Press, NY (1990).

In a preferred aspect, the compound comprises nucleic acid sequences encoding an antibody, said nucleic acid sequences being part of expression vectors that express the antibody or fragments or chimeric proteins or heavy or light chains thereof in a suitable host. In particular, such nucleic acid sequences have promoters operably linked to the antibody coding region, said promoter being inducible or constitutive, and, optionally, tissue-specific. In another particular embodiment, nucleic acid molecules are used in which the antibody coding sequences and any other desired sequences are flanked by regions that promote homologous recombination at a desired site in the genome, thus providing for intrachromosomal expression of the antibody encoding nucleic acids (Koller and Smithies, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 86:8932-8935 (1989); Zijlstra et al., *Nature* 342:435-438 (1989). In specific embodiments, the expressed antibody molecule is a single chain antibody; alternatively, the nucleic acid sequences include sequences encoding both the heavy and light chains, or fragments thereof, of the antibody.

Delivery of the nucleic acids into a patient may be either direct, in which case the patient is directly exposed to the nucleic acid or nucleic acid-carrying vectors, or indirect, in which case, cells are first transformed with the nucleic acids in vitro, then transplanted into the patient. These two approaches are known, respectively, as in vivo or ex vivo gene therapy.

In a specific embodiment, the nucleic acid sequences are directly administered in vivo, where it is expressed to produce the encoded product. This can be accomplished by any of numerous methods known in the art, e.g., by constructing them as part of an appropriate nucleic acid expression vector and administering it so that they become intracellular, e.g., by infection using defective or attenuated retrovirals or other viral vectors (see U.S. Patent No. 4,980,286), or by direct injection of naked DNA, or by use of

microparticle bombardment (e.g., a gene gun; Biolistic, Dupont), or coating with lipids or cell-surface receptors or transfecting agents, encapsulation in liposomes, microparticles, or microcapsules, or by administering them in linkage to a peptide which is known to enter the nucleus, by administering it in linkage to a ligand subject to receptor-mediated endocytosis (see, e.g., Wu and Wu, J. Biol. Chem. 262:4429-4432 (1987)) (which can be used to target cell types specifically expressing the receptors), etc. In another embodiment, nucleic acid-ligand complexes can be formed in which the ligand comprises a fusogenic viral peptide to disrupt endosomes, allowing the nucleic acid to avoid lysosomal degradation. In yet another embodiment, the nucleic acid can be targeted in vivo for cell specific uptake and expression, by targeting a specific receptor (see, e.g., PCT Publications WO 92/06180; WO 92/22635; WO92/20316; WO93/14188, WO 93/20221). Alternatively, the nucleic acid can be introduced intracellularly and incorporated within host cell DNA for expression, by homologous recombination (Koller and Smithies, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 86:8932-8935 (1989); Zijlstra et al., Nature 342:435-438 (1989)).

In a specific embodiment, viral vectors that contains nucleic acid sequences encoding an antibody of the invention are used. For example, a retroviral vector can be used (see Miller et al., Meth. Enzymol. 217:581-599 (1993)). These retroviral vectors contain the components necessary for the correct packaging of the viral genome and integration into the host cell DNA. The nucleic acid sequences encoding the antibody to be used in gene therapy are cloned into one or more vectors, which facilitates delivery of the gene into a patient. More detail about retroviral vectors can be found in Boesen et al., Biotherapy 6:291-302 (1994), which describes the use of a retroviral vector to deliver the *mdr1* gene to hematopoietic stem cells in order to make the stem cells more resistant to chemotherapy. Other references illustrating the use of retroviral vectors in gene therapy are: Clowes et al., J. Clin. Invest. 93:644-651 (1994); Kiem et al., Blood 83:1467-1473 (1994); Salmons and Gunzberg, Human Gene Therapy 4:129-141 (1993); and Grossman and Wilson, Curr. Opin. in Genetics and Devel. 3:110-114 (1993).

Adenoviruses are other viral vectors that can be used in gene therapy. Adenoviruses are especially attractive vehicles for delivering genes to respiratory epithelia. Adenoviruses naturally infect respiratory epithelia where they cause a mild disease. Other targets for adenovirus-based delivery systems are liver, the central nervous system, endothelial cells, and muscle. Adenoviruses have the advantage of being capable of infecting non-dividing

cells. Kozarsky and Wilson, *Current Opinion in Genetics and Development* 3:499-503 (1993) present a review of adenovirus-based gene therapy. Bout et al., *Human Gene Therapy* 5:3-10 (1994) demonstrated the use of adenovirus vectors to transfer genes to the respiratory epithelia of rhesus monkeys. Other instances of the use of adenoviruses in gene therapy can be found in Rosenfeld et al., *Science* 252:431-434 (1991); Rosenfeld et al., *Cell* 68:143- 155 (1992); Mastrangeli et al., *J. Clin. Invest.* 91:225-234 (1993); PCT Publication WO94/12649; and Wang, et al., *Gene Therapy* 2:775-783 (1995). In a preferred embodiment, adenovirus vectors are used.

Adeno-associated virus (AAV) has also been proposed for use in gene therapy (Walsh et al., *Proc. Soc. Exp. Biol. Med.* 204:289-300 (1993); U.S. Patent No. 5,436,146).

Another approach to gene therapy involves transferring a gene to cells in tissue culture by such methods as electroporation, lipofection, calcium phosphate mediated transfection, or viral infection. Usually, the method of transfer includes the transfer of a selectable marker to the cells. The cells are then placed under selection to isolate those cells that have taken up and are expressing the transferred gene. Those cells are then delivered to a patient.

In this embodiment, the nucleic acid is introduced into a cell prior to administration in vivo of the resulting recombinant cell. Such introduction can be carried out by any method known in the art, including but not limited to transfection, electroporation, microinjection, infection with a viral or bacteriophage vector containing the nucleic acid sequences, cell fusion, chromosome-mediated gene transfer, microcell-mediated gene transfer, spheroplast fusion, etc. Numerous techniques are known in the art for the introduction of foreign genes into cells (see, e.g., Loeffler and Behr, *Meth. Enzymol.* 217:599-618 (1993); Cohen et al., *Meth. Enzymol.* 217:618-644 (1993); Cline, *Pharmac. Ther.* 29:69-92m (1985) and may be used in accordance with the present invention, provided that the necessary developmental and physiological functions of the recipient cells are not disrupted. The technique should provide for the stable transfer of the nucleic acid to the cell, so that the nucleic acid is expressible by the cell and preferably heritable and expressible by its cell progeny.

The resulting recombinant cells can be delivered to a patient by various methods known in the art. Recombinant blood cells (e.g., hematopoietic stem or progenitor cells) are preferably administered intravenously. The amount of cells envisioned for use depends on the desired effect, patient state, etc., and can be determined by one skilled in the art.

Cells into which a nucleic acid can be introduced for purposes of gene therapy encompass any desired, available cell type, and include but are not limited to epithelial cells, endothelial cells, keratinocytes, fibroblasts, muscle cells, hepatocytes; blood cells such as Tlymphocytes, Blymphocytes, monocytes, macrophages, neutrophils, eosinophils, megakaryocytes, granulocytes; various stem or progenitor cells, in particular hematopoietic stem or progenitor cells, e.g., as obtained from bone marrow, umbilical cord blood, peripheral blood, fetal liver, etc.

In a preferred embodiment, the cell used for gene therapy is autologous to the patient.

In an embodiment in which recombinant cells are used in gene therapy, nucleic acid sequences encoding an antibody are introduced into the cells such that they are expressible by the cells or their progeny, and the recombinant cells are then administered in vivo for therapeutic effect. In a specific embodiment, stem or progenitor cells are used. Any stem and/or progenitor cells which can be isolated and maintained in vitro can potentially be used in accordance with this embodiment of the present invention (see e.g. PCT Publication WO 94/08598; Stemple and Anderson, Cell 71:973-985 (1992); Rheinwald, Meth. Cell Bio. 21A:229 (1980); and Pittelkow and Scott, Mayo Clinic Proc. 61:771 (1986)).

In a specific embodiment, the nucleic acid to be introduced for purposes of gene therapy comprises an inducible promoter operably linked to the coding region, such that expression of the nucleic acid is controllable by controlling the presence or absence of the appropriate inducer of transcription. Demonstration of Therapeutic or Prophylactic Activity

The compounds or pharmaceutical compositions of the invention are preferably tested in vitro, and then in vivo for the desired therapeutic or prophylactic activity, prior to use in humans. For example, in vitro assays to demonstrate the therapeutic or prophylactic utility of a compound or pharmaceutical composition include, the effect of a compound on a cell line or a patient tissue sample. The effect of the compound or composition on the cell line and/or tissue sample can be determined utilizing techniques known to those of skill in the art including, but not limited to, rosette formation assays and cell lysis assays. In accordance with the invention, in vitro assays which can be used to determine whether administration of a specific compound is indicated, include in vitro cell culture assays in which a patient tissue sample is grown in culture, and exposed to or otherwise administered a compound, and the effect of such compound upon the tissue sample is observed.

### Therapeutic/Prophylactic Administration and Composition

The invention provides methods of treatment, inhibition and prophylaxis by administration to a subject of an effective amount of a compound or pharmaceutical composition of the invention, preferably an antibody of the invention. In a preferred aspect, the compound is substantially purified (e.g., substantially free from substances that limit its effect or produce undesired side-effects). The subject is preferably an animal, including but not limited to animals such as cows, pigs, horses, chickens, cats, dogs, etc., and is preferably a mammal, and most preferably human.

Formulations and methods of administration that can be employed when the compound comprises a nucleic acid or an immunoglobulin are described above; additional appropriate formulations and routes of administration can be selected from among those described herein below.

Various delivery systems are known and can be used to administer a compound of the invention, e.g., encapsulation in liposomes, microparticles, microcapsules, recombinant cells capable of expressing the compound, receptor-mediated endocytosis (see, e.g., Wu and Wu, J. Biol. Chem. 262:4429-4432 (1987)), construction of a nucleic acid as part of a retroviral or other vector, etc. Methods of introduction include but are not limited to intradermal, intramuscular, intraperitoneal, intravenous, subcutaneous, intranasal, epidural, and oral routes. The compounds or compositions may be administered by any convenient route, for example by infusion or bolus injection, by absorption through epithelial or mucocutaneous linings (e.g., oral mucosa, rectal and intestinal mucosa, etc.) and may be administered together with other biologically active agents. Administration can be systemic or local. In addition, it may be desirable to introduce the pharmaceutical compounds or compositions of the invention into the central nervous system by any suitable route, including intraventricular and intrathecal injection; intraventricular injection may be facilitated by an intraventricular catheter, for example, attached to a reservoir, such as an Ommaya reservoir. Pulmonary administration can also be employed, e.g., by use of an inhaler or nebulizer, and formulation with an aerosolizing agent.

In a specific embodiment, it may be desirable to administer the pharmaceutical compounds or compositions of the invention locally to the area in need of treatment; this may be achieved by, for example, and not by way of limitation, local infusion during surgery, topical application, e.g., in conjunction with a wound dressing after surgery, by injection, by

means of a catheter, by means of a suppository, or by means of an implant, said implant being of a porous, non-porous, or gelatinous material, including membranes, such as sialastic membranes, or fibers. Preferably, when administering a protein, including an antibody, of the invention, care must be taken to use materials to which the protein does not absorb.

5 In another embodiment, the compound or composition can be delivered in a vesicle, in particular a liposome (see Langer, *Science* 249:1527-1533 (1990); Treat et al., in *Liposomes in the Therapy of Infectious Disease and Cancer*, Lopez-Berestein and Fidler (eds.), Liss, New York, pp. 353- 365 (1989); Lopez-Berestein, *ibid.*, pp. 317-327; see generally *ibid.*)

10 In yet another embodiment, the compound or composition can be delivered in a controlled release system. In one embodiment, a pump may be used (see Langer, *supra*; Sefton, *CRC Crit. Ref. Biomed. Eng.* 14:201 (1987); Buchwald et al., *Surgery* 88:507 (1980); Saudek et al., *N. Engl. J. Med.* 321:574 (1989)). In another embodiment, polymeric materials can be used (see *Medical Applications of Controlled Release*, Langer and Wise (eds.), CRC Pres., Boca Raton, Florida (1974); *Controlled Drug Bioavailability, Drug*  
 15 *Product Design and Performance*, Smolen and Ball (eds.), Wiley, New York (1984); Ranger and Peppas, J., *Macromol. Sci. Rev. Macromol. Chem.* 23:61 (1983); see also Levy et al., *Science* 228:190 (1985); During et al., *Ann. Neurol.* 25:351 (1989); Howard et al., *J. Neurosurg.* 71:105 (1989)). In yet another embodiment, a controlled release system can be placed in proximity of the therapeutic target, i.e., the brain, thus requiring only a fraction of  
 20 the systemic dose (see, e.g., Goodson, in *Medical Applications of Controlled Release*, *supra*, vol. 2, pp. 115-138 (1984)).

Other controlled release systems are discussed in the review by Langer (*Science* 249:1527-1533 (1990)).

25 In a specific embodiment where the compound of the invention is a nucleic acid encoding a protein, the nucleic acid can be administered *in vivo* to promote expression of its encoded protein, by constructing it as part of an appropriate nucleic acid expression vector and administering it so that it becomes intracellular, e.g., by use of a retroviral vector (see U.S. Patent No. 4,980,286), or by direct injection, or by use of microparticle bombardment (e.g., a gene gun; Biolistic, Dupont), or coating with lipids or cell-surface receptors or  
 30 transfecting agents, or by administering it in linkage to a homeobox- like peptide which is known to enter the nucleus (see e.g., Joliot et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 88:1864-1868



(1991)), etc. Alternatively, a nucleic acid can be introduced intracellularly and incorporated within host cell DNA for expression, by homologous recombination.

The present invention also provides pharmaceutical compositions. Such compositions comprise a therapeutically effective amount of a compound, and a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier. In a specific embodiment, the term "pharmaceutically acceptable" means approved by a regulatory agency of the Federal or a state government or listed in the U.S. Pharmacopeia or other generally recognized pharmacopeia for use in animals, and more particularly in humans. The term "carrier" refers to a diluent, adjuvant, excipient, or vehicle with which the therapeutic is administered. Such pharmaceutical carriers can be sterile liquids, such as water and oils, including those of petroleum, animal, vegetable or synthetic origin, such as peanut oil, soybean oil, mineral oil, sesame oil and the like. Water is a preferred carrier when the pharmaceutical composition is administered intravenously. Saline solutions and aqueous dextrose and glycerol solutions can also be employed as liquid carriers, particularly for injectable solutions. Suitable pharmaceutical excipients include starch, glucose, lactose, sucrose, gelatin, malt, rice, flour, chalk, silica gel, sodium stearate, glycerol monostearate, talc, sodium chloride, dried skim milk, glycerol, propylene, glycol, water, ethanol and the like. The composition, if desired, can also contain minor amounts of wetting or emulsifying agents, or pH buffering agents. These compositions can take the form of solutions, suspensions, emulsion, tablets, pills, capsules, powders, sustained-release formulations and the like. The composition can be formulated as a suppository, with traditional binders and carriers such as triglycerides. Oral formulation can include standard carriers such as pharmaceutical grades of mannitol, lactose, starch, magnesium stearate, sodium saccharine, cellulose, magnesium carbonate, etc. Examples of suitable pharmaceutical carriers are described in "Remington's Pharmaceutical Sciences" by E.W. Martin. Such compositions will contain a therapeutically effective amount of the compound, preferably in purified form, together with a suitable amount of carrier so as to provide the form for proper administration to the patient. The formulation should suit the mode of administration.

In a preferred embodiment, the composition is formulated in accordance with routine procedures as a pharmaceutical composition adapted for intravenous administration to human beings. Typically, compositions for intravenous administration are solutions in sterile isotonic aqueous buffer. Where necessary, the composition may also include a solubilizing

agent and a local anesthetic such as lignocaine to ease pain at the site of the injection. Generally, the ingredients are supplied either separately or mixed together in unit dosage form, for example, as a dry lyophilized powder or water free concentrate in a hermetically sealed container such as an ampoule or sachette indicating the quantity of active agent.

- 5 Where the composition is to be administered by infusion, it can be dispensed with an infusion bottle containing sterile pharmaceutical grade water or saline. Where the composition is administered by injection, an ampoule of sterile water for injection or saline can be provided so that the ingredients may be mixed prior to administration.

The compounds of the invention can be formulated as neutral or salt forms.

- 10 Pharmaceutically acceptable salts include those formed with anions such as those derived from hydrochloric, phosphoric, acetic, oxalic, tartaric acids, etc., and those formed with cations such as those derived from sodium, potassium, ammonium, calcium, ferric hydroxides, isopropylamine, triethylamine, 2-ethylamino ethanol, histidine, procaine, etc.

- 15 The amount of the compound of the invention which will be effective in the treatment, inhibition and prevention of a disease or disorder associated with aberrant expression and/or activity of a polypeptide of the invention can be determined by standard clinical techniques. In addition, in vitro assays may optionally be employed to help identify optimal dosage ranges. The precise dose to be employed in the formulation will also depend on the route of administration, and the seriousness of the disease or disorder, and should be  
20 decided according to the judgment of the practitioner and each patient's circumstances. Effective doses may be extrapolated from dose-response curves derived from in vitro or animal model test systems.

- For antibodies, the dosage administered to a patient is typically 0.1 mg/kg to 100 mg/kg of the patient's body weight. Preferably, the dosage administered to a patient is  
25 between 0.1 mg/kg and 20 mg/kg of the patient's body weight, more preferably 1 mg/kg to 10 mg/kg of the patient's body weight. Generally, human antibodies have a longer half-life within the human body than antibodies from other species due to the immune response to the foreign polypeptides. Thus, lower dosages of human antibodies and less frequent administration is often possible. Further, the dosage and frequency of administration of  
30 antibodies of the invention may be reduced by enhancing uptake and tissue penetration (e.g., into the brain) of the antibodies by modifications such as, for example, lipidation.

The invention also provides a pharmaceutical pack or kit comprising one or more containers filled with one or more of the ingredients of the pharmaceutical compositions of the invention. Optionally associated with such container(s) can be a notice in the form prescribed by a governmental agency regulating the manufacture, use or sale of pharmaceuticals or biological products, which notice reflects approval by the agency of manufacture, use or sale for human administration. Diagnosis and Imaging

Labeled antibodies, and derivatives and analogs thereof, which specifically bind to a polypeptide of interest can be used for diagnostic purposes to detect, diagnose, or monitor diseases and/or disorders associated with the aberrant expression and/or activity of a polypeptide of the invention. The invention provides for the detection of aberrant expression of a polypeptide of interest, comprising (a) assaying the expression of the polypeptide of interest in cells or body fluid of an individual using one or more antibodies specific to the polypeptide interest and (b) comparing the level of gene expression with a standard gene expression level, whereby an increase or decrease in the assayed polypeptide gene expression level compared to the standard expression level is indicative of aberrant expression.

The invention provides a diagnostic assay for diagnosing a disorder, comprising (a) assaying the expression of the polypeptide of interest in cells or body fluid of an individual using one or more antibodies specific to the polypeptide interest and (b) comparing the level of gene expression with a standard gene expression level, whereby an increase or decrease in the assayed polypeptide gene expression level compared to the standard expression level is indicative of a particular disorder. With respect to cancer, the presence of a relatively high amount of transcript in biopsied tissue from an individual may indicate a predisposition for the development of the disease, or may provide a means for detecting the disease prior to the appearance of actual clinical symptoms. A more definitive diagnosis of this type may allow health professionals to employ preventative measures or aggressive treatment earlier thereby preventing the development or further progression of the cancer.

Antibodies of the invention can be used to assay protein levels in a biological sample using classical immunohistological methods known to those of skill in the art (e.g., see Jalkanen, et al., J. Cell. Biol. 101:976-985 (1985); Jalkanen, et al., J. Cell . Biol. 105:3087-3096 (1987)). Other antibody-based methods useful for detecting protein gene expression include immunoassays, such as the enzyme linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA) and the radioimmunoassay (RIA). Suitable antibody assay labels are known in the art and include

enzyme labels, such as, glucose oxidase; radioisotopes, such as iodine (125I, 121I), carbon (14C), sulfur (35S), tritium (3H), indium (112In), and technetium (99Tc); luminescent labels, such as luminol; and fluorescent labels, such as fluorescein and rhodamine, and biotin.

One aspect of the invention is the detection and diagnosis of a disease or disorder associated with aberrant expression of a polypeptide of interest in an animal, preferably a mammal and most preferably a human. In one embodiment, diagnosis comprises: a) administering (for example, parenterally, subcutaneously, or intraperitoneally) to a subject an effective amount of a labeled molecule which specifically binds to the polypeptide of interest; b) waiting for a time interval following the administering for permitting the labeled molecule to preferentially concentrate at sites in the subject where the polypeptide is expressed (and for unbound labeled molecule to be cleared to background level); c) determining background level; and d) detecting the labeled molecule in the subject, such that detection of labeled molecule above the background level indicates that the subject has a particular disease or disorder associated with aberrant expression of the polypeptide of interest. Background level can be determined by various methods including, comparing the amount of labeled molecule detected to a standard value previously determined for a particular system.

It will be understood in the art that the size of the subject and the imaging system used will determine the quantity of imaging moiety needed to produce diagnostic images. In the case of a radioisotope moiety, for a human subject, the quantity of radioactivity injected will normally range from about 5 to 20 millicuries of 99mTc. The labeled antibody or antibody fragment will then preferentially accumulate at the location of cells which contain the specific protein. In vivo tumor imaging is described in S.W. Burchiel et al., "Immunopharmacokinetics of Radiolabeled Antibodies and Their Fragments." (Chapter 13 in Tumor Imaging: The Radiochemical Detection of Cancer, S.W. Burchiel and B. A. Rhodes, eds., Masson Publishing Inc. (1982).

Depending on several variables, including the type of label used and the mode of administration, the time interval following the administration for permitting the labeled molecule to preferentially concentrate at sites in the subject and for unbound labeled molecule to be cleared to background level is 6 to 48 hours or 6 to 24 hours or 6 to 12 hours. In another embodiment the time interval following administration is 5 to 20 days or 5 to 10 days.

In an embodiment, monitoring of the disease or disorder is carried out by repeating the method for diagnosing the disease or disease, for example, one month after initial diagnosis, six months after initial diagnosis, one year after initial diagnosis, etc.

Presence of the labeled molecule can be detected in the patient using methods known in the art for in vivo scanning. These methods depend upon the type of label used. Skilled artisans will be able to determine the appropriate method for detecting a particular label. Methods and devices that may be used in the diagnostic methods of the invention include, but are not limited to, computed tomography (CT), whole body scan such as position emission tomography (PET), magnetic resonance imaging (MRI), and sonography.

In a specific embodiment, the molecule is labeled with a radioisotope and is detected in the patient using a radiation responsive surgical instrument (Thurston et al., U.S. Patent No. 5,441,050). In another embodiment, the molecule is labeled with a fluorescent compound and is detected in the patient using a fluorescence responsive scanning instrument. In another embodiment, the molecule is labeled with a positron emitting metal and is detected in the patient using positron emission-tomography. In yet another embodiment, the molecule is labeled with a paramagnetic label and is detected in a patient using magnetic resonance imaging (MRI).

### Kits

The present invention provides kits that can be used in the above methods. In one embodiment, a kit comprises an antibody of the invention, preferably a purified antibody, in one or more containers. In a specific embodiment, the kits of the present invention contain a substantially isolated polypeptide comprising an epitope which is specifically immunoreactive with an antibody included in the kit. Preferably, the kits of the present invention further comprise a control antibody which does not react with the polypeptide of interest. In another specific embodiment, the kits of the present invention contain a means for detecting the binding of an antibody to a polypeptide of interest (e.g., the antibody may be conjugated to a detectable substrate such as a fluorescent compound, an enzymatic substrate, a radioactive compound or a luminescent compound, or a second antibody which recognizes the first antibody may be conjugated to a detectable substrate).

In another specific embodiment of the present invention, the kit is a diagnostic kit for use in screening serum containing antibodies specific against proliferative and/or cancerous

polynucleotides and polypeptides. Such a kit may include a control antibody that does not react with the polypeptide of interest. Such a kit may include a substantially isolated polypeptide antigen comprising an epitope which is specifically immunoreactive with at least one anti-polypeptide antigen antibody. Further, such a kit includes means for detecting the binding of said antibody to the antigen (e.g., the antibody may be conjugated to a fluorescent compound such as fluorescein or rhodamine which can be detected by flow cytometry). In specific embodiments, the kit may include a recombinantly produced or chemically synthesized polypeptide antigen. The polypeptide antigen of the kit may also be attached to a solid support.

In a more specific embodiment the detecting means of the above-described kit includes a solid support to which said polypeptide antigen is attached. Such a kit may also include a non-attached reporter-labeled anti-human antibody. In this embodiment, binding of the antibody to the polypeptide antigen can be detected by binding of the said reporter-labeled antibody.

In an additional embodiment, the invention includes a diagnostic kit for use in screening serum containing antigens of the polypeptide of the invention. The diagnostic kit includes a substantially isolated antibody specifically immunoreactive with polypeptide or polynucleotide antigens, and means for detecting the binding of the polynucleotide or polypeptide antigen to the antibody. In one embodiment, the antibody is attached to a solid support. In a specific embodiment, the antibody may be a monoclonal antibody. The detecting means of the kit may include a second, labeled monoclonal antibody. Alternatively, or in addition, the detecting means may include a labeled, competing antigen.

In one diagnostic configuration, test serum is reacted with a solid phase reagent having a surface-bound antigen obtained by the methods of the present invention. After binding with specific antigen antibody to the reagent and removing unbound serum components by washing, the reagent is reacted with reporter-labeled anti-human antibody to bind reporter to the reagent in proportion to the amount of bound anti-antigen antibody on the solid support. The reagent is again washed to remove unbound labeled antibody, and the amount of reporter associated with the reagent is determined. Typically, the reporter is an enzyme which is detected by incubating the solid phase in the presence of a suitable fluorometric, luminescent or colorimetric substrate (Sigma, St. Louis, MO).

The solid surface reagent in the above assay is prepared by known techniques for attaching protein material to solid support material, such as polymeric beads, dip sticks, 96-well plate or filter material. These attachment methods generally include non-specific adsorption of the protein to the support or covalent attachment of the protein, typically through a free amine group, to a chemically reactive group on the solid support, such as an activated carboxyl, hydroxyl, or aldehyde group. Alternatively, streptavidin coated plates can be used in conjunction with biotinylated antigen(s).

Thus, the invention provides an assay system or kit for carrying out this diagnostic method. The kit generally includes a support with surface-bound recombinant antigens, and a reporter-labeled anti-human antibody for detecting surface-bound anti-antigen antibody.

### **Fusion Proteins**

Any TGF alpha HIII polypeptide can be used to generate fusion proteins. For example, the TGF alpha HIII polypeptide, when fused to a second protein, can be used as an antigenic tag. Antibodies raised against the TGF alpha HIII polypeptide can be used to indirectly detect the second protein by binding to the TGF alpha HIII. Moreover, because secreted proteins target cellular locations based on trafficking signals, the TGF alpha HIII polypeptides can be used as targeting molecules once fused to other proteins.

Examples of domains that can be fused to TGF alpha HIII polypeptides include not only heterologous signal sequences, but also other heterologous functional regions. The fusion does not necessarily need to be direct, but may occur through linker sequences.

In certain preferred embodiments, TGF alpha HIII proteins of the invention comprise fusion proteins wherein the TGF alpha HIII polypeptides are those described above as m-n. In preferred embodiments, the application is directed to nucleic acid molecules at least 90%, 95%, 96%, 97%, 98% or 99% identical to the nucleic acid sequences encoding polypeptides having the amino acid sequence of the specific N- and C-terminal deletions recited herein. Polynucleotides encoding these polypeptides are also encompassed by the invention.

Moreover, fusion proteins may also be engineered to improve characteristics of the TGF alpha HIII polypeptide. For instance, a region of additional amino acids, particularly charged amino acids, may be added to the N-terminus of the TGF alpha HIII polypeptide to improve stability and persistence during purification from the host cell or subsequent handling and storage. Also, peptide moieties may be added to the TGF alpha HIII

polypeptide to facilitate purification. Such regions may be removed prior to final preparation of the TGF alpha HIII polypeptide. The addition of peptide moieties to facilitate handling of polypeptides are familiar and routine techniques in the art.

As one of skill in the art will appreciate, polypeptides of the present invention and the epitope-bearing fragments thereof described above, can be combined with heterologous polypeptide sequences. For example, the polypeptides of the present invention may be fused with heterologous polypeptide sequences, for example, the polypeptides of the present invention may be fused with parts of the constant domain of immunoglobulins (IgA, IgE, IgG, IgM) or portions thereof (CH1, CH2, CH3, and any combination thereof, including both entire domains and portions thereof), resulting in chimeric polypeptides. These fusion proteins facilitate purification and show an increased half-life in vivo. One reported example describes chimeric proteins consisting of the first two domains of the human CD4-polypeptide and various domains of the constant regions of the heavy or light chains of mammalian immunoglobulins. (EP A 394,827; Traunecker et al., Nature 331:84-86 (1988).) Fusion proteins having disulfide-linked dimeric structures (due to the IgG) can also be more efficient in binding and neutralizing other molecules, than the monomeric secreted protein or protein fragment alone. (Fountoulakis et al., J. Biochem. 270:3958-3964 (1995).)

Similarly, EP-A-O 464 533 (Canadian counterpart 2045869) discloses fusion proteins comprising various portions of constant region of immunoglobulin molecules together with another human protein or part thereof. In many cases, the Fc part in a fusion protein is beneficial in therapy and diagnosis, and thus can result in, for example, improved pharmacokinetic properties. (EP-A 0232 262.) Alternatively, deleting the Fc part after the fusion protein has been expressed, detected, and purified, would be desired. For example, the Fc portion may hinder therapy and diagnosis if the fusion protein is used as an antigen for immunizations. In drug discovery, for example, human proteins, such as hIL-5, have been fused with Fc portions for the purpose of high-throughput screening assays to identify antagonists of hIL-5. (See, D. Bennett et al., J. Molecular Recognition 8:52-58 (1995); K. Johanson et al., J. Biol. Chem. 270:9459-9471 (1995).)

Moreover, the TGF alpha HIII polypeptides can be fused to marker sequences, such as a peptide which facilitates purification of TGF alpha HIII. In preferred embodiments, the marker amino acid sequence is a hexa-histidine peptide, such as the tag provided in a pQE vector (QIAGEN, Inc., 9259 Eton Avenue, Chatsworth, CA, 91311), among others, many of



which are commercially available. As described in Gentz et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 86:821-824 (1989), for instance, hexa-histidine provides for convenient purification of the fusion protein. Another peptide tag useful for purification, the "HA" tag, corresponds to an epitope derived from the influenza hemagglutinin protein. (Wilson et al., Cell 37:767 (1984).)

Thus, any of these above fusions can be engineered using the TGF alpha HIII polynucleotides or the polypeptides.

### **Vectors, Host Cells, and Protein Production**

The present invention also relates to vectors containing the TGF alpha HIII polynucleotide, host cells, and the production of polypeptides by recombinant techniques. The vector may be, for example, a phage, plasmid, viral, or retroviral vector. Retroviral vectors may be replication competent or replication defective. In the latter case, viral propagation generally will occur only in complementing host cells.

Host cells are genetically engineered (transduced or transformed or transfected) with the vectors of this invention which may be, for example, a cloning vector or an expression vector. The vector may be, for example, in the form of a plasmid, a viral particle, a phage, etc. The engineered host cells can be cultured in conventional nutrient media modified as appropriate for activating promoters, selecting transformants or amplifying the genes of the present invention. The culture conditions, such as temperature, pH and the like, are those previously used with the host cell selected for expression, and will be apparent to the ordinarily skilled artisan.

The polynucleotides of the present invention may be employed for producing polypeptides by recombinant techniques. Thus, for example, the polynucleotide may be included in any one of a variety of expression vectors for expressing a polypeptide. Such vectors include chromosomal, nonchromosomal and synthetic DNA sequences, e.g., derivatives of SV40; bacterial plasmids; phage DNA; baculovirus; yeast plasmids; vectors derived from combinations of plasmids and phage DNA, viral DNA such as vaccinia, adenovirus, fowl pox virus, and pseudorabies. However, any other vector may be used as long as it is replicable and viable in the host.

The appropriate DNA sequence may be inserted into the vector by a variety of procedures. In general, the DNA sequence is inserted into an appropriate restriction

endonuclease site(s) by procedures known in the art. Such procedures and others are deemed to be within the scope of those skilled in the art. The DNA sequence in the expression vector is operatively linked to an appropriate expression control sequence(s) (promoter) to direct mRNA synthesis. As representative examples of such promoters, there may be mentioned: LTR or SV40 promoter, the *E. coli*. lac or trp, the phage lambda P<sub>L</sub> promoter and other promoters known to control expression of genes in prokaryotic or eukaryotic cells or their viruses. The expression vector also contains a ribosome binding site for translation initiation and a transcription terminator. The vector may also include appropriate sequences for amplifying expression.

In addition, the expression vectors preferably contain one or more selectable marker genes to provide a phenotypic trait for selection of transformed host cells such as dihydrofolate reductase or neomycin - resistance for eukaryotic cell culture, or such as tetracycline or ampicillin resistance in *E. coli*.

The vector containing the appropriate DNA sequence as hereinabove described, as well as an appropriate promoter or control sequence, may be employed to transform an appropriate host to permit the host to express the protein.

As representative examples of appropriate hosts, there may be mentioned: bacterial cells, such as *E. coli*, *Streptomyces*, *Salmonella typhimurium*, fungal cells, such as yeast; insect cells such as *Drosophila* S2 and *Spodoptera* SF9; animal cells such as CHO, COS or Bowes melanoma; adenoviruses; plant cells, etc. The selection of an appropriate host is deemed to be within the scope of those skilled in the art from the teachings herein.

More particularly, the present invention also includes recombinant constructs comprising one or more of the sequences as broadly described above. The constructs comprise a vector, such as a plasmid or viral vector, into which a sequence of the invention has been inserted, in a forward or reverse orientation. In a preferred aspect of this embodiment, the construct further comprises regulatory sequences including, for example, a promoter, operably linked to the sequence. Large numbers of suitable vectors and promoters are known to those of skill in the art, and are commercially available. The following vectors are provided by way of example; Bacterial: pQE70, pQE60, pQE-9 (Qiagen), pBS, pD10, phagescript, psiX174, pbluescript SK, pbsks, pNH8A, PNH16a, pNH18A, pNH46A (Stratagene); ptrc99a, pKK223-3, pKK233-3, pDR540, pRIT5 (Pharmacia); Eukaryotic:

pWLNEO, pSV2CAT, pOG44, pXT1, pSG (Stratagene), pSVK3, pBPV, pMSG, pSVL (Pharmacia). However, any other plasmid or vector may be used as long as they are replicable and viable in the host.

Promoter regions can be selected from any desired gene using CAT (chloramphenicol transferase) vectors or other vectors with selectable markers. Two appropriate vectors are pKK232-8 and pCM7. Particular named bacterial promoters include lacI, lacZ, T3, T7, gpt, lambda P<sub>R</sub>, P<sub>L</sub> and trp. Eukaryotic promoters include CMV immediate early, HSV thymidine kinase, early and late SV40, LTRs from retrovirus, and mouse metallothionein-I. Selection of the appropriate vector and promoter is well within the level of ordinary skill in the art.

In a further embodiment, the present invention relates to host cells containing the above-described constructs. The host cell can be a higher eukaryotic cell, such as a mammalian cell, or a lower eukaryotic cell, such as a yeast cell, or the host cell can be a prokaryotic cell, such as a bacterial cell. Introduction of the construct into the host cell can be effected by calcium phosphate transfection, DEAE-Dextran mediated transfection, or electroporation (Davis, L., Dibner, M., Battey, I., Basic Methods in Molecular Biology, (1986)).

The constructs in host cells can be used in a conventional manner to produce the gene product encoded by the recombinant sequence. Alternatively, the polypeptides of the invention can be synthetically produced by conventional peptide synthesizers.

Mature proteins can be expressed in mammalian cells, yeast, bacteria, or other cells under the control of appropriate promoters. Cell-free translation systems can also be employed to produce such proteins using RNAs derived from the DNA constructs of the present invention. Appropriate cloning and expression vectors for use with prokaryotic and eukaryotic hosts are described by Sambrook, et al., Molecular Cloning: A Laboratory Manual, Second Edition, Cold Spring Harbor, N.Y., (1989), the disclosure of which is hereby incorporated by reference.

Transcription of the DNA encoding the polypeptides of the present invention by higher eukaryotes is increased by inserting an enhancer sequence into the vector. Enhancers are cis-acting elements of DNA, usually about from 10 to 300 bp that act on a promoter to increase its transcription. Examples including the SV40 enhancer on the late side of the replication origin bp 100 to 270, a cytomegalovirus early promoter enhancer, the polyoma enhancer on the late side of the replication origin, and adenovirus enhancers.

Generally, recombinant expression vectors, will include origins of replication and selectable markers permitting transformation of the host cell, e.g., the ampicillin resistance gene of *E. coli* and *S. cerevisiae* TRP1 gene, and a promoter derived from a highly-expressed gene to direct transcription of a downstream structural sequence. Such promoters can be derived from operons encoding glycolytic enzymes such as 3-phosphoglycerate kinase (PGK), alpha factor acid phosphatase, or heat shock proteins, among others. The heterologous structural sequence is assembled in appropriate phase with translation initiation and termination sequences, and preferably, a leader sequence capable of directing secretion of translated protein into the periplasmic space or extracellular medium. Optionally, the heterologous sequence can encode a fusion protein including an N-terminal identification peptide imparting desired characteristics, e.g., stabilization or simplified purification of expressed recombinant product.

Useful expression vectors for bacterial use are constructed by inserting a structural DNA sequence encoding a desired protein together with suitable translation initiation and termination signals in operable reading phase with a functional promoter. The vector will comprise one or more phenotypic selectable markers and an origin of replication to ensure maintenance of the vector and to, if desirable, provide amplification within the host. Suitable prokaryotic hosts for transformation include *E. Bacillus subtilis*, *Salmonella typhimurium* and various species within the genera *Pseudomonas*, *Streptomyces*, and *Staphylococcus*, although others may also be employed as a matter of choice.

As a representative but nonlimiting example, useful expression vectors for bacterial use can comprise a selectable marker and bacterial origin of replication derived from commercially available plasmids comprising genetic elements of the well known cloning vector pBR322 (ATCC 37017). Such commercial vectors include, for example, pKK223-3 (Pharmacia Fine Chemicals, Uppsala, Sweden) and GEM1 (Promega Biotec, Madison, WI, USA). These pBR322 "backbone" sections are combined with an appropriate promoter and the structural sequence to be expressed.

Additionally, TGF alpha HIII polynucleotides may be joined to a vector containing a selectable marker for propagation in a host. Generally, a plasmid vector is introduced in a precipitate, such as a calcium phosphate precipitate, or in a complex with a charged lipid. If the vector is a virus, it may be packaged in vitro using an appropriate packaging cell line and then transduced into host cells.

The TGF alpha HIII polynucleotide insert should be operatively linked to an appropriate promoter, such as the phage lambda PL promoter, the *E. coli* lac, trp, phoA and tac promoters, the SV40 early and late promoters and promoters of retroviral LTRs, to name a few. Other suitable promoters will be known to the skilled artisan. The expression constructs will further contain sites for transcription initiation, termination, and, in the transcribed region, a ribosome binding site for translation. The coding portion of the transcripts expressed by the constructs will preferably include a translation initiating codon at the beginning and a termination codon (UAA, UGA or UAG) appropriately positioned at the end of the polypeptide to be translated.

As indicated, the expression vectors will preferably include at least one selectable marker. Such markers include dihydrofolate reductase, G418 or neomycin resistance for eukaryotic cell culture and tetracycline, kanamycin or ampicillin resistance genes for culturing in *E. coli* and other bacteria. Representative examples of appropriate hosts include, but are not limited to, bacterial cells, such as *E. coli*, *Streptomyces* and *Salmonella typhimurium* cells; fungal cells, such as yeast cells; insect cells such as *Drosophila* S2 and *Spodoptera Sf9* cells; animal cells such as CHO, COS, 293, and Bowes melanoma cells; and plant cells. Appropriate culture mediums and conditions for the above-described host cells are known in the art.

Among vectors preferred for use in bacteria include pQE70, pQE60 and pQE-9, available from QIAGEN, Inc.; pBluescript vectors, Phagescript vectors, pNH8A, pNH16a, pNH18A, pNH46A, available from Stratagene Cloning Systems, Inc.; and ptrc99a, pKK223-3, pKK233-3, pDR540, pRIT5 available from Pharmacia Biotech, Inc. Among preferred eukaryotic vectors are pWLNEO, pSV2CAT, pOG44, pXT1 and pSG available from Stratagene; and pSVK3, pBPV, pMSG and pSVL available from Pharmacia. Other suitable vectors will be readily apparent to the skilled artisan.

Introduction of the construct into the host cell can be effected by calcium phosphate transfection, DEAE-dextran mediated transfection, cationic lipid-mediated transfection, electroporation, transduction, infection, or other methods. Such methods are described in many standard laboratory manuals, such as Davis et al., *Basic Methods In Molecular Biology* (1986). It is specifically contemplated that TGF alpha HIII polypeptides may in fact be expressed by a host cell lacking a recombinant vector.

Following transformation of a suitable host strain and growth of the host strain to an appropriate cell density, the selected promoter is induced by appropriate means (e.g., temperature shift or chemical induction) and cells are cultured for an additional period.

Cells are typically harvested by centrifugation, disrupted by physical or chemical means, and the resulting crude extract retained for further purification.

Microbial cells employed in expression of proteins can be disrupted by any convenient method, including freezethaw cycling, sonication, mechanical disruption, or use of cell lysing agents, such methods are well known to those skilled in the art.

Various mammalian cell culture systems can also be employed to express recombinant protein. Examples of mammalian expression systems include the COS-7 lines of monkey kidney fibroblasts, described by Gluzman, Cell, 23:175 (1981), and other cell lines capable of expressing a compatible vector, for example, the C127, 3T3, CHO, HeLa and BHK cell lines. Mammalian expression vectors will comprise an origin of replication, a suitable promoter and enhancer, and also any necessary ribosome binding sites, polyadenylation site, splice donor and acceptor sites, transcriptional termination sequences, and 5' flanking nontranscribed sequences. DNA sequences derived from the SV40 splice, and polyadenylation sites may be used to provide the required nontranscribed genetic elements.

TGF alpha HIII polypeptides can be recovered and purified from recombinant cell cultures by well-known methods including ammonium sulfate or ethanol precipitation, acid extraction, anion or cation exchange chromatography, phosphocellulose chromatography, hydrophobic interaction chromatography, affinity chromatography, hydroxylapatite chromatography and lectin chromatography. Most preferably, high performance liquid chromatography ("HPLC") is employed for purification.

Additionally, the polypeptides can be recovered and purified from recombinant cell cultures by methods including ammonium sulfate or ethanol precipitation, acid extraction, anion or cation exchange chromatography, phosphocellulose chromatography, hydrophobic interaction chromatography, affinity chromatography, hydroxylapatite chromatography and lectin chromatography. Protein refolding steps can be used, as necessary, in completing configuration of the mature protein. Finally, high performance liquid chromatography (HPLC) can be employed for final purification steps.

The polypeptides of the present invention may be a naturally purified product, or a product of chemical synthetic procedures, or produced by recombinant techniques from a

prokaryotic or eukaryotic host (for example, by bacterial, yeast, higher plant, insect and mammalian cells in culture). Depending upon the host employed in a recombinant production procedure, the polypeptides of the present invention may be glycosylated or may be nonglycosylated. Polypeptides of the invention may also include an initial methionine amino acid residue.

TGF alpha HIII polypeptides, and preferably the secreted form, can also be recovered from: products purified from natural sources, including bodily fluids, tissues and cells, whether directly isolated or cultured; products of chemical synthetic procedures; and products produced by recombinant techniques from a prokaryotic or eukaryotic host, including, for example, bacterial, yeast, higher plant, insect, and mammalian cells. Depending upon the host employed in a recombinant production procedure, the TGF alpha HIII polypeptides may be glycosylated or may be non-glycosylated. In addition, TGF alpha HIII polypeptides may also include an initial modified methionine residue, in some cases as a result of host-mediated processes. Thus, it is well known in the art that the N-terminal methionine encoded by the translation initiation codon generally is removed with high efficiency from any protein after translation in all eukaryotic cells. While the N-terminal methionine on most proteins also is efficiently removed in most prokaryotes, for some proteins, this prokaryotic removal process is inefficient, depending on the nature of the amino acid to which the N-terminal methionine is covalently linked.

In addition to encompassing host cells containing the vector constructs discussed herein, the invention also encompasses primary, secondary, and immortalized host cells of vertebrate origin, particularly mammalian origin, that have been engineered to delete or replace endogenous genetic material (e.g., TGF alpha HIII coding sequence), and/or to include genetic material (e.g., heterologous polynucleotide sequences) that is operably associated with TGF alpha HIII polynucleotides of the invention, and which activates, alters, and/or amplifies endogenous TGF alpha HIII polynucleotides. For example, techniques known in the art may be used to operably associate heterologous control regions (e.g., promoter and/or enhancer) and endogenous TGF alpha HIII polynucleotide sequences via homologous recombination, resulting in the formation of a new transcription unit (see, e.g., U.S. Patent No. 5,641,670, issued June 24, 1997; U.S. Patent No. 5,733,761, issued March 31, 1998; International Publication No. WO 96/29411, published September 26, 1996; International Publication No. WO 94/12650, published August 4, 1994; Koller et al., Proc.

Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 86:8932-8935 (1989); and Zijlstra et al., *Nature* 342:435-438 (1989), the disclosures of each of which are incorporated by reference in their entireties).

In addition, polypeptides of the invention can be chemically synthesized using techniques known in the art (e.g., see Creighton, 1983, *Proteins: Structures and Molecular Principles*, W.H. Freeman & Co., N.Y., and Hunkapiller et al., *Nature*, 310:105-111 (1984)). For example, a polypeptide corresponding to a fragment of a TGF alpha HIII polypeptide can be synthesized by use of a peptide synthesizer. Furthermore, if desired, nonclassical amino acids or chemical amino acid analogs can be introduced as a substitution or addition into the TGF alpha HIII polypeptide sequence. Non-classical amino acids include, but are not limited to, to the D-isomers of the common amino acids, 2,4-diaminobutyric acid,  $\alpha$ -amino isobutyric acid, 4-aminobutyric acid, Abu, 2-amino butyric acid,  $\gamma$ -Abu,  $\epsilon$ -Ahx, 6-amino hexanoic acid, Aib, 2-amino isobutyric acid, 3-amino propionic acid, ornithine, norleucine, norvaline, hydroxyproline, sarcosine, citrulline, homocitrulline, cysteic acid, t-butylglycine, t-butylalanine, phenylglycine, cyclohexylalanine, b-alanine, fluoro-amino acids, designer amino acids such as b-methyl amino acids, Ca-methyl amino acids, Na-methyl amino acids, and amino acid analogs in general. Furthermore, the amino acid can be D (dextrorotary) or L (levorotary).

The invention encompasses TGF alpha HIII polypeptides which are differentially modified during or after translation, e.g., by glycosylation, acetylation, phosphorylation, amidation, derivatization by known protecting/blocking groups, proteolytic cleavage, linkage to an antibody molecule or other cellular ligand, etc. Any of numerous chemical modifications may be carried out by known techniques, including but not limited, to specific chemical cleavage by cyanogen bromide, trypsin, chymotrypsin, papain, V8 protease,  $\text{NaBH}_4$ ; acetylation, formylation, oxidation, reduction; metabolic synthesis in the presence of tunicamycin; etc.

Additional post-translational modifications encompassed by the invention include, for example, e.g., N-linked or O-linked carbohydrate chains, processing of N-terminal or C-terminal ends), attachment of chemical moieties to the amino acid backbone, chemical modifications of N-linked or O-linked carbohydrate chains, and addition or deletion of an N-terminal methionine residue as a result of procaryotic host cell expression. The polypeptides may also be modified with a detectable label, such as an enzymatic, fluorescent, isotopic or affinity label to allow for detection and isolation of the protein.



Also provided by the invention are chemically modified derivatives of the polypeptides of the invention which may provide additional advantages such as increased solubility, stability and circulating time of the polypeptide, or decreased immunogenicity (see U.S. Patent No. 4,179,337). The chemical moieties for derivitization may be selected from water soluble polymers such as polyethylene glycol, ethylene glycol/propylene glycol copolymers, carboxymethylcellulose, dextran, polyvinyl alcohol and the like. The polypeptides may be modified at random positions within the molecule, or at predetermined positions within the molecule and may include one, two, three or more attached chemical moieties.

The polymer may be of any molecular weight, and may be branched or unbranched. For polyethylene glycol, the preferred molecular weight is between about 1 kDa and about 100 kDa (the term "about" indicating that in preparations of polyethylene glycol, some molecules will weigh more, some less, than the stated molecular weight) for ease in handling and manufacturing. Other sizes may be used, depending on the desired therapeutic profile (e.g., the duration of sustained release desired, the effects, if any on biological activity, the ease in handling, the degree or lack of antigenicity and other known effects of the polyethylene glycol to a therapeutic protein or analog).

The polyethylene glycol molecules (or other chemical moieties) should be attached to the protein with consideration of effects on functional or antigenic domains of the protein.

There are a number of attachment methods available to those skilled in the art, e.g., EP 0 401 384, herein incorporated by reference (coupling PEG to G-CSF), see also Malik et al., Exp. Hematol. 20:1028-1035 (1992) (reporting pegylation of GM-CSF using tresyl chloride). For example, polyethylene glycol may be covalently bound through amino acid residues via a reactive group, such as, a free amino or carboxyl group. Reactive groups are those to which an activated polyethylene glycol molecule may be bound. The amino acid residues having a free amino group may include lysine residues and the N-terminal amino acid residues; those having a free carboxyl group may include aspartic acid residues glutamic acid residues and the C-terminal amino acid residue. Sulfhydryl groups may also be used as a reactive group for attaching the polyethylene glycol molecules. Preferred for therapeutic purposes is attachment at an amino group, such as attachment at the N-terminus or lysine group.

One may specifically desire proteins chemically modified at the N-terminus. Using polyethylene glycol as an illustration of the present composition, one may select from a

variety of polyethylene glycol molecules (by molecular weight, branching, etc.), the proportion of polyethylene glycol molecules to protein (polypeptide) molecules in the reaction mix, the type of pegylation reaction to be performed, and the method of obtaining the selected N-terminally pegylated protein. The method of obtaining the N-terminally pegylated preparation (i.e., separating this moiety from other monopegylated moieties if necessary) may be by purification of the N-terminally pegylated material from a population of pegylated protein molecules. Selective proteins chemically modified at the N-terminus modification may be accomplished by reductive alkylation which exploits differential reactivity of different types of primary amino groups (lysine versus the N-terminal) available for derivatization in a particular protein. Under the appropriate reaction conditions, substantially selective derivatization of the protein at the N-terminus with a carbonyl group containing polymer is achieved.

The TGF alpha HIII polypeptides of the invention may be in monomers or multimers (i.e., dimers, trimers, tetramers and higher multimers). Accordingly, the present invention relates to monomers and multimers of the TGF alpha HIII polypeptides of the invention, their preparation, and compositions (preferably, Therapeutics) containing them. In specific embodiments, the polypeptides of the invention are monomers, dimers, trimers or tetramers. In additional embodiments, the multimers of the invention are at least dimers, at least trimers, or at least tetramers.

Multimers encompassed by the invention may be homomers or heteromers. As used herein, the term homomer, refers to a multimer containing only polypeptides corresponding to the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO:2 or encoded by the cDNA contained in the deposited clone (including fragments, variants, splice variants, and fusion proteins, corresponding to these as described herein). These homomers may contain TGF alpha HIII polypeptides having identical or different amino acid sequences. In a specific embodiment, a homomer of the invention is a multimer containing only TGF alpha HIII polypeptides having an identical amino acid sequence. In another specific embodiment, a homomer of the invention is a multimer containing TGF alpha HIII polypeptides having different amino acid sequences. In specific embodiments, the multimer of the invention is a homodimer (e.g., containing TGF alpha HIII polypeptides having identical or different amino acid sequences) or a homotrimer (e.g., containing TGF alpha HIII polypeptides having identical and/or

different amino acid sequences). In additional embodiments, the homomeric multimer of the invention is at least a homodimer, at least a homotrimer, or at least a homotetramer.

As used herein, the term heteromer refers to a multimer containing one or more heterologous polypeptides (i.e., polypeptides of different proteins) in addition to the TGF  
5 alpha HIII polypeptides of the invention. In a specific embodiment, the multimer of the invention is a heterodimer, a heterotrimer, or a heterotetramer. In additional embodiments, the heteromeric multimer of the invention is at least a heterodimer, at least a heterotrimer, or at least a heterotetramer.

Multimers of the invention may be the result of hydrophobic, hydrophilic, ionic and/or  
10 covalent associations and/or may be indirectly linked, by for example, liposome formation. Thus, in one embodiment, multimers of the invention, such as, for example, homodimers or homotrimers, are formed when polypeptides of the invention contact one another in solution. In another embodiment, heteromultimers of the invention, such as, for example, heterotrimers or heterotetramers, are formed when polypeptides of the invention contact antibodies to the  
15 polypeptides of the invention (including antibodies to the heterologous polypeptide sequence in a fusion protein of the invention) in solution. In other embodiments, multimers of the invention are formed by covalent associations with and/or between the TGF alpha HIII polypeptides of the invention. Such covalent associations may involve one or more amino acid residues contained in the polypeptide sequence (e.g., that recited in SEQ ID NO:2, or  
20 contained in the polypeptide encoded by the clone HTECD31). In one instance, the covalent associations are cross-linking between cysteine residues located within the polypeptide sequences which interact in the native (i.e., naturally occurring) polypeptide. In another instance, the covalent associations are the consequence of chemical or recombinant manipulation. Alternatively, such covalent associations may involve one or more amino acid  
25 residues contained in the heterologous polypeptide sequence in a TGF alpha HIII fusion protein. In one example, covalent associations are between the heterologous sequence contained in a fusion protein of the invention (see, e.g., US Patent Number 5,478,925). In a specific example, the covalent associations are between the heterologous sequence contained in a TGF alpha HIII-Fc fusion protein of the invention (as described herein). In another  
30 specific example, covalent associations of fusion proteins of the invention are between heterologous polypeptide sequence from another protein that is capable of forming covalently associated multimers, such as for example, oseteoprotegerin (see, e.g., International

Publication NO: WO 98/49305, the contents of which are herein incorporated by reference in its entirety). In another embodiment, two or more polypeptides of the invention are joined through peptide linkers. Examples include those peptide linkers described in U.S. Pat. No. 5,073,627 (hereby incorporated by reference). Proteins comprising multiple polypeptides of the invention separated by peptide linkers may be produced using conventional recombinant DNA technology.

Another method for preparing multimer polypeptides of the invention involves use of polypeptides of the invention fused to a leucine zipper or isoleucine zipper polypeptide sequence. Leucine zipper and isoleucine zipper domains are polypeptides that promote multimerization of the proteins in which they are found. Leucine zippers were originally identified in several DNA-binding proteins (Landschulz et al., Science 240:1759, (1988)), and have since been found in a variety of different proteins. Among the known leucine zippers are naturally occurring peptides and derivatives thereof that dimerize or trimerize. Examples of leucine zipper domains suitable for producing soluble multimeric proteins of the invention are those described in PCT application WO 94/10308, hereby incorporated by reference. Recombinant fusion proteins comprising a polypeptide of the invention fused to a polypeptide sequence that dimerizes or trimerizes in solution are expressed in suitable host cells, and the resulting soluble multimeric fusion protein is recovered from the culture supernatant using techniques known in the art.

Trimeric polypeptides of the invention may offer the advantage of enhanced biological activity. Preferred leucine zipper moieties and isoleucine moieties are those that preferentially form trimers. One example is a leucine zipper derived from lung surfactant protein D (SPD), as described in Hoppe et al. (FEBS Letters 344:191, (1994)) and in U.S. patent application Ser. No. 08/446,922, hereby incorporated by reference. Other peptides derived from naturally occurring trimeric proteins may be employed in preparing trimeric polypeptides of the invention.

In another example, proteins of the invention are associated by interactions between Flag® polypeptide sequence contained in fusion proteins of the invention containing Flag® polypeptide sequence. In a further embodiment, associations proteins of the invention are associated by interactions between heterologous polypeptide sequence contained in Flag® fusion proteins of the invention and anti-Flag® antibody.

The multimers of the invention may be generated using chemical techniques known in the art. For example, polypeptides desired to be contained in the multimers of the invention may be chemically cross-linked using linker molecules and linker molecule length optimization techniques known in the art (see, e.g., US Patent Number 5,478,925, which is  
5 herein incorporated by reference in its entirety). Additionally, multimers of the invention may be generated using techniques known in the art to form one or more inter-molecule cross-links between the cysteine residues located within the sequence of the polypeptides desired to be contained in the multimer (see, e.g., US Patent Number 5,478,925, which is herein incorporated by reference in its entirety). Further, polypeptides of the invention may  
10 be routinely modified by the addition of cysteine or biotin to the C terminus or N-terminus of the polypeptide and techniques known in the art may be applied to generate multimers containing one or more of these modified polypeptides (see, e.g., US Patent Number 5,478,925, which is herein incorporated by reference in its entirety). Additionally, techniques known in the art may be applied to generate liposomes containing the polypeptide  
15 components desired to be contained in the multimer of the invention (see, e.g., US Patent Number 5,478,925, which is herein incorporated by reference in its entirety).

Alternatively, multimers of the invention may be generated using genetic engineering techniques known in the art. In one embodiment, polypeptides contained in multimers of the invention are produced recombinantly using fusion protein technology described herein or  
20 otherwise known in the art (see, e.g., US Patent Number 5,478,925, which is herein incorporated by reference in its entirety). In a specific embodiment, polynucleotides coding for a homodimer of the invention are generated by ligating a polynucleotide sequence encoding a polypeptide of the invention to a sequence encoding a linker polypeptide and then further to a synthetic polynucleotide encoding the translated product of the polypeptide in the  
25 reverse orientation from the original C-terminus to the N-terminus (lacking the leader sequence) (see, e.g., US Patent Number 5,478,925, which is herein incorporated by reference in its entirety). In another embodiment, recombinant techniques described herein or otherwise known in the art are applied to generate recombinant polypeptides of the invention which contain a transmembrane domain (or hydrophobic or signal peptide) and which can be  
30 incorporated by membrane reconstitution techniques into liposomes (see, e.g., US Patent Number 5,478,925, which is herein incorporated by reference in its entirety).

### **Uses of the TGF alpha HIII Polynucleotides**

The TGF alpha HIII polynucleotides identified herein can be used in numerous ways as reagents. The following description should be considered exemplary and utilizes known techniques.

5        There exists an ongoing need to identify new chromosome markers, since few chromosome marking reagents, based on actual sequence data (repeat polymorphisms), are presently available.

10        Briefly, sequences can be mapped to chromosomes by preparing PCR primers (preferably 15-25 bp) from the sequences shown in SEQ ID NO:1. Primers can be selected using computer analysis so that primers do not span more than one predicted exon in the genomic DNA. These primers are then used for PCR screening of somatic cell hybrids containing individual human chromosomes. Only those hybrids containing the human TGF alpha HIII gene corresponding to the SEQ ID NO:1 will yield an amplified fragment.

15        Similarly, somatic hybrids provide a rapid method of PCR mapping the polynucleotides to particular chromosomes. Three or more clones can be assigned per day using a single thermal cycler. Moreover, sublocalization of the TGF alpha HIII polynucleotides can be achieved with panels of specific chromosome fragments. Other gene mapping strategies that can be used include in situ hybridization, prescreening with labeled flow-sorted chromosomes, and preselection by hybridization to construct chromosome  
20        specific-cDNA libraries.

25        Precise chromosomal location of the TGF alpha HIII polynucleotides can also be achieved using fluorescence in situ hybridization (FISH) of a metaphase chromosomal spread. This technique uses polynucleotides as short as 500 or 600 bases; however, polynucleotides 2,000-4,000 bp are preferred. For a review of this technique, see Verma et al., "Human Chromosomes: a Manual of Basic Techniques," Pergamon Press, New York (1988).

30        For chromosome mapping, the TGF alpha HIII polynucleotides can be used individually (to mark a single chromosome or a single site on that chromosome) or in panels (for marking multiple sites and/or multiple chromosomes). Preferred polynucleotides correspond to the noncoding regions of the cDNAs because the coding sequences are more likely conserved within gene families, thus increasing the chance of cross hybridization during chromosomal mapping.

Once a polynucleotide has been mapped to a precise chromosomal location, the physical position of the polynucleotide can be used in linkage analysis. Linkage analysis establishes coinheritance between a chromosomal location and presentation of a particular disease. (Disease mapping data are found, for example, in V. McKusick, Mendelian Inheritance in Man (available on line through Johns Hopkins University Welch Medical Library) .) Assuming 1 megabase mapping resolution and one gene per 20 kb, a cDNA precisely localized to a chromosomal region associated with the disease could be one of 50-500 potential causative genes.

Thus, once coinheritance is established, differences in the TGF alpha HIII polynucleotide and the corresponding gene between affected and unaffected individuals can be examined. First, visible structural alterations in the chromosomes, such as deletions or translocations, are examined in chromosome spreads or by PCR. If no structural alterations exist, the presence of point mutations are ascertained. Mutations observed in some or all affected individuals, but not in normal individuals, indicates that the mutation may cause the disease. However, complete sequencing of the TGF alpha HIII polypeptide and the corresponding gene from several normal individuals is required to distinguish the mutation from a polymorphism. If a new polymorphism is identified, this polymorphic polypeptide can be used for further linkage analysis.

Furthermore, increased or decreased expression of the gene in affected individuals as compared to unaffected individuals can be assessed using TGF alpha HIII polynucleotides. Any of these alterations (altered expression, chromosomal rearrangement, or mutation) can be used as a diagnostic or prognostic marker.

For example, this invention is also related to the use of the gene of the present invention as a diagnostic. Detection of a mutated form of the gene of the present invention will allow a diagnosis of a disease or a susceptibility to a disease which results from underexpression of the polypeptide of the present invention, for example, improper wound healing, improper neurological functioning, ocular disorders, kidney and liver disorders, hair follicular development, angiogenesis and embryogenesis.

Thus, the invention also provides a diagnostic method useful during diagnosis of a disorder, involving measuring the expression level of polynucleotides of the present invention in cells or body fluid from an individual and comparing the measured gene expression level

with a standard level of polynucleotide expression level, whereby an increase or decrease in the gene expression level compared to the standard is indicative of a disorder.

In still another embodiment, the invention includes a kit for analyzing samples for the presence of proliferative and/or cancerous polynucleotides derived from a test subject. In a general embodiment, the kit includes at least one polynucleotide probe containing a nucleotide sequence that will specifically hybridize with a polynucleotide of the present invention and a suitable container. In a specific embodiment, the kit includes two polynucleotide probes defining an internal region of the polynucleotide of the present invention, where each probe has one strand containing a 31'-mer-end internal to the region. In a further embodiment, the probes may be useful as primers for polymerase chain reaction amplification.

Where a diagnosis of a disorder, has already been made according to conventional methods, the present invention is useful as a prognostic indicator, whereby patients exhibiting enhanced or depressed polynucleotide of the present invention expression will experience a worse clinical outcome relative to patients expressing the gene at a level nearer the standard level.

By "measuring the expression level of polynucleotide of the present invention" is intended qualitatively or quantitatively measuring or estimating the level of the polypeptide of the present invention or the level of the mRNA encoding the polypeptide in a first biological sample either directly (e.g., by determining or estimating absolute protein level or mRNA level) or relatively (e.g., by comparing to the polypeptide level or mRNA level in a second biological sample). Preferably, the polypeptide level or mRNA level in the first biological sample is measured or estimated and compared to a standard polypeptide level or mRNA level, the standard being taken from a second biological sample obtained from an individual not having the disorder or being determined by averaging levels from a population of individuals not having a disorder. As will be appreciated in the art, once a standard polypeptide level or mRNA level is known, it can be used repeatedly as a standard for comparison.

By "biological sample" is intended any biological sample obtained from an individual, body fluid, cell line, tissue culture, or other source which contains the polypeptide of the present invention or mRNA. As indicated, biological samples include body fluids (such as semen, lymph, sera, plasma, urine, synovial fluid and spinal fluid) which contain the



polypeptide of the present invention, and other tissue sources found to express the polypeptide of the present invention. Methods for obtaining tissue biopsies and body fluids from mammals are well known in the art. Where the biological sample is to include mRNA, a tissue biopsy is the preferred source.

5 The method(s) provided above may preferably be applied in a diagnostic method and/or kits in which polynucleotides and/or polypeptides are attached to a solid support. In one exemplary method, the support may be a "gene chip" or a "biological chip" as described in US Patents 5,837,832, 5,874,219, and 5,856,174. Further, such a gene chip with polynucleotides of the present invention attached may be used to identify polymorphisms  
10 between the polynucleotide sequences, with polynucleotides isolated from a test subject. The knowledge of such polymorphisms (i.e. their location, as well as, their existence) would be beneficial in identifying disease loci for many disorders, including cancerous diseases and conditions. Such a method is described in US Patents 5,858,659 and 5,856,104. The US Patents referenced supra are hereby incorporated by reference in their entirety herein.

15 The present invention encompasses polynucleotides of the present invention that are chemically synthesized, or reproduced as peptide nucleic acids (PNA), or according to other methods known in the art. The use of PNAs would serve as the preferred form if the polynucleotides are incorporated onto a solid support, or gene chip. For the purposes of the present invention, a peptide nucleic acid (PNA) is a polyamide type of DNA analog and the  
20 monomeric units for adenine, guanine, thymine and cytosine are available commercially (Perceptive Biosystems). Certain components of DNA, such as phosphorus, phosphorus oxides, or deoxyribose derivatives, are not present in PNAs. As disclosed by P. E. Nielsen, M. Egholm, R. H. Berg and O. Buchardt, Science 254, 1497 (1991); and M. Egholm, O. Buchardt, L. Christensen, C. Behrens, S. M. Freier, D. A. Driver, R. H. Berg, S. K. Kim, B.  
25 Norden, and P. E. Nielsen, Nature 365, 666 (1993), PNAs bind specifically and tightly to complementary DNA strands and are not degraded by nucleases. In fact, PNA binds more strongly to DNA than DNA itself does. This is probably because there is no electrostatic repulsion between the two strands, and also the polyamide backbone is more flexible. Because of this, PNA/DNA duplexes bind under a wider range of stringency conditions than  
30 DNA/DNA duplexes, making it easier to perform multiplex hybridization. Smaller probes can be used than with DNA due to the strong binding. In addition, it is more likely that single base mismatches can be determined with PNA/DNA hybridization because a single mismatch

09725318-120100

in a PNA/DNA 15-mer lowers the melting point ( $T_{sub.m}$ ) by 8°-20° C, vs. 4°-16° C for the DNA/DNA 15-mer duplex. Also, the absence of charge groups in PNA means that hybridization can be done at low ionic strengths and reduce possible interference by salt during the analysis.

5        The present invention is useful for detecting cancer in mammals. In particular the invention is useful during diagnosis of pathological cell proliferative neoplasias which include, but are not limited to: acute myelogenous leukemias including acute monocytic leukemia, acute myeloblastic leukemia, acute promyelocytic leukemia, acute myelomonocytic leukemia, acute erythroleukemia, acute megakaryocytic leukemia, and acute undifferentiated  
10 leukemia, etc.; and chronic myelogenous leukemias including chronic myelomonocytic leukemia, chronic granulocytic leukemia, etc. Preferred mammals include monkeys, apes, cats, dogs, cows, pigs, horses, rabbits and humans. Particularly preferred are humans.

Pathological cell proliferative disorders are often associated with inappropriate activation of proto-oncogenes. (Germann, E. P. et al., "The Etiology of Acute Leukemia: Molecular Genetics and Viral Oncology," in Neoplastic Diseases of the Blood, Vol 1.,  
15 Wiernik, P. H. et al. eds., 161-182 (1985)). Neoplasias are now believed to result from the qualitative alteration of a normal cellular gene product, or from the quantitative modification of gene expression by insertion into the chromosome of a viral sequence, by chromosomal translocation of a gene to a more actively transcribed region, or by some other mechanism.  
20 (Germann et al., supra) It is likely that mutated or altered expression of specific genes is involved in the pathogenesis of some leukemias, among other tissues and cell types. (Germann et al., supra) Indeed, the human counterparts of the oncogenes involved in some animal neoplasias have been amplified or translocated in some cases of human leukemia and carcinoma. (Germann et al., supra)

25        For example, c-myc expression is highly amplified in the non-lymphocytic leukemia cell line HL-60. When HL-60 cells are chemically induced to stop proliferation, the level of c-myc is found to be downregulated. (International Publication Number WO 91/15580) However, it has been shown that exposure of HL-60 cells to a DNA construct that is complementary to the 5' end of c-myc or c-myb blocks translation of the corresponding  
30 mRNAs which downregulates expression of the c-myc or c-myb proteins and causes arrest of cell proliferation and differentiation of the treated cells. (International Publication Number WO 91/15580; Wickstrom et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. 85:1028 (1988); Anfossi et

007564-1000  
007564-1000

al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. 86:3379 (1989)). However, the skilled artisan would appreciate the present invention's usefulness would not be limited to treatment of proliferative disorders of hematopoietic cells and tissues, in light of the numerous cells and cell types of varying origins which are known to exhibit proliferative phenotypes.

5 In addition to the foregoing, a TGF alpha HIII polynucleotide can be used to control gene expression through triple helix formation or antisense DNA or RNA. Antisense techniques are discussed, for example, in Okano, J. Neurochem. 56: 560 (1991); "Oligodeoxynucleotides as Antisense Inhibitors of Gene Expression, CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL (1988). Triple helix formation is discussed in, for instance Lee et al., Nucleic Acids  
10 Research 6: 3073 (1979); Cooney et al., Science 241: 456 (1988); and Dervan et al., Science 251: 1360 (1991). Both methods rely on binding of the polynucleotide to a complementary DNA or RNA. For these techniques, preferred polynucleotides are usually oligonucleotides 20 to 40 bases in length and complementary to either the region of the gene involved in transcription (triple helix - see Lee et al., Nucl. Acids Res. 6:3073 (1979); Cooney et al.,  
15 Science 241:456 (1988); and Dervan et al., Science 251:1360 (1991) ) or to the mRNA itself (antisense - Okano, J. Neurochem. 56:560 (1991); Oligodeoxy-nucleotides as Antisense Inhibitors of Gene Expression, CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL (1988).) Triple helix formation optimally results in a shut-off of RNA transcription from DNA, while antisense RNA hybridization blocks translation of an mRNA molecule into polypeptide. Both techniques are  
20 effective in model systems, and the information disclosed herein can be used to design antisense or triple helix polynucleotides in an effort to treat disease.

TGF alpha HIII polynucleotides are also useful in gene therapy. One goal of gene therapy is to insert a normal gene into an organism having a defective gene, in an effort to correct the genetic defect. TGF alpha HIII offers a means of targeting such genetic defects in  
25 a highly accurate manner. Another goal is to insert a new gene that was not present in the host genome, thereby producing a new trait in the host cell.

The TGF alpha HIII polynucleotides are also useful for identifying individuals from minute biological samples. The United States military, for example, is considering the use of restriction fragment length polymorphism (RFLP) for identification of its personnel. In this  
30 technique, an individual's genomic DNA is digested with one or more restriction enzymes, and probed on a Southern blot to yield unique bands for identifying personnel. This method does not suffer from the current limitations of "Dog Tags" which can be lost, switched, or

stolen, making positive identification difficult. The TGF alpha HIII polynucleotides can be used as additional DNA markers for RFLP.

The TGF alpha HIII polynucleotides can also be used as an alternative to RFLP, by determining the actual base-by-base DNA sequence of selected portions of an individual's genome. These sequences can be used to prepare PCR primers for amplifying and isolating such selected DNA, which can then be sequenced. Using this technique, individuals can be identified because each individual will have a unique set of DNA sequences. Once an unique ID database is established for an individual, positive identification of that individual, living or dead, can be made from extremely small tissue samples.

Forensic biology also benefits from using DNA-based identification techniques as disclosed herein. DNA sequences taken from very small biological samples such as tissues, e.g., hair or skin, or body fluids, e.g., blood, saliva, semen, synovial fluid, amniotic fluid, breast milk, lymph, pulmonary sputum or surfactant, urine, fecal matter, etc., can be amplified using PCR. In one prior art technique, gene sequences amplified from polymorphic loci, such as DQa class II HLA gene, are used in forensic biology to identify individuals. (Erich, H., PCR Technology, Freeman and Co. (1992).) Once these specific polymorphic loci are amplified, they are digested with one or more restriction enzymes, yielding an identifying set of bands on a Southern blot probed with DNA corresponding to the DQa class II HLA gene. Similarly, TGF alpha HIII polynucleotides can be used as polymorphic markers for forensic purposes.

There is also a need for reagents capable of identifying the source of a particular tissue. Such need arises, for example, in forensics when presented with tissue of unknown origin. Appropriate reagents can comprise, for example, DNA probes or primers specific to particular tissue prepared from TGF alpha HIII sequences. Panels of such reagents can identify tissue by species and/or by organ type. In a similar fashion, these reagents can be used to screen tissue cultures for contamination.

TGF alpha HIII polynucleotides are useful as hybridization probes for differential identification of the tissue(s) or cell type(s) present in a biological sample. Similarly, polypeptides and antibodies directed to TGF alpha HIII polypeptides are useful to provide immunological probes for differential identification of the tissue(s) or cell type(s). In addition, for a number of disorders of the above tissues or cells, significantly higher or lower levels of TGF alpha HIII gene expression may be detected in certain tissues (e.g., cancerous

and wounded tissues) or bodily fluids (e.g., serum, plasma, urine, synovial fluid or spinal fluid) taken from an individual having such a disorder, relative to a "standard" TGF alpha HIII gene expression level, i.e., the TGF alpha HIII expression level in healthy tissue from an individual not having the disorder.

5        Thus, the invention provides a diagnostic method of a disorder, which involves: (a) assaying TGF alpha HIII gene expression level in cells or body fluid of an individual; (b) comparing the TGF alpha HIII gene expression level with a standard TGF alpha HIII gene expression level, whereby an increase or decrease in the assayed TGF alpha HIII gene expression level compared to the standard expression level is indicative of disorder.

10        The present invention also relates to diagnostic assays for detecting altered levels of the polypeptide of the present invention in various tissues since an overexpression of the proteins compared to normal control tissue samples can detect the presence of certain disease conditions such as neoplasia, skin disorders, ocular disorders and inflammation. Assays used to detect levels of the polypeptide of the present invention in a sample derived from a host  
15        are well-known to those of skill in the art and include radioimmunoassays, competitive-binding assays, Western Blot analysis and preferably an ELISA assay. An ELISA assay initially comprises preparing an antibody specific to an antigen of the polypeptide of the present invention, preferably a monoclonal antibody. In addition a reporter antibody is prepared against the monoclonal antibody. To the reporter antibody is attached a  
20        detectable reagent such as radioactivity, fluorescence or in this example a horseradish peroxidase enzyme. A sample is now removed from a host and incubated on a solid support, e.g. a polystyrene dish, that binds the proteins in the sample. Any free protein binding sites on the dish are then covered by incubating with a non-specific protein such as bovine serum albumin. Next, the monoclonal antibody is incubated in the dish during which time the  
25        monoclonal antibodies attach to any polypeptides of the present invention attached to the polystyrene dish. All unbound monoclonal antibody is washed out with buffer. The reporter antibody linked to horseradish peroxidase is now placed in the dish resulting in binding of the reporter antibody to any monoclonal antibody bound to polypeptides of the present invention. Unattached reporter antibody is then washed out. Peroxidase substrates are then  
30        added to the dish and the amount of color developed in a given time period is a measurement of the amount of protein present in a given volume of patient sample when compared against a standard curve.

A competition assay may also be employed to determine levels of the polypeptide of the present invention in a sample derived from the hosts. Such an assay comprises isolating plasma membranes which over-express the receptor for the polypeptide of the present invention. A test sample containing the polypeptides of the present invention which have been labeled, are then added to the plasma membranes and then incubated for a set period of time. Also added to the reaction mixture is a sample derived from a host which is suspected of containing the polypeptide of the present invention. The reaction mixtures are then passed through a filter which is rapidly washed and the bound radioactivity is then measured to determine the amount of competition for the receptors and therefore the amount of the polypeptides of the present invention in the sample.

In the very least, the TGF alpha HIII polynucleotides can be used as molecular weight markers on Southern gels, as diagnostic probes for the presence of a specific mRNA in a particular cell type, as a probe to "subtract-out" known sequences in the process of discovering novel polynucleotides, for selecting and making oligomers for attachment to a "gene chip" or other support, to raise anti-DNA antibodies using DNA immunization techniques, and as an antigen to elicit an immune response.

#### Uses of TGF alpha HIII Polypeptides

TGF alpha HIII polypeptides can be used in numerous ways. The following description should be considered exemplary and utilizes known techniques.

TGF alpha HIII polypeptides can be used to assay protein levels in a biological sample using antibody-based techniques. For example, protein expression in tissues can be studied with classical immunohistological methods. (Jalkanen, M., et al., J. Cell. Biol. 101:976-985 (1985); Jalkanen, M., et al., J. Cell . Biol. 105:3087-3096 (1987).) Other antibody-based methods useful for detecting protein gene expression include immunoassays, such as the enzyme linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA) and the radioimmunoassay (RIA). Suitable antibody assay labels are known in the art and include enzyme labels, such as, glucose oxidase, and radioisotopes, such as iodine (125I, 121I), carbon (14C), sulfur (35S), tritium (3H), indium (112In), and technetium (99mTc), and fluorescent labels, such as fluorescein and rhodamine, and biotin.

In addition to assaying protein levels in a biological sample, proteins can also be detected in vivo by imaging. Antibody labels or markers for in vivo imaging of protein

include those detectable by X-radiography, NMR or ESR. For X-radiography, suitable labels include radioisotopes such as barium or cesium, which emit detectable radiation but are not overtly harmful to the subject. Suitable markers for NMR and ESR include those with a detectable characteristic spin, such as deuterium, which may be incorporated into the antibody by labeling of nutrients for the relevant hybridoma.

A protein-specific antibody or antibody fragment which has been labeled with an appropriate detectable imaging moiety, such as a radioisotope (for example,  $^{131}\text{I}$ ,  $^{112}\text{In}$ ,  $^{99\text{m}}\text{Tc}$ ), a radio-opaque substance, or a material detectable by nuclear magnetic resonance, is introduced (for example, parenterally, subcutaneously, or intraperitoneally) into the mammal.

It will be understood in the art that the size of the subject and the imaging system used will determine the quantity of imaging moiety needed to produce diagnostic images. In the case of a radioisotope moiety, for a human subject, the quantity of radioactivity injected will normally range from about 5 to 20 millicuries of  $^{99\text{m}}\text{Tc}$ . The labeled antibody or antibody fragment will then preferentially accumulate at the location of cells which contain the specific protein. In vivo tumor imaging is described in S.W. Burchiel et al., "Immunopharmacokinetics of Radiolabeled Antibodies and Their Fragments." (Chapter 13 in Tumor Imaging: The Radiochemical Detection of Cancer, S.W. Burchiel and B. A. Rhodes, eds., Masson Publishing Inc. (1982).)

Thus, the invention provides a diagnostic method of a disorder, which involves (a) assaying the expression of TGF alpha HIII polypeptide in cells or body fluid of an individual; (b) comparing the level of gene expression with a standard gene expression level, whereby an increase or decrease in the assayed TGF alpha HIII polypeptide gene expression level compared to the standard expression level is indicative of a disorder. With respect to cancer, the presence of a relatively high amount of transcript in biopsied tissue from an individual may indicate a predisposition for the development of the disease, or may provide a means for detecting the disease prior to the appearance of actual clinical symptoms. A more definitive diagnosis of this type may allow health professionals to employ preventative measures or aggressive treatment earlier thereby preventing the development or further progression of the cancer.

Moreover, TGF alpha HIII polypeptides can be used to treat disease. For example, patients can be administered TGF alpha HIII polypeptides in an effort to replace absent or decreased levels of the TGF alpha HIII polypeptide (e.g., insulin), to supplement absent or

decreased levels of a different polypeptide (e.g., hemoglobin S for hemoglobin B, SOD, catalase, DNA repair proteins), to inhibit the activity of a polypeptide (e.g., an oncogene or tumor suppressor), to activate the activity of a polypeptide (e.g., by binding to a receptor), to reduce the activity of a membrane bound receptor by competing with it for free ligand (e.g., soluble TNF receptors used in reducing inflammation), or to bring about a desired response (e.g., blood vessel growth inhibition, enhancement of the immune response to proliferative cells or tissues).

Similarly, antibodies directed to TGF alpha HIII polypeptides can also be used to treat disease. For example, administration of an antibody directed to a TGF alpha HIII polypeptide can bind and reduce overproduction of the polypeptide. Similarly, administration of an antibody can activate the polypeptide, such as by binding to a polypeptide bound to a membrane (receptor).

At the very least, the TGF alpha HIII polypeptides can be used as molecular weight markers on SDS-PAGE gels or on molecular sieve gel filtration columns using methods well known to those of skill in the art. TGF alpha HIII polypeptides can also be used to raise antibodies, which in turn are used to measure protein expression from a recombinant cell, as a way of assessing transformation of the host cell. Moreover, TGF alpha HIII polypeptides can be used to test the following biological activities.

The polypeptide of the present invention may also be employed for characterization of receptors. The EGF family receptors currently includes four EGF receptors, denoted as EGFR1, EGFR2, EGFR3 and EGFR4. The EGFR2 receptor may also be referred to as Erb-2 and this molecule is useful for a variety of diagnostic and therapeutic indications (Prigent, S.A., and Lemoine, N.R., Prog. Growth Factor Res., 4:1-24 (1992)). The TGF alpha HIII polypeptide is likely a ligand for one or more of these receptors as well as for a new EGF type receptor. Use of the TGF alpha HIII can assist with the identification, characterization and cloning of such receptors. For example, the EGF receptor gene represents the cellular homolog of the v-erb-B oncogene of avian erythroblastosis virus. Overexpression of the EGF receptor or deletion of kinase regulatory segments of the protein can bring about tumorigenic transformation of cells (Manjusri, D. et al., Human Cyokines, 364 and 381 (1991)).

The polypeptides of the present invention may also be employed for restoration or enhancement of neurological functions diminished as a result of trauma or other damaging pathologies (such as AIDS dementia, senile dementia, etc). TGF alpha and its homologs



have been found to be the most abundant ligand for the EGF/TGF alpha receptor in most parts of the brain (Kaser, et al., Mol. Brain Res., 16:316-322, (1992)). There appears to be a widespread distribution of TGF alpha in various regions of the brain in contrast to EGF which is only present in smaller, more discrete areas, suggesting that TGF-alpha might play a physiological role in brain tissues. These numerous receptor sites for TGF alpha in the brain suggest that TGF has an important utility in promoting normal brain cell differentiation and function. Accordingly, in instances where neurological functioning is diminished, an administration of the polypeptide of the present invention may stimulate the brain and enhance proper physiological functions.

TGF alpha HIII or soluble form thereof may also, be employed to treat ocular disorders, for example, corneal inflammation. A variety of experiments have implicated members of the TGF alpha gene family in such pathologies. A recent paper summarizes some of the data related to the role these growth factors play in eye disease (Mann, et al Cell 73:249-261 (1993)). Recent experiments have shown that a number of mice lacking the TGF alpha gene displayed corneal inflammation due to an infiltration of leukocytes and other cells to the substantia propria of the eyes. In addition, the specificity of the TGF alpha growth factors for their target cells can be exploited as a mechanism to destroy the target cell. For example, TGF alpha HIII or soluble forms thereof can be coupled (by a wide variety of methods) to toxic molecules: for example, a radiopharmaceutical which inactivates target cells. These growth factor-toxin fusions kill the target cell (and in certain cases neighboring cells by a variety of "bystander" effects). A recent example of such toxin-fusion genes is published by Mesri, et al., J. Biol. Chem. 268:4853-62 (1993). TGF alpha HIII and related molecules may also be encapsulated in liposomes and may be conjugated to antibodies which recognize and bind to tumor or cell specific antigens, thereby provided a means for "targeting" cells.

In this same manner, TGF alpha HIII can be employed as an anti-neoplastic compound, since members of the EGF family show anti-proliferative effects on transformed cells. For in vivo use, the subject polypeptide may be administered in a variety of ways, including but not limited to, injection, infusion, topically, parenterally, etc. Administration may be in any physiologically acceptable carrier, including phosphate buffered saline, saline, sterilized water, etc. The TGF alpha HIII polypeptide fragment may also be employed to treat certain kidney disorders, since it has been found that there has been expression of these

growth factors in the kidney. Thus, these factors may be necessary for the proper physiological maintenance of this organ.

Treatments may also be related to liver regeneration or liver dysfunction, since TGF alpha and its homologs and hepatocyte growth factor trigger hepatocyte regeneration after partial hepatectomy and after acute liver cell necrosis (Masuhara, M. et al, Hepatology 16:1241-1249 (1992)).

A significant treatment involving TGF alpha HIII relates to wound healing. The compositions of the present invention may be employed for treating a wide variety of wounds including substantially all cutaneous wounds, corneal wounds, and injuries to the epithelial-lined hollow organs of the body. Wounds suitable for treatment include those resulting from trauma such as burns, abrasions and cuts, as well as from surgical procedures such as surgical incisions and skin grafting. Other conditions suitable for treatment with the polypeptide of the present invention include chronic conditions, such as chronic ulcers, diabetic ulcers, and other non-healing (trophic) conditions.

TGF alpha HIII or soluble fragment thereof may be incorporated in physiologically-acceptable carriers for application to the affected area. The nature of the carriers may, vary widely and will depend on the intended location of application. For application to the skin, a cream or ointment base is usually preferred; suitable bases include lanolin, Silvadene (Marion) (particularly for the treatment of burns), Aquaphor (Duke Laboratories, South Norwalk, Conn.), and the like. If desired, it will be possible to incorporate TGF alpha HIII containing compositions in bandages and other wound dressings to provide for continuous exposure of the wound to the peptide. Aerosol applications may also find use.

The concentration of TGF alpha HIII in the treatment composition is not critical but should be enough to induce epithelial cell proliferation. The compositions may be applied topically to the affected area, typically as eye drops to the eye or as creams, ointments or lotions to the skin. In the case of the eyes, frequent treatment is desirable, usually being applied at intervals of 4 hours or less. On the skin, it is desirable to continually maintain the treatment composition on the affected area during the healing, with applications of the treatment composition from two to four times a day or more frequently.

The amount employed of the subject polypeptide will vary with the manner of administration, the employment of other active compounds, and the like, generally being in

the range of about 1ug to 100 ug. The subject polypeptide may be employed with a physiologically acceptable carrier, such as saline, phosphate-buffered saline, or the like. The amount of compound employed will be determined empirically, based on the response of cells in vitro and response of experimental animals to the subject polypeptides or formulations containing the subject polypeptides.

The TGF alpha HIII or soluble fragment thereof may be employed in the modulation of angiogenesis, bone resorption, immune response, and synaptic and neuronal effector functions. TGF alpha HIII may also be used in the modulation of the arachidonic acid cascade.

TGF alpha HIII or soluble fragment thereof may also be employed for applications related to terminal differentiation. Many TGF alpha factors, and their homologs, induce terminal differentiation in their target cells. This property can be exploited in vivo by administering the factor and inducing target cell death. This regimen is under consideration for disorders related to the hyperproliferation of medically undesirable cell types such as cancers and other proliferative disorders (eg inflammation, psoriasis, etc) In addition to in vivo administration, there are a variety of situations where in vitro administration may be warranted. For example, bone marrow can be purged of undesirable cell populations in vitro by treating the cells with growth factors and/or derivatives thereof.

Applications are also related to alopecia, hair loss and to other skin conditions which affect hair follicular development. Several lines of evidence implicate the involvement TGF alpha growth factors in such conditions. As described above, "knockout" mice engineered to contain a null mutation in the TGF alpha gene display abnormalities related to quantitative and qualitative hair synthesis. In addition, mapping studies in mice have shown that some mutations affecting hair growth map to the TGF alpha gene locus (Mann et al, Cell 73:249-261 (1993) ). Topical or systemic applications of TGF alpha HIII or derivatives thereof may be employed to treat some forms of alopecia and hair loss and these claims fall within the scope of this invention.

Certain disease pathologies may be partially or completely ameliorated by the systemic clinical administration of the TGF alpha HIII growth factor. This administration can be in the form of gene therapy (see below) or through the administration of peptides or proteins synthesized from recombinant constructs of TGF alphaHIII DNA or from peptide chemical synthesis (Woo, et al., Protein Engineering 3:29-37 (1989)).

### Gene Therapy Methods

Another aspect of the present invention is to gene therapy methods for treating disorders, diseases and conditions. The gene therapy methods relate to the introduction of nucleic acid (DNA, RNA and antisense DNA or RNA) sequences into an animal to achieve expression of the TGF alpha HIII polypeptide of the present invention. This method requires a polynucleotide which codes for a TGF alpha HIII polypeptide operatively linked to a promoter and any other genetic elements necessary for the expression of the polypeptide by the target tissue. Such gene therapy and delivery techniques are known in the art, see, for example, WO90/11092, which is herein incorporated by reference.

Thus, for example, cells from a patient may be engineered with a polynucleotide (DNA or RNA) comprising a promoter operably linked to a TGF alpha HIII polynucleotide ex vivo, with the engineered cells then being provided to a patient to be treated with the polypeptide. Such methods are well-known in the art. For example, see Belldegrin, A., et al., J. Natl. Cancer Inst. 85: 207-216 (1993); Ferrantini, M. et al., Cancer Research 53: 1107-1112 (1993); Ferrantini, M. et al., J. Immunology 153: 4604-4615 (1994); Kaido, T., et al., Int. J. Cancer 60: 221-229 (1995); Ogura, H., et al., Cancer Research 50: 5102-5106 (1990); Santodonato, L., et al., Human Gene Therapy 7:1-10 (1996); Santodonato, L., et al., Gene Therapy 4:1246-1255 (1997); and Zhang, J.-F. et al., Cancer Gene Therapy 3: 31-38 (1996)), which are herein incorporated by reference. In one embodiment, the cells which are engineered are arterial cells. The arterial cells may be reintroduced into the patient through direct injection to the artery, the tissues surrounding the artery, or through catheter injection.

The polypeptides, and agonists and antagonists which are polypeptides, may also be employed in accordance with the present invention by expression of such polypeptides in vivo, which is often referred to as "gene therapy."

Thus, for example, cells from a patient may be engineered with a polynucleotide (DNA or RNA) encoding a polypeptide ex vivo, with the engineered cells then being provided to a patient to be treated with the polypeptide.

Such methods are well-known in the art and are apparent from the teachings herein. For example, cells may be engineered by the use of a retroviral plasmid vector containing RNA encoding a polypeptide of the present invention.

Similarly, cells may be engineered in vivo for expression of a polypeptide in vivo by, for example, procedures known in the art. For example, a packaging cell is transduced with a retroviral plasmid vector containing RNA encoding a polypeptide of the present invention such that the packaging cell now produces infectious viral particles containing the gene of interest. These producer cells may be administered to a patient for engineering cells in vivo and expression of the polypeptide in vivo.

These and other methods for administering a polypeptide of the present invention by such method should be apparent to those skilled in the art from the teachings of the present invention.

Retroviruses from which the retroviral plasmid vectors hereinabove mentioned may be derived include, but are not limited to, Moloney Murine Leukemia Virus, spleen necrosis virus, retroviruses such as Rous Sarcoma Virus, Harvey Sarcoma Virus, avian leukosis virus, gibbon ape leukemia virus, human immunodeficiency virus, adenovirus, Myeloproliferative Sarcoma Virus, and mammary tumor virus. In one embodiment, the retroviral plasmid vector is derived from Moloney Murine Leukemia Virus.

The vector includes one or more promoters. Suitable promoters which may be employed include, but are not limited to, the retroviral LTR; the SV40 promoter; and the human cytomegalovirus (CMV) promoter described in Miller, et al., Biotechniques Vol. 7, No. 9, 980-990 (1989), or any other promoter (e.g., cellular promoters such as eukaryotic cellular promoters including, but not limited to, the histone, pol III, and beta-actin promoters). Other viral promoters which may be employed include, but are not limited to, adenovirus promoters, thymidine kinase (TK) promoters, and B19 parvovirus promoters. The selection of a suitable promoter will be apparent to those skilled in the art from the teachings contained herein.

The nucleic acid sequence encoding the polypeptide of the present invention is under the control of a suitable promoter. Suitable promoters which may be employed include, but are not limited to, adenoviral promoters, such as the adenoviral major late promoter; or heterologous promoters such as the cytomegalovirus (CMV) promoter; the respiratory syncytial virus (RSV) promoter; inducible promoters, such as the MMT promoter, the metallothionein promoter; heat shock promoters; the albumin promoter; the ApoAI promoter; human globin promoters; viral thymidine kinase promoters, such as the Herpes Simplex thymidine kinase promoter; retroviral LTRs (including the modified retroviral LTRs

hereinabove described); the beta-actin promoter; and human growth hormone promoters. The promoter also may be the native promoter which controls the gene encoding the polypeptide.

The retroviral plasmid vector is employed to transduce packaging cell lines to form producer cell lines. Examples of packaging cells which may be transfected include, but are not limited to, the PE501, PA317, psi-2, psi-AM, PA12, T19-14X, VT-19-17--H2, psi-CRE, psi-CRIP, GP+E-86, GP+envAml2, and DAN cell lines as described in Miller, Human Gene Therapy, Vol. 1, pgs. 5-14 (1990), which is incorporated herein by reference in its entirety. The vector may transduce the packaging cells through any means known in the art. Such means include, but are not limited to, electroporation, the use of liposomes, and CaPO<sub>4</sub> precipitation. In one alternative, the retroviral plasmid vector may be encapsulated into a liposome, or coupled to a lipid, and then administered to a host.

The producer cell line generates infectious retroviral vector particles which include the nucleic acid sequence (s) encoding the polypeptides. Such retroviral vector particles then may be employed, to transduce eukaryotic cells, either in vitro or in vivo. The transduced eukaryotic cells will express the nucleic acid sequence(s) encoding the polypeptide. Eukaryotic cells which may be transduced include, but are not limited to, embryonic stem cells, embryonic carcinoma cells, as well as hematopoietic stem cells, hepatocytes, fibroblasts, myoblasts, keratinocytes, endothelial cells, and bronchial epithelial cells.

As discussed in more detail below, the TGF alpha HIII polynucleotide constructs can be delivered by any method that delivers injectable materials to the cells of an animal, such as, injection into the interstitial space of tissues (heart, muscle, skin, lung, liver, and the like). The TGF alpha HIII polynucleotide constructs may be delivered in a pharmaceutically acceptable liquid or aqueous carrier.

In one embodiment, the TGF alpha HIII polynucleotide is delivered as a naked polynucleotide. The term "naked" polynucleotide, DNA or RNA refers to sequences that are free from any delivery vehicle that acts to assist, promote or facilitate entry into the cell, including viral sequences, viral particles, liposome formulations, lipofectin or precipitating agents and the like. However, the TGF alpha HIII polynucleotides can also be delivered in liposome formulations and lipofectin formulations and the like can be prepared by methods well known to those skilled in the art. Such methods are described, for example, in U.S. Patent Nos. 5,593,972, 5,589,466, and 5,580,859, which are herein incorporated by reference.

The TGF alpha HIII polynucleotide vector constructs used in the gene therapy method are preferably constructs that will not integrate into the host genome nor will they contain sequences that allow for replication. Appropriate vectors include pWLNEO, pSV2CAT, pOG44, pXT1 and pSG available from Stratagene; pSVK3, pBPV, pMSG and pSVL available from Pharmacia; and pEF1/V5, pcDNA3.1, and pRc/CMV2 available from Invitrogen. Other suitable vectors will be readily apparent to the skilled artisan.

Any strong promoter known to those skilled in the art can be used for driving the expression of TGF alpha HIII polynucleotide sequence. Suitable promoters include adenoviral promoters, such as the adenoviral major late promoter; or heterologous promoters, such as the cytomegalovirus (CMV) promoter; the respiratory syncytial virus (RSV) promoter; inducible promoters, such as the MMT promoter, the metallothionein promoter; heat shock promoters; the albumin promoter; the ApoAI promoter; human globin promoters; viral thymidine kinase promoters, such as the Herpes Simplex thymidine kinase promoter; retroviral LTRs; the b-actin promoter; and human growth hormone promoters. The promoter also may be the native promoter for TGF alpha HIII.

Unlike other gene therapy techniques, one major advantage of introducing naked nucleic acid sequences into target cells is the transitory nature of the polynucleotide synthesis in the cells. Studies have shown that non-replicating DNA sequences can be introduced into cells to provide production of the desired polypeptide for periods of up to six months.

The TGF alpha HIII polynucleotide construct can be delivered to the interstitial space of tissues within the an animal, including of muscle, skin, brain, lung, liver, spleen, bone marrow, thymus, heart, lymph, blood, bone, cartilage, pancreas, kidney, gall bladder, stomach, intestine, testis, ovary, uterus, rectum, nervous system, eye, gland, and connective tissue. Interstitial space of the tissues comprises the intercellular, fluid, mucopolysaccharide matrix among the reticular fibers of organ tissues, elastic fibers in the walls of vessels or chambers, collagen fibers of fibrous tissues, or that same matrix within connective tissue ensheathing muscle cells or in the lacunae of bone. It is similarly the space occupied by the plasma of the circulation and the lymph fluid of the lymphatic channels. Delivery to the interstitial space of muscle tissue is preferred for the reasons discussed below. They may be conveniently delivered by injection into the tissues comprising these cells. They are preferably delivered to and expressed in persistent, non-dividing cells which are differentiated, although delivery and expression may be achieved in non-differentiated or less completely differentiated cells, such

as, for example, stem cells of blood or skin fibroblasts. In vivo muscle cells are particularly competent in their ability to take up and express polynucleotides.

For the naked nucleic acid sequence injection, an effective dosage amount of DNA or RNA will be in the range of from about 0.05 mg/kg body weight to about 50 mg/kg body weight. Preferably the dosage will be from about 0.005 mg/kg to about 20 mg/kg and more preferably from about 0.05 mg/kg to about 5 mg/kg. Of course, as the artisan of ordinary skill will appreciate, this dosage will vary according to the tissue site of injection. The appropriate and effective dosage of nucleic acid sequence can readily be determined by those of ordinary skill in the art and may depend on the condition being treated and the route of administration.

The preferred route of administration is by the parenteral route of injection into the interstitial space of tissues. However, other parenteral routes may also be used, such as, inhalation of an aerosol formulation particularly for delivery to lungs or bronchial tissues, throat or mucous membranes of the nose. In addition, naked TGF alpha HIII DNA constructs can be delivered to arteries during angioplasty by the catheter used in the procedure.

The naked polynucleotides are delivered by any method known in the art, including, but not limited to, direct needle injection at the delivery site, intravenous injection, topical administration, catheter infusion, and so-called "gene guns". These delivery methods are known in the art.

The constructs may also be delivered with delivery vehicles such as viral sequences, viral particles, liposome formulations, lipofectin, precipitating agents, etc. Such methods of delivery are known in the art.

In certain embodiments, the TGF alpha HIII polynucleotide constructs are complexed in a liposome preparation. Liposomal preparations for use in the instant invention include cationic (positively charged), anionic (negatively charged) and neutral preparations. However, cationic liposomes are particularly preferred because a tight charge complex can be formed between the cationic liposome and the polyanionic nucleic acid. Cationic liposomes have been shown to mediate intracellular delivery of plasmid DNA (Felgner et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA (1987) 84:7413-7416, which is herein incorporated by reference); mRNA (Malone et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA (1989) 86:6077-6081, which is herein incorporated by reference); and purified transcription factors (Debs et al., J. Biol. Chem. (1990) 265:10189-10192, which is herein incorporated by reference), in functional form.



Cationic liposomes are readily available. For example, N[1-2,3-dioleoyloxy)propyl]-N,N,N-triethylammonium (DOTMA) liposomes are particularly useful and are available under the trademark Lipofectin, from GIBCO BRL, Grand Island, N.Y. (See, also, Felgner et al., Proc. Natl Acad. Sci. USA (1987) 84:7413-7416, which is  
5 herein incorporated by reference). Other commercially available liposomes include transfectace (DDAB/DOPE) and DOTAP/DOPE (Boehringer).

Other cationic liposomes can be prepared from readily available materials using techniques well known in the art. See, e.g. PCT Publication No. WO 90/11092 (which is herein incorporated by reference) for a description of the synthesis of DOTAP (1,2-  
10 bis(oleoyloxy)-3-(trimethylammonio)propane) liposomes. Preparation of DOTMA liposomes is explained in the literature, see, e.g., P. Felgner et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 84:7413-7417, which is herein incorporated by reference. Similar methods can be used to prepare liposomes from other cationic lipid materials.

Similarly, anionic and neutral liposomes are readily available, such as from Avanti  
15 Polar Lipids (Birmingham, Ala.), or can be easily prepared using readily available materials. Such materials include phosphatidyl, choline, cholesterol, phosphatidyl ethanolamine, dioleoylphosphatidyl choline (DOPC), dioleoylphosphatidyl glycerol (DOPG), dioleoylphosphatidyl ethanolamine (DOPE), among others. These materials can also be mixed with the DOTMA and DOTAP starting materials in appropriate ratios. Methods for making  
20 liposomes using these materials are well known in the art.

For example, commercially dioleoylphosphatidyl choline (DOPC), dioleoylphosphatidyl glycerol (DOPG), and dioleoylphosphatidyl ethanolamine (DOPE) can be used in various combinations to make conventional liposomes, with or without the addition of cholesterol. Thus, for example, DOPG/DOPC vesicles can be prepared by drying  
25 50 mg each of DOPG and DOPC under a stream of nitrogen gas into a sonication vial. The sample is placed under a vacuum pump overnight and is hydrated the following day with deionized water. The sample is then sonicated for 2 hours in a capped vial, using a Heat Systems model 350 sonicator equipped with an inverted cup (bath type) probe at the maximum setting while the bath is circulated at 15EC. Alternatively, negatively charged  
30 vesicles can be prepared without sonication to produce multilamellar vesicles or by extrusion through nucleopore membranes to produce unilamellar vesicles of discrete size. Other methods are known and available to those of skill in the art.

The liposomes can comprise multilamellar vesicles (MLVs), small unilamellar vesicles (SUVs), or large unilamellar vesicles (LUVs), with SUVs being preferred. The various liposome-nucleic acid complexes are prepared using methods well known in the art. See, e.g., Straubinger et al., *Methods of Immunology* (1983), 101:512-527, which is herein  
 5 incorporated by reference. For example, MLVs containing nucleic acid can be prepared by depositing a thin film of phospholipid on the walls of a glass tube and subsequently hydrating with a solution of the material to be encapsulated. SUVs are prepared by extended sonication of MLVs to produce a homogeneous population of unilamellar liposomes. The material to be  
 10 entrapped is added to a suspension of preformed MLVs and then sonicated. When using liposomes containing cationic lipids, the dried lipid film is resuspended in an appropriate solution such as sterile water or an isotonic buffer solution such as 10 mM Tris/NaCl, sonicated, and then the preformed liposomes are mixed directly with the DNA. The liposome and DNA form a very stable complex due to binding of the positively charged liposomes to the cationic DNA. SUVs find use with small nucleic acid fragments. LUVs are prepared by a  
 15 number of methods, well known in the art. Commonly used methods include  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ -EDTA chelation (Papahadjopoulos et al., *Biochim. Biophys. Acta* (1975) 394:483; Wilson et al., *Cell* (1979) 17:77); ether injection (Deamer, D. and Bangham, A., *Biochim. Biophys. Acta* (1976) 443:629; Ostro et al., *Biochem. Biophys. Res. Commun.* (1977) 76:836; Fraley et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* (1979) 76:3348); detergent dialysis (Enoch, H. and Strittmatter, P., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* (1979) 76:145); and reverse-phase evaporation (REV) (Fraley et al., *J. Biol. Chem.* (1980) 255:10431; Szoka, F. and Papahadjopoulos, D., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* (1978) 75:145; Schaefer-Ridder et al., *Science* (1982) 215:166), which are herein  
 20 incorporated by reference.

Generally, the ratio of DNA to liposomes will be from about 10:1 to about 1:10.  
 25 Preferably, the ration will be from about 5:1 to about 1:5. More preferably, the ration will be about 3:1 to about 1:3. Still more preferably, the ratio will be about 1:1.

U.S. Patent No. 5,676,954 (which is herein incorporated by reference) reports on the injection of genetic material, complexed with cationic liposomes carriers, into mice. U.S. Patent Nos. 4,897,355, 4,946,787, 5,049,386, 5,459,127, 5,589,466, 5,693,622, 5,580,859,  
 30 5,703,055, and international publication no. WO 94/9469 (which are herein incorporated by reference) provide cationic lipids for use in transfecting DNA into cells and mammals. U.S. Patent Nos. 5,589,466, 5,693,622, 5,580,859, 5,703,055, and international publication no.

WO 94/9469 (which are herein incorporated by reference) provide methods for delivering DNA-cationic lipid complexes to mammals.

In certain embodiments, cells are engineered, ex vivo or in vivo, using a retroviral particle containing RNA which comprises a sequence encoding TGF alpha HIII. Retroviruses from which the retroviral plasmid vectors may be derived include, but are not limited to, Moloney Murine Leukemia Virus, spleen necrosis virus, Rous sarcoma Virus, Harvey Sarcoma Virus, avian leukosis virus, gibbon ape leukemia virus, human immunodeficiency virus, Myeloproliferative Sarcoma Virus, and mammary tumor virus.

The retroviral plasmid vector is employed to transduce packaging cell lines to form producer cell lines. Examples of packaging cells which may be transfected include, but are not limited to, the PE501, PA317, R-2, R-AM, PA12, T19-14X, VT-19-17-H2, RCRE, RCRIP, GP+E-86, GP+envAm12, and DAN cell lines as described in Miller, Human Gene Therapy 1:5-14 (1990), which is incorporated herein by reference in its entirety. The vector may transduce the packaging cells through any means known in the art. Such means include, but are not limited to, electroporation, the use of liposomes, and CaPO<sub>4</sub> precipitation. In one alternative, the retroviral plasmid vector may be encapsulated into a liposome, or coupled to a lipid, and then administered to a host.

The producer cell line generates infectious retroviral vector particles which include polynucleotide encoding TGF alpha HIII. Such retroviral vector particles then may be employed, to transduce eukaryotic cells, either in vitro or in vivo. The transduced eukaryotic cells will express TGF alpha HIII.

In certain other embodiments, cells are engineered, ex vivo or in vivo, with TGF alpha HIII polynucleotide contained in an adenovirus vector. Adenovirus can be manipulated such that it encodes and expresses TGF alpha HIII, and at the same time is inactivated in terms of its ability to replicate in a normal lytic viral life cycle. Adenovirus expression is achieved without integration of the viral DNA into the host cell chromosome, thereby alleviating concerns about insertional mutagenesis. Furthermore, adenoviruses have been used as live enteric vaccines for many years with an excellent safety profile (Schwartz, A. R. et al. (1974) Am. Rev. Respir. Dis.109:233-238). Finally, adenovirus mediated gene transfer has been demonstrated in a number of instances including transfer of alpha-1-antitrypsin and CFTR to the lungs of cotton rats (Rosenfeld, M. A. et al. (1991) Science 252:431-434; Rosenfeld et al., (1992) Cell 68:143-155). Furthermore, extensive studies to attempt to establish adenovirus as

a causative agent in human cancer were uniformly negative (Green, M. et al. (1979) Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 76:6606).

Suitable adenoviral vectors useful in the present invention are described, for example, in Kozarsky and Wilson, Curr. Opin. Genet. Devel. 3:499-503 (1993); Rosenfeld et al., Cell 5 68:143-155 (1992); Engelhardt et al., Human Genet. Ther. 4:759-769 (1993); Yang et al., Nature Genet. 7:362-369 (1994); Wilson et al., Nature 365:691-692 (1993); and U.S. Patent No. 5,652,224, which are herein incorporated by reference. For example, the adenovirus vector Ad2 is useful and can be grown in human 293 cells. These cells contain the E1 region of adenovirus and constitutively express Ela and Elb, which complement the defective 10 adenoviruses by providing the products of the genes deleted from the vector. In addition to Ad2, other varieties of adenovirus (e.g., Ad3, Ad5, and Ad7) are also useful in the present invention.

Preferably, the adenoviruses used in the present invention are replication deficient. Replication deficient adenoviruses require the aid of a helper virus and/or packaging cell line 15 to form infectious particles. The resulting virus is capable of infecting cells and can express a polynucleotide of interest which is operably linked to a promoter, but cannot replicate in most cells. Replication deficient adenoviruses may be deleted in one or more of all or a portion of the following genes: E1a, E1b, E3, E4, E2a, or L1 through L5.

In certain other embodiments, the cells are engineered, ex vivo or in vivo, using an 20 adeno-associated virus (AAV). AAVs are naturally occurring defective viruses that require helper viruses to produce infectious particles (Muzyczka, N., Curr. Topics in Microbiol. Immunol. 158:97 (1992)). It is also one of the few viruses that may integrate its DNA into non-dividing cells. Vectors containing as little as 300 base pairs of AAV can be packaged and can integrate, but space for exogenous DNA is limited to about 4.5 kb. Methods for 25 producing and using such AAVs are known in the art. See, for example, U.S. Patent Nos. 5,139,941, 5,173,414, 5,354,678, 5,436,146, 5,474,935, 5,478,745, and 5,589,377.

For example, an appropriate AAV vector for use in the present invention will include all the sequences necessary for DNA replication, encapsidation, and host-cell integration. The TGF alpha HIII polynucleotide construct is inserted into the AAV vector using standard 30 cloning methods, such as those found in Sambrook et al., Molecular Cloning: A Laboratory Manual, Cold Spring Harbor Press (1989). The recombinant AAV vector is then transfected into packaging cells which are infected with a helper virus, using any standard technique,

including lipofection, electroporation, calcium phosphate precipitation, etc. Appropriate helper viruses include adenoviruses, cytomegaloviruses, vaccinia viruses, or herpes viruses. Once the packaging cells are transfected and infected, they will produce infectious AAV viral particles which contain the TGF alpha HIII polynucleotide construct. These viral particles are then used to transduce eukaryotic cells, either ex vivo or in vivo. The transduced cells will contain the TGF alpha HIII polynucleotide construct integrated into its genome, and will express TGF alpha HIII.

Another method of gene therapy involves operably associating heterologous control regions and endogenous polynucleotide sequences (e.g. encoding TGF alpha HIII) via homologous recombination (see, e.g., U.S. Patent No. 5,641,670, issued June 24, 1997; International Publication No. WO 96/29411, published September 26, 1996; International Publication No. WO 94/12650, published August 4, 1994; Koller et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 86:8932-8935 (1989); and Zijlstra et al., Nature 342:435-438 (1989). This method involves the activation of a gene which is present in the target cells, but which is not normally expressed in the cells, or is expressed at a lower level than desired.

Polynucleotide constructs are made, using standard techniques known in the art, which contain the promoter with targeting sequences flanking the promoter. Suitable promoters are described herein. The targeting sequence is sufficiently complementary to an endogenous sequence to permit homologous recombination of the promoter-targeting sequence with the endogenous sequence. The targeting sequence will be sufficiently near the 5' end of the TGF alpha HIII desired endogenous polynucleotide sequence so the promoter will be operably linked to the endogenous sequence upon homologous recombination.

The promoter and the targeting sequences can be amplified using PCR. Preferably, the amplified promoter contains distinct restriction enzyme sites on the 5' and 3' ends. Preferably, the 3' end of the first targeting sequence contains the same restriction enzyme site as the 5' end of the amplified promoter and the 5' end of the second targeting sequence contains the same restriction site as the 3' end of the amplified promoter. The amplified promoter and targeting sequences are digested and ligated together.

The promoter-targeting sequence construct is delivered to the cells, either as naked polynucleotide, or in conjunction with transfection-facilitating agents, such as liposomes, viral sequences, viral particles, whole viruses, lipofection, precipitating agents, etc., described in more detail above. The P promoter-targeting sequence can be delivered by any method,

included direct needle injection, intravenous injection, topical administration, catheter infusion, particle accelerators, etc. The methods are described in more detail below.

The promoter-targeting sequence construct is taken up by cells. Homologous recombination between the construct and the endogenous sequence takes place, such that an endogenous TGF alpha HIII sequence is placed under the control of the promoter. The promoter then drives the expression of the endogenous TGF alpha HIII sequence.

The polynucleotides encoding TGF alpha HIII may be administered along with other polynucleotides encoding an angiogenic protein. Examples of angiogenic proteins include, but are not limited to, acidic and basic fibroblast growth factors, VEGF-1, VEGF-2, VEGF-3, epidermal growth factor alpha and beta, platelet-derived endothelial cell growth factor, platelet-derived growth factor, tumor necrosis factor alpha, hepatocyte growth factor, insulin like growth factor, colony stimulating factor, macrophage colony stimulating factor, granulocyte/macrophage colony stimulating factor, and nitric oxide synthase.

Preferably, the polynucleotide encoding TGF alpha HIII contains a secretory signal sequence that facilitates secretion of the protein. Typically, the signal sequence is positioned in the coding region of the polynucleotide to be expressed towards or at the 5' end of the coding region. The signal sequence may be homologous or heterologous to the polynucleotide of interest and may be homologous or heterologous to the cells to be transfected. Additionally, the signal sequence may be chemically synthesized using methods known in the art.

Any mode of administration of any of the above-described polynucleotides constructs can be used so long as the mode results in the expression of one or more molecules in an amount sufficient to provide a therapeutic effect. This includes direct needle injection, systemic injection, catheter infusion, biolistic injectors, particle accelerators (i.e., "gene guns"), gelfoam sponge depots, other commercially available depot materials, osmotic pumps (e.g., Alza minipumps), oral or suppositorial solid (tablet or pill) pharmaceutical formulations, and decanting or topical applications during surgery. For example, direct injection of naked calcium phosphate-precipitated plasmid into rat liver and rat spleen or a protein-coated plasmid into the portal vein has resulted in gene expression of the foreign gene in the rat livers (Kaneda et al., Science 243:375 (1989)).

A preferred method of local administration is by direct injection. Preferably, a recombinant molecule of the present invention complexed with a delivery vehicle is

administered by direct injection into or locally within the area of arteries. Administration of a composition locally within the area of arteries refers to injecting the composition centimeters and preferably, millimeters within arteries.

Another method of local administration is to contact a polynucleotide construct of the present invention in or around a surgical wound. For example, a patient can undergo surgery and the polynucleotide construct can be coated on the surface of tissue inside the wound or the construct can be injected into areas of tissue inside the wound.

Therapeutic compositions useful in systemic administration, include recombinant molecules of the present invention complexed to a targeted delivery vehicle of the present invention. Suitable delivery vehicles for use with systemic administration comprise liposomes comprising ligands for targeting the vehicle to a particular site.

Preferred methods of systemic administration, include intravenous injection, aerosol, oral and percutaneous (topical) delivery. Intravenous injections can be performed using methods standard in the art. Aerosol delivery can also be performed using methods standard in the art (see, for example, Stribling et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 189:11277-11281, 1992, which is incorporated herein by reference). Oral delivery can be performed by complexing a polynucleotide construct of the present invention to a carrier capable of withstanding degradation by digestive enzymes in the gut of an animal. Examples of such carriers, include plastic capsules or tablets, such as those known in the art. Topical delivery can be performed by mixing a polynucleotide construct of the present invention with a lipophilic reagent (e.g., DMSO) that is capable of passing into the skin.

Determining an effective amount of substance to be delivered can depend upon a number of factors including, for example, the chemical structure and biological activity of the substance, the age and weight of the animal, the precise condition requiring treatment and its severity, and the route of administration. The frequency of treatments depends upon a number of factors, such as the amount of polynucleotide constructs administered per dose, as well as the health and history of the subject. The precise amount, number of doses, and timing of doses will be determined by the attending physician or veterinarian.

Therapeutic compositions of the present invention can be administered to any animal, preferably to mammals and birds. Preferred mammals include humans, dogs, cats, mice, rats, rabbits sheep, cattle, horses and pigs, with humans being particularly preferred.

### **Biological Activities of TGF alpha HIII**

TGF alpha HIII polynucleotides or polypeptides, or agonists or antagonists of TGF alpha HIII, can be used in assays to test for one or more biological activities. If TGF alpha HIII polynucleotides or polypeptides, or agonists or antagonists of TGF alpha HIII, do exhibit activity in a particular assay, it is likely that TGF alpha HIII may be involved in the diseases associated with the biological activity. Therefore, TGF alpha HIII could be used to treat the associated disease.

### **Immune Activity**

TGF alpha HIII polynucleotides or polypeptides, or agonists or antagonists of TGF alpha HIII, may be useful in treating deficiencies or disorders of the immune system, by activating or inhibiting the proliferation, differentiation, or mobilization (chemotaxis) of immune cells. Immune cells develop through a process called hematopoiesis, producing myeloid (platelets, red blood cells, neutrophils, and macrophages) and lymphoid (B and T lymphocytes) cells from pluripotent stem cells. The etiology of these immune deficiencies or disorders may be genetic, somatic, such as cancer or some autoimmune disorders, acquired (e.g., by chemotherapy or toxins), or infectious. Moreover, TGF alpha HIII polynucleotides or polypeptides, or agonists or antagonists of TGF alpha HIII, can be used as a marker or detector of a particular immune system disease or disorder.

TGF alpha HIII polynucleotides or polypeptides, or agonists or antagonists of TGF alpha HIII, may be useful in treating or detecting deficiencies or disorders of hematopoietic cells. TGF alpha HIII polynucleotides or polypeptides, or agonists or antagonists of TGF alpha HIII, could be used to increase differentiation and proliferation of hematopoietic cells, including the pluripotent stem cells, in an effort to treat those disorders associated with a decrease in certain (or many) types hematopoietic cells. Examples of immunologic deficiency syndromes include, but are not limited to: blood protein disorders (e.g. agammaglobulinemia, dysgammaglobulinemia), ataxia telangiectasia, common variable immunodeficiency, Digeorge Syndrome, HIV infection, HTLV-BLV infection, leukocyte adhesion deficiency syndrome, lymphopenia, phagocyte bactericidal dysfunction, severe combined immunodeficiency (SCIDs), Wiskott-Aldrich Disorder, anemia, thrombocytopenia, or hemoglobinuria.



Moreover, TGF alpha HIII polynucleotides or polypeptides, or agonists or antagonists of TGF alpha HIII, can also be used to modulate hemostatic (the stopping of bleeding) or thrombolytic activity (clot formation). For example, by increasing hemostatic or thrombolytic activity, TGF alpha HIII polynucleotides or polypeptides, or agonists or antagonists of TGF alpha HIII, could be used to treat blood coagulation disorders (e.g., afibrinogenemia, factor deficiencies), blood platelet disorders (e.g. thrombocytopenia), or wounds resulting from trauma, surgery, or other causes. Alternatively, TGF alpha HIII polynucleotides or polypeptides, or agonists or antagonists of TGF alpha HIII, that can decrease hemostatic or thrombolytic activity could be used to inhibit or dissolve clotting. These molecules could be important in the treatment of heart attacks (infarction), strokes, or scarring.

TGF alpha HIII polynucleotides or polypeptides, or agonists or antagonists of TGF alpha HIII, may also be useful in treating or detecting autoimmune disorders. Many autoimmune disorders result from inappropriate recognition of self as foreign material by immune cells. This inappropriate recognition results in an immune response leading to the destruction of the host tissue. Therefore, the administration of TGF alpha HIII polynucleotides or polypeptides, or agonists or antagonists of TGF alpha HIII, that can inhibit an immune response, particularly the proliferation, differentiation, or chemotaxis of T-cells, may be an effective therapy in preventing autoimmune disorders.

Examples of autoimmune disorders that can be treated or detected include, but are not limited to: Addison's Disease, hemolytic anemia, antiphospholipid syndrome, rheumatoid arthritis, dermatitis, allergic encephalomyelitis, glomerulonephritis, Goodpasture's Syndrome, Graves' Disease, Multiple Sclerosis, Myasthenia Gravis, Neuritis, Ophthalmia, Bullous Pemphigoid, Pemphigus, Polyendocrinopathies, Purpura, Reiter's Disease, Stiff-Man Syndrome, Autoimmune Thyroiditis, Systemic Lupus Erythematosus, Autoimmune Pulmonary Inflammation, Guillain-Barre Syndrome, insulin dependent diabetes mellitis, and autoimmune inflammatory eye disease.

Similarly, allergic reactions and conditions, such as asthma (particularly allergic asthma) or other respiratory problems, may also be treated by TGF alpha HIII polynucleotides or polypeptides, or agonists or antagonists of TGF alpha HIII. Moreover, these molecules can be used to treat anaphylaxis, hypersensitivity to an antigenic molecule, or blood group incompatibility.

TGF alpha HIII polynucleotides or polypeptides, or agonists or antagonists of TGF alpha HIII, may also be used to treat and/or prevent organ rejection or graft-versus-host disease (GVHD). Organ rejection occurs by host immune cell destruction of the transplanted tissue through an immune response. Similarly, an immune response is also involved in GVHD, but, in this case, the foreign transplanted immune cells destroy the host tissues. The administration of TGF alpha HIII polynucleotides or polypeptides, or agonists or antagonists of TGF alpha HIII, that inhibits an immune response, particularly the proliferation, differentiation, or chemotaxis of T-cells, may be an effective therapy in preventing organ rejection or GVHD.

Similarly, TGF alpha HIII polynucleotides or polypeptides, or agonists or antagonists of TGF alpha HIII, may also be used to modulate inflammation. For example, TGF alpha HIII polynucleotides or polypeptides, or agonists or antagonists of TGF alpha HIII, may inhibit the proliferation and differentiation of cells involved in an inflammatory response. These molecules can be used to treat inflammatory conditions, both chronic and acute conditions, including chronic prostatitis, granulomatous prostatitis and malacoplakia, inflammation associated with infection (e.g., septic shock, sepsis, or systemic inflammatory response syndrome (SIRS)), ischemia-reperfusion injury, endotoxin lethality, arthritis, complement-mediated hyperacute rejection, nephritis, cytokine or chemokine induced lung injury, inflammatory bowel disease, Crohn's disease, or resulting from over production of cytokines (e.g., TNF or IL-1.)

#### **Hyperproliferative Disorders**

TGF alpha HIII polynucleotides or polypeptides, or agonists or antagonists of TGF alpha HIII, can be used to treat or detect hyperproliferative disorders, including neoplasms. TGF alpha HIII polynucleotides or polypeptides, or agonists or antagonists of TGF alpha HIII, may inhibit the proliferation of the disorder through direct or indirect interactions. Alternatively, TGF alpha HIII polynucleotides or polypeptides, or agonists or antagonists of TGF alpha HIII, may proliferate other cells which can inhibit the hyperproliferative disorder.

For example, by increasing an immune response, particularly increasing antigenic qualities of the hyperproliferative disorder or by proliferating, differentiating, or mobilizing T-cells, hyperproliferative disorders can be treated. This immune response may be increased by either enhancing an existing immune response, or by initiating a new immune response.

Alternatively, decreasing an immune response may also be a method of treating hyperproliferative disorders, such as a chemotherapeutic agent.

Examples of hyperproliferative disorders that can be treated or detected by TGF alpha HIII polynucleotides or polypeptides, or agonists or antagonists of TGF alpha HIII, include, but are not limited to neoplasms located in the: colon, abdomen, bone, breast, digestive system, liver, pancreas, peritoneum, endocrine glands (adrenal, parathyroid, pituitary, testicles, ovary, thymus, thyroid), eye, head and neck, nervous (central and peripheral), lymphatic system, pelvic, skin, soft tissue, spleen, thoracic, and urogenital.

Similarly, other hyperproliferative disorders can also be treated or detected by TGF alpha HIII polynucleotides or polypeptides, or agonists or antagonists of TGF alpha HIII. Examples of such hyperproliferative disorders include, but are not limited to: hypergammaglobulinemia, lymphoproliferative disorders, paraproteinemias, purpura, sarcoidosis, Sezary Syndrome, Waldenström's Macroglobulinemia, Gaucher's Disease, histiocytosis, and any other hyperproliferative disease, besides neoplasia, located in an organ system listed above.

One preferred embodiment utilizes polynucleotides of the present invention to inhibit aberrant cellular division, by gene therapy using the present invention, and/or protein fusions or fragments thereof.

Thus, the present invention provides a method for treating cell proliferative disorders by inserting into an abnormally proliferating cell a polynucleotide of the present invention, wherein said polynucleotide represses said expression.

Another embodiment of the present invention provides a method of treating cell-proliferative disorders in individuals comprising administration of one or more active gene copies of the present invention to an abnormally proliferating cell or cells. In a preferred embodiment, polynucleotides of the present invention is a DNA construct comprising a recombinant expression vector effective in expressing a DNA sequence encoding said polynucleotides. In another preferred embodiment of the present invention, the DNA construct encoding the polynucleotides of the present invention is inserted into cells to be treated utilizing a retrovirus, or more preferably an adenoviral vector (See G J. Nabel, et. al., PNAS 1999 96: 324-326, which is hereby incorporated by reference). In a most preferred embodiment, the viral vector is defective and will not transform non-proliferating cells, only proliferating cells. Moreover, in a preferred embodiment, the polynucleotides of the present

invention inserted into proliferating cells either alone, or in combination with or fused to other polynucleotides, can then be modulated via an external stimulus (i.e. magnetic, specific small molecule, chemical, or drug administration, etc.), which acts upon the promoter upstream of said polynucleotides to induce expression of the encoded protein product. As  
5 such the beneficial therapeutic affect of the present invention may be expressly modulated (i.e. to increase, decrease, or inhibit expression of the present invention) based upon said external stimulus.

Polynucleotides of the present invention may be useful in repressing expression of oncogenic genes or antigens. By "repressing expression of the oncogenic genes " is intended  
10 the suppression of the transcription of the gene, the degradation of the gene transcript (pre-message RNA), the inhibition of splicing, the destruction of the messenger RNA, the prevention of the post-translational modifications of the protein, the destruction of the protein, or the inhibition of the normal function of the protein.

For local administration to abnormally proliferating cells, polynucleotides of the  
15 present invention may be administered by any method known to those of skill in the art including, but not limited to transfection, electroporation, microinjection of cells, or in vehicles such as liposomes, lipofectin, or as naked polynucleotides, or any other method described throughout the specification. The polynucleotide of the present invention may be delivered by known gene delivery systems such as, but not limited to, retroviral vectors  
20 (Gilboa, J. Virology 44:845 (1982); Hocke, Nature 320:275 (1986); Wilson, et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A. 85:3014), vaccinia virus system (Chakrabarty et al., Mol. Cell Biol. 5:3403 (1985) or other efficient DNA delivery systems (Yates et al., Nature 313:812 (1985)) known to those skilled in the art. These references are exemplary only and are hereby incorporated by reference. In order to specifically deliver or transfect cells which are abnormally  
25 proliferating and spare non-dividing cells, it is preferable to utilize a retrovirus, or adenoviral (as described in the art and elsewhere herein) delivery system known to those of skill in the art. Since host DNA replication is required for retroviral DNA to integrate and the retrovirus will be unable to self replicate due to the lack of the retrovirus genes needed for its life cycle. Utilizing such a retroviral delivery system for polynucleotides of the present invention will  
30 target said gene and constructs to abnormally proliferating cells and will spare the non-dividing normal cells.

The polynucleotides of the present invention may be delivered directly to cell proliferative disorder/disease sites in internal organs, body cavities and the like by use of imaging devices used to guide an injecting needle directly to the disease site. The polynucleotides of the present invention may also be administered to disease sites at the time of surgical intervention.

By "cell proliferative disease" is meant any human or animal disease or disorder, affecting any one or any combination of organs, cavities, or body parts, which is characterized by single or multiple local abnormal proliferations of cells, groups of cells, or tissues, whether benign or malignant.

Any amount of the polynucleotides of the present invention may be administered as long as it has a biologically inhibiting effect on the proliferation of the treated cells. Moreover, it is possible to administer more than one of the polynucleotide of the present invention simultaneously to the same site. By "biologically inhibiting" is meant partial or total growth inhibition as well as decreases in the rate of proliferation or growth of the cells. The biologically inhibitory dose may be determined by assessing the effects of the polynucleotides of the present invention on target malignant or abnormally proliferating cell growth in tissue culture, tumor growth in animals and cell cultures, or any other method known to one of ordinary skill in the art.

The present invention is further directed to antibody-based therapies which involve administering of anti-polypeptides and anti-polynucleotide antibodies to a mammalian, preferably human, patient for treating one or more of the described disorders. Methods for producing anti-polypeptides and anti-polynucleotide antibodies polyclonal and monoclonal antibodies are described in detail elsewhere herein. Such antibodies may be provided in pharmaceutically acceptable compositions as known in the art or as described herein.

A summary of the ways in which the antibodies of the present invention may be used therapeutically includes binding polynucleotides or polypeptides of the present invention locally or systemically in the body or by direct cytotoxicity of the antibody, e.g. as mediated by complement (CDC) or by effector cells (ADCC). Some of these approaches are described in more detail below. Armed with the teachings provided herein, one of ordinary skill in the art will know how to use the antibodies of the present invention for diagnostic, monitoring or therapeutic purposes without undue experimentation.

In particular, the antibodies, fragments and derivatives of the present invention are useful for treating a subject having or developing cell proliferative and/or differentiation disorders as described herein. Such treatment comprises administering a single or multiple doses of the antibody, or a fragment, derivative, or a conjugate thereof.

5 The antibodies of this invention may be advantageously utilized in combination with other monoclonal or chimeric antibodies, or with lymphokines or hematopoietic growth factors, for example, which serve to increase the number or activity of effector cells which interact with the antibodies.

10 It is preferred to use high affinity and/or potent in vivo inhibiting and/or neutralizing antibodies against polypeptides or polynucleotides of the present invention, fragments or regions thereof, for both immunoassays directed to and therapy of disorders related to polynucleotides or polypeptides, including fragments thereof, of the present invention. Such antibodies, fragments, or regions, will preferably have an affinity for polynucleotides or polypeptides, including fragments thereof. Preferred binding affinities include those with a  
15 dissociation constant or  $K_d$  less than  $5 \times 10^{-6}M$ ,  $10^{-6}M$ ,  $5 \times 10^{-7}M$ ,  $10^{-7}M$ ,  $5 \times 10^{-8}M$ ,  $10^{-8}M$ ,  $5 \times 10^{-9}M$ ,  $10^{-9}M$ ,  $5 \times 10^{-10}M$ ,  $10^{-10}M$ ,  $5 \times 10^{-11}M$ ,  $10^{-11}M$ ,  $5 \times 10^{-12}M$ ,  $10^{-12}M$ ,  $5 \times 10^{-13}M$ ,  $10^{-13}M$ ,  $5 \times 10^{-14}M$ ,  $10^{-14}M$ ,  $5 \times 10^{-15}M$ , and  $10^{-15}M$ .

Moreover, polypeptides of the present invention are useful in inhibiting the angiogenesis of proliferative cells or tissues, either alone, as a protein fusion, or in  
20 combination with other polypeptides directly or indirectly, as described elsewhere herein. In a most preferred embodiment, said anti-angiogenesis effect may be achieved indirectly, for example, through the inhibition of hematopoietic, tumor-specific cells, such as tumor-associated macrophages (See Joseph IB, et al. J Natl Cancer Inst, 90(21):1648-53 (1998), which is hereby incorporated by reference). Antibodies directed to polypeptides or  
25 polynucleotides of the present invention may also result in inhibition of angiogenesis directly, or indirectly (See Witte L, et al., Cancer Metastasis Rev. 17(2):155-61 (1998), which is hereby incorporated by reference)).

Polypeptides, including protein fusions, of the present invention, or fragments thereof may be useful in inhibiting proliferative cells or tissues through the induction of apoptosis.  
30 Said polypeptides may act either directly, or indirectly to induce apoptosis of proliferative cells and tissues, for example in the activation of a death-domain receptor, such as tumor necrosis factor (TNF) receptor-1, CD95 (Fas/APO-1), TNF-receptor-related apoptosis-

mediated protein (TRAMP) and TNF-related apoptosis-inducing ligand (TRAIL) receptor-1 and -2 (See Schulze-Osthoff K, et.al., Eur J Biochem 254(3):439-59 (1998), which is hereby incorporated by reference). Moreover, in another preferred embodiment of the present invention, said polypeptides may induce apoptosis through other mechanisms, such as in the  
5 activation of other proteins which will activate apoptosis, or through stimulating the expression of said proteins, either alone or in combination with small molecule drugs or adjuvants, such as apoptonin, galectins, thioredoxins, antiinflammatory proteins (See for example, Mutat Res 400(1-2):447-55 (1998), Med Hypotheses.50(5):423-33 (1998), Chem Biol Interact. Apr 24;111-112:23-34 (1998), J Mol Med.76(6):402-12 (1998), Int J Tissue  
10 React;20(1):3-15 (1998), which are all hereby incorporated by reference).

Polypeptides, including protein fusions to, or fragments thereof, of the present invention are useful in inhibiting the metastasis of proliferative cells or tissues. Inhibition may occur as a direct result of administering polypeptides, or antibodies directed to said polypeptides as described elsewhere herein, or indirectly, such as activating the expression of  
15 proteins known to inhibit metastasis, for example alpha 4 integrins, (See, e.g., Curr Top Microbiol Immunol 1998;231:125-41, which is hereby incorporated by reference). Such therapeutic affects of the present invention may be achieved either alone, or in combination with small molecule drugs or adjuvants.

In another embodiment, the invention provides a method of delivering compositions  
20 containing the polypeptides of the invention (e.g., compositions containing polypeptides or polypeptide antibodies associated with heterologous polypeptides, heterologous nucleic acids, toxins, or prodrugs) to targeted cells expressing the polypeptide of the present invention. Polypeptides or polypeptide antibodies of the invention may be associated with with heterologous polypeptides, heterologous nucleic acids, toxins, or prodrugs via hydrophobic,  
25 hydrophilic, ionic and/or covalent interactions.

Polypeptides, protein fusions to, or fragments thereof, of the present invention are useful in enhancing the immunogenicity and/or antigenicity of proliferating cells or tissues, either directly, such as would occur if the polypeptides of the present invention 'vaccinated' the immune response to respond to proliferative antigens and immunogens, or indirectly,  
30 such as in activating the expression of proteins known to enhance the immune response (e.g. chemokines), to said antigens and immunogens.

### **Cardiovascular Disorders**

TGF alpha HIII polynucleotides or polypeptides, or agonists or antagonists of TGF alpha HIII, encoding TGF alpha HIII may be used to treat cardiovascular disorders, including peripheral artery disease, such as limb ischemia.

5           Cardiovascular disorders include cardiovascular abnormalities, such as arterio-arterial fistula, arteriovenous fistula, cerebral arteriovenous malformations, congenital heart defects, pulmonary atresia, and Scimitar Syndrome. Congenital heart defects include aortic coarctation, cor triatriatum, coronary vessel anomalies, crisscross heart, dextrocardia, patent ductus arteriosus, Ebstein's anomaly, Eisenmenger complex, hypoplastic left heart syndrome, 10   levocardia, tetralogy of fallot, transposition of great vessels, double outlet right ventricle, tricuspid atresia, persistent truncus arteriosus, and heart septal defects, such as aortopulmonary septal defect, endocardial cushion defects, Lutembacher's Syndrome, trilogly of Fallot, ventricular heart septal defects.

          Cardiovascular disorders also include heart disease, such as arrhythmias, carcinoid 15   heart disease, high cardiac output, low cardiac output, cardiac tamponade, endocarditis (including bacterial), heart aneurysm, cardiac arrest, congestive heart failure, congestive cardiomyopathy, paroxysmal dyspnea, cardiac edema, heart hypertrophy, congestive cardiomyopathy, left ventricular hypertrophy, right ventricular hypertrophy, post-infarction heart rupture, ventricular septal rupture, heart valve diseases, myocardial diseases, myocardial 20   ischemia, pericardial effusion, pericarditis (including constrictive and tuberculous), pneumopericardium, postpericardiotomy syndrome, pulmonary heart disease, rheumatic heart disease, ventricular dysfunction, hyperemia, cardiovascular pregnancy complications, Scimitar Syndrome, cardiovascular syphilis, and cardiovascular tuberculosis.

          Arrhythmias include sinus arrhythmia, atrial fibrillation, atrial flutter, bradycardia, 25   extrasystole, Adams-Stokes Syndrome, bundle-branch block, sinoatrial block, long QT syndrome, parasystole, Lown-Ganong-Levine Syndrome, Mahaim-type pre-excitation syndrome, Wolff-Parkinson-White syndrome, sick sinus syndrome, tachycardias, and ventricular fibrillation. Tachycardias include paroxysmal tachycardia, supraventricular tachycardia, accelerated idioventricular rhythm, atrioventricular nodal reentry tachycardia, 30   ectopic atrial tachycardia, ectopic junctional tachycardia, sinoatrial nodal reentry tachycardia, sinus tachycardia, Torsades de Pointes, and ventricular tachycardia.



Heart valve disease include aortic valve insufficiency, aortic valve stenosis, heart murmurs, aortic valve prolapse, mitral valve prolapse, tricuspid valve prolapse, mitral valve insufficiency, mitral valve stenosis, pulmonary atresia, pulmonary valve insufficiency, pulmonary valve stenosis, tricuspid atresia, tricuspid valve insufficiency, and tricuspid valve stenosis.

Myocardial diseases include alcoholic cardiomyopathy, congestive cardiomyopathy, hypertrophic cardiomyopathy, aortic subvalvular stenosis, pulmonary subvalvular stenosis, restrictive cardiomyopathy, Chagas cardiomyopathy, endocardial fibroelastosis, endomyocardial fibrosis, Kearns Syndrome, myocardial reperfusion injury, and myocarditis.

Myocardial ischemias include coronary disease, such as angina pectoris, coronary aneurysm, coronary arteriosclerosis, coronary thrombosis, coronary vasospasm, myocardial infarction and myocardial stunning.

Cardiovascular diseases also include vascular diseases such as aneurysms, angiodyplasia, angiomas, bacillary angiomas, Hippel-Lindau Disease, Klippel-Trenaunay-Weber Syndrome, Sturge-Weber Syndrome, angioneurotic edema, aortic diseases, Takayasu's Arteritis, aortitis, Leriche's Syndrome, arterial occlusive diseases, arteritis, enarteritis, polyarteritis nodosa, cerebrovascular disorders, diabetic angiopathies, diabetic retinopathy, embolisms, thrombosis, erythromelalgia, hemorrhoids, hepatic veno-occlusive disease, hypertension, hypotension, ischemia, peripheral vascular diseases, phlebitis, pulmonary veno-occlusive disease, Raynaud's disease, CREST syndrome, retinal vein occlusion, Scimitar syndrome, superior vena cava syndrome, telangiectasia, ataxia telangiectasia, hereditary hemorrhagic telangiectasia, varicocele, varicose veins, varicose ulcer, vasculitis, and venous insufficiency.

Aneurysms include dissecting aneurysms, false aneurysms, infected aneurysms, ruptured aneurysms, aortic aneurysms, cerebral aneurysms, coronary aneurysms, heart aneurysms, and iliac aneurysms.

Arterial occlusive diseases include arteriosclerosis, intermittent claudication, carotid stenosis, fibromuscular dysplasias, mesenteric vascular occlusion, Moyamoya disease, renal artery obstruction, retinal artery occlusion, and thromboangiitis obliterans.

Cerebrovascular disorders include carotid artery diseases, cerebral amyloid angiopathy, cerebral aneurysm, cerebral anoxia, cerebral arteriosclerosis, cerebral arteriovenous malformation, cerebral artery diseases, cerebral embolism and thrombosis,

carotid artery thrombosis, sinus thrombosis, Wallenberg's syndrome, cerebral hemorrhage, epidural hematoma, subdural hematoma, subarachnoid hemorrhage, cerebral infarction, cerebral ischemia (including transient), subclavian steal syndrome, periventricular leukomalacia, vascular headache, cluster headache, migraine, and vertebrobasilar insufficiency.

Embolisms include air embolisms, amniotic fluid embolisms, cholesterol embolisms, blue toe syndrome, fat embolisms, pulmonary embolisms, and thromboembolisms. Thrombosis include coronary thrombosis, hepatic vein thrombosis, retinal vein occlusion, carotid artery thrombosis, sinus thrombosis, Wallenberg's syndrome, and thrombophlebitis.

Ischemia includes cerebral ischemia, ischemic colitis, compartment syndromes, anterior compartment syndrome, myocardial ischemia, reperfusion injuries, and peripheral limb ischemia. Vasculitis includes aortitis, arteritis, Behcet's Syndrome, Churg-Strauss Syndrome, mucocutaneous lymph node syndrome, thromboangiitis obliterans, hypersensitivity vasculitis, Schoenlein-Henoch purpura, allergic cutaneous vasculitis, and Wegener's granulomatosis.

TGF alpha HIII polynucleotides or polypeptides, or agonists or antagonists of TGF alpha HIII, are especially effective for the treatment of critical limb ischemia and coronary disease. TGF alpha HIII polypeptides may be administered using any method known in the art, including, but not limited to, direct needle injection at the delivery site, intravenous injection, topical administration, catheter infusion, biolistic injectors, particle accelerators, gelfoam sponge depots, other commercially available depot materials, osmotic pumps, oral or suppository solid pharmaceutical formulations, decanting or topical applications during surgery, aerosol delivery. Such methods are known in the art. TGF alpha HIII polypeptides may be administered as part of a Therapeutic, described in more detail below. Methods of delivering TGF alpha HIII polynucleotides are described in more detail herein.

### **Anti-Angiogenesis Activity**

The naturally occurring balance between endogenous stimulators and inhibitors of angiogenesis is one in which inhibitory influences predominate. Rastinejad *et al.*, *Cell* 56:345-355 (1989). In those rare instances in which neovascularization occurs under normal physiological conditions, such as wound healing, organ regeneration, embryonic development, and female reproductive processes, angiogenesis is stringently regulated and

spatially and temporally delimited. Under conditions of pathological angiogenesis such as that characterizing solid tumor growth, these regulatory controls fail. Unregulated angiogenesis becomes pathologic and sustains progression of many neoplastic and non-neoplastic diseases. A number of serious diseases are dominated by abnormal

5 neovascularization including solid tumor growth and metastases, arthritis, some types of eye disorders, and psoriasis. See, e.g., reviews by Moses *et al.*, *Biotech.* 9:630-634 (1991); Folkman *et al.*, *N. Engl. J. Med.*, 333:1757-1763 (1995); Auerbach *et al.*, *J. Microvasc. Res.* 29:401-411 (1985); Folkman, *Advances in Cancer Research*, eds. Klein and Weinhouse, Academic Press, New York, pp. 175-203 (1985); Patz, *Am. J. Ophthalmol.* 94:715-743

10 (1982); and Folkman *et al.*, *Science* 221:719-725 (1983). In a number of pathological conditions, the process of angiogenesis contributes to the disease state. For example, significant data have accumulated which suggest that the growth of solid tumors is dependent on angiogenesis. Folkman and Klagsbrun, *Science* 235:442-447 (1987).

The present invention provides for treatment of diseases or disorders associated with

15 neovascularization by administration of the polynucleotides and/or polypeptides of the invention, as well as agonists or antagonists of the present invention. Malignant and metastatic conditions which can be treated with the polynucleotides and polypeptides, or agonists or antagonists of the invention include, but are not limited to, malignancies, solid tumors, and cancers described herein and otherwise known in the art (for a review of such

20 disorders, see Fishman *et al.*, *Medicine*, 2d Ed., J. B. Lippincott Co., Philadelphia (1985)). Thus, the present invention provides a method of treating an angiogenesis-related disease and/or disorder, comprising administering to an individual in need thereof a therapeutically effective amount of a polynucleotide, polypeptide, antagonist and/or agonist of the invention. For example, polynucleotides, polypeptides, antagonists and/or agonists

25 may be utilized in a variety of additional methods in order to therapeutically treat a cancer or tumor. Cancers which may be treated with polynucleotides, polypeptides, antagonists and/or agonists include, but are not limited to solid tumors, including prostate, lung, breast, ovarian, stomach, pancreas, larynx, esophagus, testes, liver, parotid, biliary tract, colon, rectum, cervix, uterus, endometrium, kidney, bladder, thyroid cancer; primary tumors and metastases;

30 melanomas; glioblastoma; Kaposi's sarcoma; leiomyosarcoma; non-small cell lung cancer; colorectal cancer; advanced malignancies; and blood born tumors such as leukemias. For example, polynucleotides, polypeptides, antagonists and/or agonists may be delivered

topically, in order to treat cancers such as skin cancer, head and neck tumors, breast tumors, and Kaposi's sarcoma.

Within yet other aspects, polynucleotides, polypeptides, antagonists and/or agonists may be utilized to treat superficial forms of bladder cancer by, for example, intravesical administration. Polynucleotides, polypeptides, antagonists and/or agonists may be delivered directly into the tumor, or near the tumor site, via injection or a catheter. Of course, as the artisan of ordinary skill will appreciate, the appropriate mode of administration will vary according to the cancer to be treated. Other modes of delivery are discussed herein.

Polynucleotides, polypeptides, antagonists and/or agonists may be useful in treating other disorders, besides cancers, which involve angiogenesis. These disorders include, but are not limited to: benign tumors, for example hemangiomas, acoustic neuromas, neurofibromas, trachomas, and pyogenic granulomas; arteriosclerotic plaques; ocular angiogenic diseases, for example, diabetic retinopathy, retinopathy of prematurity, macular degeneration, corneal graft rejection, neovascular glaucoma, retrolental fibroplasia, rubeosis, retinoblastoma, uveitis and Pterygia (abnormal blood vessel growth) of the eye; rheumatoid arthritis; psoriasis; delayed wound healing; endometriosis; vasculogenesis; granulations; hypertrophic scars (keloids); nonunion fractures; scleroderma; trachoma; vascular adhesions; myocardial angiogenesis; coronary collaterals; cerebral collaterals; arteriovenous malformations; ischemic limb angiogenesis; Osler-Webber Syndrome; plaque neovascularization; telangiectasia; hemophilic joints; angiofibroma; fibromuscular dysplasia; wound granulation; Crohn's disease; and atherosclerosis.

For example, within one aspect of the present invention methods are provided for treating hypertrophic scars and keloids, comprising the step of administering a polynucleotide, polypeptide, antagonist and/or agonist of the invention to a hypertrophic scar or keloid.

Within one embodiment of the present invention polynucleotides, polypeptides, antagonists and/or agonists are directly injected into a hypertrophic scar or keloid, in order to prevent the progression of these lesions. This therapy is of particular value in the prophylactic treatment of conditions which are known to result in the development of hypertrophic scars and keloids (e.g., burns), and is preferably initiated after the proliferative phase has had time to progress (approximately 14 days after the initial injury), but before hypertrophic scar or keloid development. As noted above, the present invention also provides

methods for treating neovascular diseases of the eye, including for example, corneal neovascularization, neovascular glaucoma, proliferative diabetic retinopathy, retrolental fibroplasia and macular degeneration.

Moreover, Ocular disorders associated with neovascularization which can be treated with the polynucleotides and polypeptides of the present invention (including agonists and/or antagonists) include, but are not limited to: neovascular glaucoma, diabetic retinopathy, retinoblastoma, retrolental fibroplasia, uveitis, retinopathy of prematurity macular degeneration, corneal graft neovascularization, as well as other eye inflammatory diseases, ocular tumors and diseases associated with choroidal or iris neovascularization. See, e.g., reviews by Waltman *et al.*, *Am. J. Ophthalm.* 85:704-710 (1978) and Gartner *et al.*, *Surv. Ophthalm.* 22:291-312 (1978).

Thus, within one aspect of the present invention methods are provided for treating neovascular diseases of the eye such as corneal neovascularization (including corneal graft neovascularization), comprising the step of administering to a patient a therapeutically effective amount of a compound (as described above) to the cornea, such that the formation of blood vessels is inhibited. Briefly, the cornea is a tissue which normally lacks blood vessels. In certain pathological conditions however, capillaries may extend into the cornea from the pericorneal vascular plexus of the limbus. When the cornea becomes vascularized, it also becomes clouded, resulting in a decline in the patient's visual acuity. Visual loss may become complete if the cornea completely opacitates. A wide variety of disorders can result in corneal neovascularization, including for example, corneal infections (e.g., trachoma, herpes simplex keratitis, leishmaniasis and onchocerciasis), immunological processes (e.g., graft rejection and Stevens-Johnson's syndrome), alkali burns, trauma, inflammation (of any cause), toxic and nutritional deficiency states, and as a complication of wearing contact lenses.

Within particularly preferred embodiments of the invention, may be prepared for topical administration in saline (combined with any of the preservatives and antimicrobial agents commonly used in ocular preparations), and administered in eyedrop form. The solution or suspension may be prepared in its pure form and administered several times daily. Alternatively, anti-angiogenic compositions, prepared as described above, may also be administered directly to the cornea. Within preferred embodiments, the anti-angiogenic composition is prepared with a muco-adhesive polymer which binds to cornea. Within

further embodiments, the anti-angiogenic factors or anti-angiogenic compositions may be utilized as an adjunct to conventional steroid therapy. Topical therapy may also be useful prophylactically in corneal lesions which are known to have a high probability of inducing an angiogenic response (such as chemical burns). In these instances the treatment, likely in combination with steroids, may be instituted immediately to help prevent subsequent complications.

Within other embodiments, the compounds described above may be injected directly into the corneal stroma by an ophthalmologist under microscopic guidance. The preferred site of injection may vary with the morphology of the individual lesion, but the goal of the administration would be to place the composition at the advancing front of the vasculature (i.e., interspersed between the blood vessels and the normal cornea). In most cases this would involve perilimbic corneal injection to "protect" the cornea from the advancing blood vessels. This method may also be utilized shortly after a corneal insult in order to prophylactically prevent corneal neovascularization. In this situation the material could be injected in the perilimbic cornea interspersed between the corneal lesion and its undesired potential limbic blood supply. Such methods may also be utilized in a similar fashion to prevent capillary invasion of transplanted corneas. In a sustained-release form injections might only be required 2-3 times per year. A steroid could also be added to the injection solution to reduce inflammation resulting from the injection itself.

Within another aspect of the present invention, methods are provided for treating neovascular glaucoma, comprising the step of administering to a patient a therapeutically effective amount of a polynucleotide, polypeptide, antagonist and/or agonist to the eye, such that the formation of blood vessels is inhibited. In one embodiment, the compound may be administered topically to the eye in order to treat early forms of neovascular glaucoma. Within other embodiments, the compound may be implanted by injection into the region of the anterior chamber angle. Within other embodiments, the compound may also be placed in any location such that the compound is continuously released into the aqueous humor. Within another aspect of the present invention, methods are provided for treating proliferative diabetic retinopathy, comprising the step of administering to a patient a therapeutically effective amount of a polynucleotide, polypeptide, antagonist and/or agonist to the eyes, such that the formation of blood vessels is inhibited.

Within particularly preferred embodiments of the invention, proliferative diabetic

retinopathy may be treated by injection into the aqueous humor or the vitreous, in order to increase the local concentration of the polynucleotide, polypeptide, antagonist and/or agonist in the retina. Preferably, this treatment should be initiated prior to the acquisition of severe disease requiring photocoagulation.

5           Within another aspect of the present invention, methods are provided for treating retrolental fibroplasia, comprising the step of administering to a patient a therapeutically effective amount of a polynucleotide, polypeptide, antagonist and/or agonist to the eye, such that the formation of blood vessels is inhibited. The compound may be administered topically, via intravitreal injection and/or via intraocular implants.

10           Additionally, disorders which can be treated with the polynucleotides, polypeptides, agonists and/or agonists include, but are not limited to, hemangioma, arthritis, psoriasis, angiofibroma, atherosclerotic plaques, delayed wound healing, granulations, hemophilic joints, hypertrophic scars, nonunion fractures, Osler-Weber syndrome, pyogenic granuloma, scleroderma, trachoma, and vascular adhesions.

15           Moreover, disorders and/or states, which can be treated with the the polynucleotides, polypeptides, agonists and/or agonists include, but are not limited to, solid tumors, blood born tumors such as leukemias, tumor metastasis, Kaposi's sarcoma, benign tumors, for example hemangiomas, acoustic neuromas, neurofibromas, trachomas, and pyogenic granulomas, rheumatoid arthritis, psoriasis, ocular angiogenic diseases, for  
20           example, diabetic retinopathy, retinopathy of prematurity, macular degeneration, corneal graft rejection, neovascular glaucoma, retrolental fibroplasia, rubeosis, retinoblastoma, and uveitis, delayed wound healing, endometriosis, vasculogenesis, granulations, hypertrophic scars (keloids), nonunion fractures, scleroderma, trachoma, vascular adhesions, myocardial angiogenesis, coronary collaterals, cerebral collaterals, arteriovenous malformations,  
25           ischemic limb angiogenesis, Osler-Webber Syndrome, plaque neovascularization, telangiectasia, hemophilic joints, angiofibroma fibromuscular dysplasia, wound granulation, Crohn's disease, atherosclerosis, birth control agent by preventing vascularization required for embryo implantation controlling menstruation, diseases that have angiogenesis as a pathologic consequence such as cat scratch disease (*Rochela minalia quintosa*), ulcers  
30           (*Helicobacter pylori*), Bartonellosis and bacillary angiomatosis.

In one aspect of the birth control method, an amount of the compound sufficient to block embryo implantation is administered before or after intercourse and fertilization have

occurred, thus providing an effective method of birth control, possibly a "morning after" method. Polynucleotides, polypeptides, agonists and/or agonists may also be used in controlling menstruation or administered as either a peritoneal lavage fluid or for peritoneal implantation in the treatment of endometriosis.

5 Polynucleotides, polypeptides, agonists and/or agonists of the present invention may be incorporated into surgical sutures in order to prevent stitch granulomas.

Polynucleotides, polypeptides, agonists and/or agonists may be utilized in a wide variety of surgical procedures. For example, within one aspect of the present invention a compositions (in the form of, for example, a spray or film) may be utilized to coat or spray an  
10 area prior to removal of a tumor, in order to isolate normal surrounding tissues from malignant tissue, and/or to prevent the spread of disease to surrounding tissues. Within other aspects of the present invention, compositions (e.g., in the form of a spray) may be delivered via endoscopic procedures in order to coat tumors, or inhibit angiogenesis in a desired locale. Within yet other aspects of the present invention, surgical meshes which have been coated  
15 with anti- angiogenic compositions of the present invention may be utilized in any procedure wherein a surgical mesh might be utilized. For example, within one embodiment of the invention a surgical mesh laden with an anti-angiogenic composition may be utilized during abdominal cancer resection surgery (e.g., subsequent to colon resection) in order to provide support to the structure, and to release an amount of the anti-angiogenic factor.

20 Within further aspects of the present invention, methods are provided for treating tumor excision sites, comprising administering a polynucleotide, polypeptide, agonist and/or agonist to the resection margins of a tumor subsequent to excision, such that the local recurrence of cancer and the formation of new blood vessels at the site is inhibited. Within one embodiment of the invention, the anti-angiogenic compound is administered directly to  
25 the tumor excision site (e.g., applied by swabbing, brushing or otherwise coating the resection margins of the tumor with the anti-angiogenic compound). Alternatively, the anti-angiogenic compounds may be incorporated into known surgical pastes prior to administration. Within particularly preferred embodiments of the invention, the anti-angiogenic compounds are applied after hepatic resections for malignancy, and after neurosurgical operations.

30 Within one aspect of the present invention, polynucleotides, polypeptides, agonists and/or agonists may be administered to the resection margin of a wide variety of tumors, including for example, breast, colon, brain and hepatic tumors. For example, within one



embodiment of the invention, anti-angiogenic compounds may be administered to the site of a neurological tumor subsequent to excision, such that the formation of new blood vessels at the site are inhibited.

The polynucleotides, polypeptides, agonists and/or agonists of the present invention  
5 may also be administered along with other anti-angiogenic factors. Representative examples of other anti-angiogenic factors include: Anti-Invasive Factor, retinoic acid and derivatives thereof, paclitaxel, Suramin, Tissue Inhibitor of Metalloproteinase-1, Tissue Inhibitor of Metalloproteinase-2, Plasminogen Activator Inhibitor-1, Plasminogen Activator Inhibitor-2, and various forms of the lighter "d group" transition metals.

10 Lighter "d group" transition metals include, for example, vanadium, molybdenum, tungsten, titanium, niobium, and tantalum species. Such transition metal species may form transition metal complexes. Suitable complexes of the above-mentioned transition metal species include oxo transition metal complexes.

Representative examples of vanadium complexes include oxo vanadium complexes  
15 such as vanadate and vanadyl complexes. Suitable vanadate complexes include metavanadate and orthovanadate complexes such as, for example, ammonium metavanadate, sodium metavanadate, and sodium orthovanadate. Suitable vanadyl complexes include, for example, vanadyl acetylacetonate and vanadyl sulfate including vanadyl sulfate hydrates such as vanadyl sulfate mono- and trihydrates.

20 Representative examples of tungsten and molybdenum complexes also include oxo complexes. Suitable oxo tungsten complexes include tungstate and tungsten oxide complexes. Suitable tungstate complexes include ammonium tungstate, calcium tungstate, sodium tungstate dihydrate, and tungstic acid. Suitable tungsten oxides include tungsten (IV) oxide and tungsten (VI) oxide. Suitable oxo molybdenum complexes include molybdate,  
25 molybdenum oxide, and molybdenyl complexes. Suitable molybdate complexes include ammonium molybdate and its hydrates, sodium molybdate and its hydrates, and potassium molybdate and its hydrates. Suitable molybdenum oxides include molybdenum (VI) oxide, molybdenum (VI) oxide, and molybdic acid. Suitable molybdenyl complexes include, for example, molybdenyl acetylacetonate. Other suitable tungsten and molybdenum complexes  
30 include hydroxo derivatives derived from, for example, glycerol, tartaric acid, and sugars.

A wide variety of other anti-angiogenic factors may also be utilized within the context of the present invention. Representative examples include platelet factor 4; protamine

sulphate; sulphated chitin derivatives (prepared from queen crab shells), (Murata et al., Cancer Res. 51:22-26, 1991); Sulphated Polysaccharide Peptidoglycan Complex (SP- PG) (the function of this compound may be enhanced by the presence of steroids such as estrogen, and tamoxifen citrate); Staurosporine; modulators of matrix metabolism, including for example, proline analogs, cishydroxyproline, d,L-3,4-dehydroproline, Thiaproline, alpha,alpha-dipyridyl, aminopropionitrile fumarate; 4-propyl-5-(4-pyridinyl)-2(3H)-oxazolone; Methotrexate; Mitoxantrone; Heparin; Interferons; 2 Macroglobulin-serum; ChIMP-3 (Pavloff et al., J. Bio. Chem. 267:17321-17326, 1992); Chymostatin (Tomkinson et al., Biochem J. 286:475-480, 1992); Cyclodextrin Tetradecasulfate; Eponemycin; Camptothecin; Fumagillin (Ingber et al., Nature 348:555-557, 1990); Gold Sodium Thiomalate ("GST"; Matsubara and Ziff, J. Clin. Invest. 79:1440-1446, 1987); anticollagenase-serum; alpha2-antiplasmin (Holmes et al., J. Biol. Chem. 262(4):1659-1664, 1987); Bisantrone (National Cancer Institute); Lobenzarit disodium (N-(2)-carboxyphenyl-4-chloroanthronilic acid disodium or "CCA"; Takeuchi et al., Agents Actions 36:312-316, 1992); Thalidomide; Angostatic steroid; AGM-1470; carboxyaminolimidazole; and metalloproteinase inhibitors such as BB94.

#### **Diseases at the Cellular Level**

Diseases associated with increased cell survival or the inhibition of apoptosis that could be treated or detected by TGF alpha HIII polynucleotides or polypeptides, as well as antagonists or agonists of TGF alpha HIII, include cancers (such as follicular lymphomas, carcinomas with p53 mutations, and hormone-dependent tumors, including, but not limited to colon cancer, cardiac tumors, pancreatic cancer, melanoma, retinoblastoma, glioblastoma, lung cancer, intestinal cancer, testicular cancer, stomach cancer, neuroblastoma, myxoma, myoma, lymphoma, endothelioma, osteoblastoma, osteoclastoma, osteosarcoma, chondrosarcoma, adenoma, breast cancer, prostate cancer, Kaposi's sarcoma and ovarian cancer); autoimmune disorders (such as, multiple sclerosis, Sjogren's syndrome, Hashimoto's thyroiditis, biliary cirrhosis, Behcet's disease, Crohn's disease, polymyositis, systemic lupus erythematosus and immune-related glomerulonephritis and rheumatoid arthritis) and viral infections (such as herpes viruses, pox viruses and adenoviruses), inflammation, graft v. host disease, acute graft rejection, and chronic graft rejection. In preferred embodiments, TGF

Additional diseases or conditions associated with increased cell survival that could be treated or detected by TGF alpha HIII polynucleotides or polypeptides, or agonists or antagonists of TGF alpha HIII, include, but are not limited to, progression, and/or metastases

Diseases associated with increased apoptosis that could be treated or detected by TGF alpha HIII polynucleotides or polypeptides, as well as agonists or antagonists of TGF alpha HIII, include AIDS; neurodegenerative disorders (such as Alzheimer's disease, Parkinson's disease, Amyotrophic lateral sclerosis, Retinitis pigmentosa, Cerebellar degeneration and brain tumor or prior associated disease); autoimmune disorders (such as, multiple sclerosis, Sjogren's syndrome, Hashimoto's thyroiditis, biliary cirrhosis, Behcet's disease, Crohn's disease, polymyositis, systemic lupus erythematosus and immune-related glomerulonephritis and rheumatoid arthritis) myelodysplastic syndromes (such as aplastic anemia), graft v. host disease, ischemic injury (such as that caused by myocardial infarction, stroke and reperfusion

Diseases associated with increased apoptosis that could be treated or detected by TGF alpha HIII polynucleotides or polypeptides, as well as agonists or antagonists of TGF alpha HIII, include AIDS; neurodegenerative disorders (such as Alzheimer's disease, Parkinson's disease, Amyotrophic lateral sclerosis, Retinitis pigmentosa, Cerebellar degeneration and brain tumor or prior associated disease); autoimmune disorders (such as, multiple sclerosis, Sjogren's syndrome, Hashimoto's thyroiditis, biliary cirrhosis, Behcet's disease, Crohn's disease, polymyositis, systemic lupus erythematosus and immune-related glomerulonephritis and rheumatoid arthritis) myelodysplastic syndromes (such as aplastic anemia), graft v. host disease, ischemic injury (such as that caused by myocardial infarction, stroke and reperfusion

injury), liver injury (e.g., hepatitis related liver injury, ischemia/reperfusion injury, cholestosis (bile duct injury) and liver cancer); toxin-induced liver disease (such as that caused by alcohol), septic shock, cachexia and anorexia.

## 5      **Wound Healing and Epithelial Cell Proliferation**

In accordance with yet a further aspect of the present invention, there is provided a process for utilizing TGF alpha HIII polynucleotides or polypeptides, as well as agonists or antagonists of TGF alpha HIII, for therapeutic purposes, for example, to stimulate epithelial cell proliferation and basal keratinocytes for the purpose of wound healing, and to stimulate  
10 hair follicle production and healing of dermal wounds. TGF alpha HIII polynucleotides or polypeptides, as well as agonists or antagonists of TGF alpha HIII, may be clinically useful in stimulating wound healing including surgical wounds, excisional wounds, deep wounds involving damage of the dermis and epidermis, eye tissue wounds, dental tissue wounds, oral cavity wounds, diabetic ulcers, dermal ulcers, cubitus ulcers, arterial ulcers, venous stasis  
15 ulcers, burns resulting from heat exposure or chemicals, and other abnormal wound healing conditions such as uremia, malnutrition, vitamin deficiencies and complications associated with systemic treatment with steroids, radiation therapy and antineoplastic drugs and antimetabolites. TGF alpha HIII polynucleotides or polypeptides, as well as agonists or antagonists of TGF alpha HIII, could be used to promote dermal reestablishment subsequent  
20 to dermal loss

TGF alpha HIII polynucleotides or polypeptides, as well as agonists or antagonists of TGF alpha HIII, could be used to increase the adherence of skin grafts to a wound bed and to stimulate re-epithelialization from the wound bed. The following are types of grafts that TGF alpha HIII polynucleotides or polypeptides, agonists or antagonists of TGF alpha HIII, could  
25 be used to increase adherence to a wound bed: autografts, artificial skin, allografts, autodermic graft, autoepdermic grafts, avacular grafts, Blair-Brown grafts, bone graft, brephoplastic grafts, cutis graft, delayed graft, dermic graft, epidermic graft, fascia graft, full thickness graft, heterologous graft, xenograft, homologous graft, hyperplastic graft, lamellar graft, mesh graft, mucosal graft, Ollier-Thiersch graft, omenpal graft, patch graft, pedicle  
30 graft, penetrating graft, split skin graft, thick split graft. TGF alpha HIII polynucleotides or polypeptides, as well as agonists or antagonists of TGF alpha HIII, can be used to promote skin strength and to improve the appearance of aged skin.

It is believed that TGF alpha HIII polynucleotides or polypeptides, as well as agonists or antagonists of TGF alpha HIII, will also produce changes in hepatocyte proliferation, and epithelial cell proliferation in the lung, breast, pancreas, stomach, small intestine, and large intestine. TGF alpha HIII polynucleotides or polypeptides, as well as agonists or antagonists of TGF alpha HIII, could promote proliferation of epithelial cells such as sebocytes, hair follicles, hepatocytes, type II pneumocytes, mucin-producing goblet cells, and other epithelial cells and their progenitors contained within the skin, lung, liver, and gastrointestinal tract. TGF alpha HIII polynucleotides or polypeptides, agonists or antagonists of TGF alpha HIII, may promote proliferation of endothelial cells, keratinocytes, and basal keratinocytes.

TGF alpha HIII polynucleotides or polypeptides, as well as agonists or antagonists of TGF alpha HIII, could also be used to reduce the side effects of gut toxicity that result from radiation, chemotherapy treatments or viral infections. TGF alpha HIII polynucleotides or polypeptides, as well as agonists or antagonists of TGF alpha HIII, may have a cytoprotective effect on the small intestine mucosa. TGF alpha HIII polynucleotides or polypeptides, as well as agonists or antagonists of TGF alpha HIII, may also stimulate healing of mucositis (mouth ulcers) that result from chemotherapy and viral infections.

TGF alpha HIII polynucleotides or polypeptides, as well as agonists or antagonists of TGF alpha HIII, could further be used in full regeneration of skin in full and partial thickness skin defects, including burns, (i.e., repopulation of hair follicles, sweat glands, and sebaceous glands), treatment of other skin defects such as psoriasis. TGF alpha HIII polynucleotides or polypeptides, as well as agonists or antagonists of TGF alpha HIII, could be used to treat epidermolysis bullosa, a defect in adherence of the epidermis to the underlying dermis which results in frequent, open and painful blisters by accelerating reepithelialization of these lesions. TGF alpha HIII polynucleotides or polypeptides, as well as agonists or antagonists of TGF alpha HIII, could also be used to treat gastric and duodenal ulcers and help heal by scar formation of the mucosal lining and regeneration of glandular mucosa and duodenal mucosal lining more rapidly. Inflammatory bowel diseases, such as Crohn's disease and ulcerative colitis, are diseases which result in destruction of the mucosal surface of the small or large intestine, respectively. Thus, TGF alpha HIII polynucleotides or polypeptides, as well as agonists or antagonists of TGF alpha HIII, could be used to promote the resurfacing of the mucosal surface to aid more rapid healing and to prevent progression of inflammatory bowel disease. Treatment with TGF alpha HIII polynucleotides or polypeptides, agonists or

antagonists of TGF alpha HIII, is expected to have a significant effect on the production of mucus throughout the gastrointestinal tract and could be used to protect the intestinal mucosa from injurious substances that are ingested or following surgery. TGF alpha HIII polynucleotides or polypeptides, as well as agonists or antagonists of TGF alpha HIII, could be used to treat diseases associate with the under expression of TGF alpha HIII.

Moreover, TGF alpha HIII polynucleotides or polypeptides, as well as agonists or antagonists of TGF alpha HIII, could be used to prevent and heal damage to the lungs due to various pathological states. A growth factor such as TGF alpha HIII polynucleotides or polypeptides, as well as agonists or antagonists of TGF alpha HIII, which could stimulate proliferation and differentiation and promote the repair of alveoli and brochiolar epithelium to prevent or treat acute or chronic lung damage. For example, emphysema, which results in the progressive loss of aveoli, and inhalation injuries, i.e., resulting from smoke inhalation and burns, that cause necrosis of the bronchiolar epithelium and alveoli could be effectively treated using TGF alpha HIII polynucleotides or polypeptides, agonists or antagonists of TGF alpha HIII. Also, TGF alpha HIII polynucleotides or polypeptides, as well as agonists or antagonists of TGF alpha HIII, could be used to stimulate the proliferation of and differentiation of type II pneumocytes, which may help treat or prevent disease such as hyaline membrane diseases, such as infant respiratory distress syndrome and bronchopulmonary displasia, in premature infants.

TGF alpha HIII polynucleotides or polypeptides, as well as agonists or antagonists of TGF alpha HIII, could stimulate the proliferation and differentiation of hepatocytes and, thus, could be used to alleviate or treat liver diseases and pathologies such as fulminant liver failure caused by cirrhosis, liver damage caused by viral hepatitis and toxic substances (i.e., acetaminophen, carbon tetraholoride and other hepatotoxins known in the art).

In addition, TGF alpha HIII polynucleotides or polypeptides, as well as agonists or antagonists of TGF alpha HIII, could be used treat or prevent the onset of diabetes mellitus. In patients with newly diagnosed Types I and II diabetes, where some islet cell function remains, TGF alpha HIII polynucleotides or polypeptides, as well as agonists or antagonists of TGF alpha HIII, could be used to maintain the islet function so as to alleviate, delay or prevent permanent manifestation of the disease. Also, TGF alpha HIII polynucleotides or polypeptides, as well as agonists or antagonists of TGF alpha HIII, could be used as an auxiliary in islet cell transplantation to improve or promote islet cell function.

### Neurological Diseases

Nervous system disorders, which can be treated with the TGF alpha HIII compositions of the invention (e.g., TGF alpha HIII polypeptides, polynucleotides, and/or agonists or antagonists), include, but are not limited to, nervous system injuries, and diseases or disorders which result in either a disconnection of axons, a diminution or degeneration of neurons, or demyelination. Nervous system lesions which may be treated in a patient (including human and non-human mammalian patients) according to the invention, include but are not limited to, the following lesions of either the central (including spinal cord, brain) or peripheral nervous systems: (1) ischemic lesions, in which a lack of oxygen in a portion of the nervous system results in neuronal injury or death, including cerebral infarction or ischemia, or spinal cord infarction or ischemia; (2) traumatic lesions, including lesions caused by physical injury or associated with surgery, for example, lesions which sever a portion of the nervous system, or compression injuries; (3) malignant lesions, in which a portion of the nervous system is destroyed or injured by malignant tissue which is either a nervous system associated malignancy or a malignancy derived from non-nervous system tissue; (4) infectious lesions, in which a portion of the nervous system is destroyed or injured as a result of infection, for example, by an abscess or associated with infection by human immunodeficiency virus, herpes zoster, or herpes simplex virus or with Lyme disease, tuberculosis, syphilis; (5) degenerative lesions, in which a portion of the nervous system is destroyed or injured as a result of a degenerative process including but not limited to degeneration associated with Parkinson's disease, Alzheimer's disease, Huntington's chorea, or amyotrophic lateral sclerosis (ALS); (6) lesions associated with nutritional diseases or disorders, in which a portion of the nervous system is destroyed or injured by a nutritional disorder or disorder of metabolism including but not limited to, vitamin B12 deficiency, folic acid deficiency, Wernicke disease, tobacco-alcohol amblyopia, Marchiafava-Bignami disease (primary degeneration of the corpus callosum), and alcoholic cerebellar degeneration; (7) neurological lesions associated with systemic diseases including, but not limited to, diabetes (diabetic neuropathy, Bell's palsy), systemic lupus erythematosus, carcinoma, or sarcoidosis; (8) lesions caused by toxic substances including alcohol, lead, or particular neurotoxins; and (9) demyelinated lesions in which a portion of the nervous system is destroyed or injured by

a demyelinating disease including, but not limited to, multiple sclerosis, human immunodeficiency virus-associated myelopathy, transverse myelopathy or various etiologies, progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy, and central pontine myelinolysis.

In a preferred embodiment, the TGF alpha HIII polypeptides, polynucleotides, or agonists or antagonists of the invention are used to protect neural cells from the damaging effects of cerebral hypoxia. According to this embodiment, the TGF alpha HIII compositions of the invention are used to treat or prevent neural cell injury associated with cerebral hypoxia. In one aspect of this embodiment, the TGF alpha HIII polypeptides, polynucleotides, or agonists or antagonists of the invention are used to treat or prevent neural cell injury associated with cerebral ischemia. In another aspect of this embodiment, the TGF alpha HIII polypeptides, polynucleotides, or agonists or antagonists of the invention are used to treat or prevent neural cell injury associated with cerebral infarction. In another aspect of this embodiment, the TGF alpha HIII polypeptides, polynucleotides, or agonists or antagonists of the invention are used to treat or prevent neural cell injury associated with a stroke. In a further aspect of this embodiment, the TGF alpha HIII polypeptides, polynucleotides, or agonists or antagonists of the invention are used to treat or prevent neural cell injury associated with a heart attack.

The compositions of the invention which are useful for treating or preventing a nervous system disorder may be selected by testing for biological activity in promoting the survival or differentiation of neurons. For example, and not by way of limitation, TGF alpha HIII compositions of the invention which elicit any of the following effects may be useful according to the invention: (1) increased survival time of neurons in culture; (2) increased sprouting of neurons in culture or *in vivo*; (3) increased production of a neuron-associated molecule in culture or *in vivo*, *e.g.*, choline acetyltransferase or acetylcholinesterase with respect to motor neurons; or (4) decreased symptoms of neuron dysfunction *in vivo*. Such effects may be measured by any method known in the art. In preferred, non-limiting embodiments, increased survival of neurons may routinely be measured using a method set forth herein or otherwise known in the art, such as, for example, the method set forth in Arakawa et al. (J. Neurosci. 10:3507-3515 (1990)); increased sprouting of neurons may be detected by methods known in the art, such as, for example, the methods set forth in Pestronk et al. (Exp. Neurol. 70:65-82 (1980)) or Brown et al. (Ann. Rev. Neurosci. 4:17-42 (1981)); increased production of neuron-associated molecules may be measured by bioassay,



enzymatic assay, antibody binding, Northern blot assay, etc., using techniques known in the art and depending on the molecule to be measured; and motor neuron dysfunction may be measured by assessing the physical manifestation of motor neuron disorder, e.g., weakness, motor neuron conduction velocity, or functional disability.

5 In specific embodiments, motor neuron disorders that may be treated according to the invention include, but are not limited to, disorders such as infarction, infection, exposure to toxin, trauma, surgical damage, degenerative disease or malignancy that may affect motor neurons as well as other components of the nervous system, as well as disorders that selectively affect neurons such as amyotrophic lateral sclerosis, and including, but not limited to, progressive spinal muscular atrophy, progressive bulbar palsy, primary lateral sclerosis, infantile and juvenile muscular atrophy, progressive bulbar paralysis of childhood (Fazio-Londe syndrome), poliomyelitis and the post polio syndrome, and Hereditary Motorsensory Neuropathy (Charcot-Marie-Tooth Disease).

10 Additional examples of neurologic diseases which can be treated or detected with polynucleotides, polypeptides, agonists, and/or antagonists of the present invention include brain diseases, such as metabolic brain diseases which includes phenylketonuria such as maternal phenylketonuria, pyruvate carboxylase deficiency, pyruvate dehydrogenase complex deficiency, Wernicke's Encephalopathy, brain edema, brain neoplasms such as cerebellar neoplasms which include infratentorial neoplasms, cerebral ventricle neoplasms such as choroid plexus neoplasms, hypothalamic neoplasms, supratentorial neoplasms, canavan disease, cerebellar diseases such as cerebellar ataxia which include spinocerebellar degeneration such as ataxia telangiectasia, cerebellar dyssynergia, Friederich's Ataxia, Machado-Joseph Disease, olivopontocerebellar atrophy, cerebellar neoplasms such as infratentorial neoplasms, diffuse cerebral sclerosis such as encephalitis periaxialis, globoid cell leukodystrophy, metachromatic leukodystrophy and subacute sclerosing panencephalitis, cerebrovascular disorders (such as carotid artery diseases which include carotid artery thrombosis, carotid stenosis and Moyamoya Disease, cerebral amyloid angiopathy, cerebral aneurysm, cerebral anoxia, cerebral arteriosclerosis, cerebral arteriovenous malformations, cerebral artery diseases, cerebral embolism and thrombosis such as carotid artery thrombosis, sinus thrombosis and Wallenberg's Syndrome, cerebral hemorrhage such as epidural hematoma, subdural hematoma and subarachnoid hemorrhage, cerebral infarction, cerebral ischemia such as transient cerebral ischemia, Subclavian Steal Syndrome and vertebrobasilar

insufficiency, vascular dementia such as multi-infarct dementia, periventricular leukomalacia, vascular headache such as cluster headache, migraine, dementia such as AIDS Dementia Complex, presenile dementia such as Alzheimer's Disease and Creutzfeldt-Jakob Syndrome, senile dementia such as Alzheimer's Disease and progressive supranuclear palsy, vascular

5 dementia such as multi-infarct dementia, encephalitis which include encephalitis periaxialis, viral encephalitis such as epidemic encephalitis, Japanese Encephalitis, St. Louis Encephalitis, tick-borne encephalitis and West Nile Fever, acute disseminated encephalomyelitis, meningoencephalitis such as uveomeningoencephalitic syndrome, Postencephalitic Parkinson Disease and subacute sclerosing panencephalitis,

10 encephalomalacia such as periventricular leukomalacia, epilepsy such as generalized epilepsy which includes infantile spasms, absence epilepsy, myoclonic epilepsy which includes MERRF Syndrome, tonic-clonic epilepsy, partial epilepsy such as complex partial epilepsy, frontal lobe epilepsy and temporal lobe epilepsy, post-traumatic epilepsy, status epilepticus such as Epilepsia Partialis Continua, Hallervorden-Spatz Syndrome, hydrocephalus such as

15 Dandy-Walker Syndrome and normal pressure hydrocephalus, hypothalamic diseases such as hypothalamic neoplasms, cerebral malaria, narcolepsy which includes cataplexy, bulbar poliomyelitis, cerebri pseudotumor, Rett Syndrome, Reye's Syndrome, thalamic diseases, cerebral toxoplasmosis, intracranial tuberculoma and Zellweger Syndrome, central nervous system infections such as AIDS Dementia Complex, Brain Abscess, subdural empyema,

20 encephalomyelitis such as Equine Encephalomyelitis, Venezuelan Equine Encephalomyelitis, Necrotizing Hemorrhagic Encephalomyelitis, Visna, cerebral malaria, meningitis such as arachnoiditis, aseptic meningitis such as viral meningitis which includes lymphocytic choriomeningitis. Bacterial meningitis which includes Haemophilus Meningitis, Listeria Meningitis, Meningococcal Meningitis such as Waterhouse-Friderichsen Syndrome,

25 Pneumococcal Meningitis and meningeal tuberculosis, fungal meningitis such as Cryptococcal Meningitis, subdural effusion, meningoencephalitis such as uveomeningoencephalitic syndrome, myelitis such as transverse myelitis, neurosyphilis such as tabes dorsalis, poliomyelitis which includes bulbar poliomyelitis and postpoliomyelitis syndrome, prion diseases (such as Creutzfeldt-Jakob Syndrome, Bovine Spongiform

30 Encephalopathy, Gerstmann-Straussler Syndrome, Kuru, Scrapie) cerebral toxoplasmosis, central nervous system neoplasms such as brain neoplasms that include cerebellar neoplasms such as infratentorial neoplasms, cerebral ventricle neoplasms such as choroid plexus

neoplasms, hypothalamic neoplasms and supratentorial neoplasms, meningeal neoplasms, spinal cord neoplasms which include epidural neoplasms, demyelinating diseases such as Canavan Diseases, diffuse cerebral sclerosis which includes adrenoleukodystrophy, encephalitis periaxialis, globoid cell leukodystrophy, diffuse cerebral sclerosis such as metachromatic leukodystrophy, allergic encephalomyelitis, necrotizing hemorrhagic encephalomyelitis, progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy, multiple sclerosis, central pontine myelinolysis, transverse myelitis, neuromyelitis optica, Scrapie, Swayback, Chronic Fatigue Syndrome, Visna, High Pressure Nervous Syndrome, Meningism, spinal cord diseases such as amyotonia congenita, amyotrophic lateral sclerosis, spinal muscular atrophy such as Werdnig-Hoffmann Disease, spinal cord compression, spinal cord neoplasms such as epidural neoplasms, syringomyelia, Tabes Dorsalis, Stiff-Man Syndrome, mental retardation such as Angelman Syndrome, Cri-du-Chat Syndrome, De Lange's Syndrome, Down Syndrome, Gangliosidoses such as gangliosidoses G(M1), Sandhoff Disease, Tay-Sachs Disease, Hartnup Disease, homocystinuria, Laurence-Moon- Biedl Syndrome, Lesch-Nyhan Syndrome, Maple Syrup Urine Disease, mucopolysaccharidosis such as fucosidosis, neuronal ceroid-lipofuscinosis, oculocerebrorenal syndrome, phenylketonuria such as maternal phenylketonuria, Prader-Willi Syndrome, Rett Syndrome, Rubinstein-Taybi Syndrome, Tuberous Sclerosis, WAGR Syndrome, nervous system abnormalities such as holoprosencephaly, neural tube defects such as anencephaly which includes hydranencephaly, Arnold-Chiari Deformity, encephalocele, meningocele, meningomyelocele, spinal dysraphism such as spina bifida cystica and spina bifida occulta, hereditary motor and sensory neuropathies which include Charcot-Marie Disease, Hereditary optic atrophy, Refsum's Disease, hereditary spastic paraplegia, Werdnig-Hoffmann Disease, Hereditary Sensory and Autonomic Neuropathies such as Congenital Analgesia and Familial Dysautonomia, Neurologic manifestations (such as agnosia that include Gerstmann's Syndrome, Amnesia such as retrograde amnesia, apraxia, neurogenic bladder, cataplexy, communicative disorders such as hearing disorders that includes deafness, partial hearing loss, loudness recruitment and tinnitus, language disorders such as aphasia which include agraphia, anomia, Broca's aphasia, and Wernicke's Aphasia, Dyslexia such as Acquired Dyslexia, language development disorders, speech disorders such as aphasia which includes anomia, Broca's aphasia and Wernicke's Aphasia, articulation disorders, communicative disorders such as speech disorders which include dysarthria, echolalia, mutism and stuttering, voice disorders

such as aphonia and hoarseness, decerebrate state, delirium, fasciculation, hallucinations, meningism, movement disorders such as angelman syndrome, ataxia, athetosis, chorea, dystonia, hypokinesia, muscle hypotonia, myoclonus, tic, torticollis and tremor, muscle hypertonia such as muscle rigidity such as stiff-man syndrome, muscle spasticity, paralysis such as facial paralysis which includes Herpes Zoster Oticus, Gastroparesis, Hemiplegia, ophthalmoplegia such as diplopia, Duane's Syndrome, Horner's Syndrome, Chronic progressive external ophthalmoplegia such as Kearns Syndrome, Bulbar Paralysis, Tropical Spastic Paraparesis, Paraplegia such as Brown-Sequard Syndrome, quadriplegia, respiratory paralysis and vocal cord paralysis, paresis, phantom limb, taste disorders such as ageusia and dysgeusia, vision disorders such as amblyopia, blindness, color vision defects, diplopia, hemianopsia, scotoma and subnormal vision, sleep disorders such as hypersomnia which includes Kleine-Levin Syndrome, insomnia, and somnambulism, spasm such as trismus, unconsciousness such as coma, persistent vegetative state and syncope and vertigo, neuromuscular diseases such as amyotonia congenita, amyotrophic lateral sclerosis, Lambert-Eaton Myasthenic Syndrome, motor neuron disease, muscular atrophy such as spinal muscular atrophy, Charcot-Marie Disease and Werdnig-Hoffmann Disease, Postpoliomyelitis Syndrome, Muscular Dystrophy, Myasthenia Gravis, Myotonia Atrophica, Myotonia Confenita, Nemaline Myopathy, Familial Periodic Paralysis, Multiplex Paramyoclonus, Tropical Spastic Paraparesis and Stiff-Man Syndrome, peripheral nervous system diseases such as acrodynia, amyloid neuropathies, autonomic nervous system diseases such as Adie's Syndrome, Barre-Lieou Syndrome, Familial Dysautonomia, Horner's Syndrome, Reflex Sympathetic Dystrophy and Shy-Drager Syndrome, Cranial Nerve Diseases such as Acoustic Nerve Diseases such as Acoustic Neuroma which includes Neurofibromatosis 2, Facial Nerve Diseases such as Facial Neuralgia, Melkersson-Rosenthal Syndrome, ocular motility disorders which includes amblyopia, nystagmus, oculomotor nerve paralysis, ophthalmoplegia such as Duane's Syndrome, Horner's Syndrome, Chronic Progressive External Ophthalmoplegia which includes Kearns Syndrome, Strabismus such as Esotropia and Exotropia, Oculomotor Nerve Paralysis, Optic Nerve Diseases such as Optic Atrophy which includes Hereditary Optic Atrophy, Optic Disk Drusen, Optic Neuritis such as Neuromyelitis Optica, Papilledema, Trigeminal Neuralgia, Vocal Cord Paralysis, Demyelinating Diseases such as Neuromyelitis Optica and Swayback, Diabetic neuropathies such as diabetic foot, nerve compression syndromes such as carpal tunnel syndrome, tarsal

tunnel syndrome, thoracic outlet syndrome such as cervical rib syndrome, ulnar nerve compression syndrome, neuralgia such as causalgia, cervico-brachial neuralgia, facial neuralgia and trigeminal neuralgia, neuritis such as experimental allergic neuritis, optic neuritis, polyneuritis, polyradiculoneuritis and radiculities such as polyradiculitis, hereditary motor and sensory neuropathies such as Charcot-Marie Disease, Hereditary Optic Atrophy, Refsum's Disease, Hereditary Spastic Paraplegia and Werdnig-Hoffmann Disease, Hereditary Sensory and Autonomic Neuropathies which include Congenital Analgesia and Familial Dysautonomia, POEMS Syndrome, Sciatica, Gustatory Sweating and Tetany).

### **Infectious Disease**

TGF alpha HIII polynucleotides or polypeptides, or agonists or antagonists of TGF alpha HIII, can be used to treat or detect infectious agents. For example, by increasing the immune response, particularly increasing the proliferation and differentiation of B and/or T cells, infectious diseases may be treated. The immune response may be increased by either enhancing an existing immune response, or by initiating a new immune response. Alternatively, TGF alpha HIII polynucleotides or polypeptides, or agonists or antagonists of TGF alpha HIII, may also directly inhibit the infectious agent, without necessarily eliciting an immune response.

Viruses are one example of an infectious agent that can cause disease or symptoms that can be treated or detected by a polynucleotide or polypeptide and/or agonist or antagonist of the present invention. Examples of viruses, include, but are not limited to Examples of viruses, include, but are not limited to the following DNA and RNA viruses and viral families: Arbovirus, Adenoviridae, Arenaviridae, Arterivirus, Birnaviridae, Bunyaviridae, Caliciviridae, Circoviridae, Coronaviridae, Dengue, EBV, HIV, Flaviviridae, Hepadnaviridae (Hepatitis), Herpesviridae (such as, Cytomegalovirus, Herpes Simplex, Herpes Zoster), Mononegavirus (e.g., Paramyxoviridae, Morbillivirus, Rhabdoviridae), Orthomyxoviridae (e.g., Influenza A, Influenza B, and parainfluenza), Papiloma virus, Papovaviridae, Parvoviridae, Picornaviridae, Poxviridae (such as Smallpox or Vaccinia), Reoviridae (e.g., Rotavirus), Retroviridae (HTLV-I, HTLV-II, Lentivirus), and Togaviridae (e.g., Rubivirus). Viruses falling within these families can cause a variety of diseases or symptoms, including, but not limited to: arthritis, bronchiolitis, respiratory syncytial virus, encephalitis, eye infections (e.g., conjunctivitis, keratitis), chronic fatigue syndrome, hepatitis (A, B, C, E,

Chronic Active, Delta), Japanese B encephalitis, Junin, Chikungunya, Rift Valley fever, yellow fever, meningitis, opportunistic infections (e.g., AIDS), pneumonia, Burkitt's Lymphoma, chickenpox, hemorrhagic fever, Measles, Mumps, Parainfluenza, Rabies, the common cold, Polio, leukemia, Rubella, sexually transmitted diseases, skin diseases (e.g., Kaposi's, warts), and viremia. polynucleotides or polypeptides, or agonists or antagonists of the invention, can be used to treat or detect any of these symptoms or diseases. In specific embodiments, polynucleotides, polypeptides, or agonists or antagonists of the invention are used to treat: meningitis, Dengue, EBV, and/or hepatitis (e.g., hepatitis B). In an additional specific embodiment polynucleotides, polypeptides, or agonists or antagonists of the invention are used to treat patients nonresponsive to one or more other commercially available hepatitis vaccines. In a further specific embodiment polynucleotides, polypeptides, or agonists or antagonists of the invention are used to treat AIDS.

Similarly, bacterial or fungal agents that can cause disease or symptoms and that can be treated or detected by a polynucleotide or polypeptide and/or agonist or antagonist of the present invention include, but not limited to, include, but not limited to, the following Gram-Negative and Gram-positive bacteria and bacterial families and fungi: Actinomycetales (e.g., Corynebacterium, Mycobacterium, Norcardia), Cryptococcus neoformans, Aspergillosis, Bacillaceae (e.g., Anthrax, Clostridium), Bacteroidaceae, Blastomycosis, Bordetella, Borrelia (e.g., Borrelia burgdorferi), Brucellosis, Candidiasis, Campylobacter, Coccidioidomycosis, Cryptococcosis, Dermatocycoses, E. coli (e.g., Enterotoxigenic E. coli and Enterohemorrhagic E. coli), Enterobacteriaceae (Klebsiella, Salmonella (e.g., Salmonella typhi, and Salmonella paratyphi), Serratia, Yersinia), Erysipelothrix, Helicobacter, Legionellosis, Leptospirosis, Listeria, Mycoplasmatales, Mycobacterium leprae, Vibrio cholerae, Neisseriaceae (e.g., Acinetobacter, Gonorrhea, Meningococcal), Meisseria meningitidis, Pasteurellacea Infections (e.g., Actinobacillus, Heamophilus (e.g., Heamophilus influenza type B), Pasteurella), Pseudomonas, Rickettsiaceae, Chlamydiaceae, Syphilis, Shigella spp., Staphylococcal, Meningiococcal, Pneumococcal and Streptococcal (e.g., Streptococcus pneumoniae and Group B Streptococcus). These bacterial or fungal families can cause the following diseases or symptoms, including, but not limited to: bacteremia, endocarditis, eye infections (conjunctivitis, tuberculosis, uveitis), gingivitis, opportunistic infections (e.g., AIDS related infections), paronychia, prosthesis-related infections, Reiter's Disease, respiratory tract infections, such as Whooping Cough or Empyema, sepsis, Lyme

Disease, Cat-Scratch Disease, Dysentery, Paratyphoid Fever, food poisoning, Typhoid, pneumonia, Gonorrhea, meningitis (e.g., meningitis types A and B), Chlamydia, Syphilis, Diphtheria, Leprosy, Paratuberculosis, Tuberculosis, Lupus, Botulism, gangrene, tetanus, impetigo, Rheumatic Fever, Scarlet Fever, sexually transmitted diseases, skin diseases (e.g., cellulitis, dermatocycoses), toxemia, urinary tract infections, wound infections. Polynucleotides or polypeptides, agonists or antagonists of the invention, can be used to treat or detect any of these symptoms or diseases. In specific embodiments, Polynucleotides, polypeptides, agonists or antagonists of the invention are used to treat: tetanus, Diphtheria, botulism, and/or meningitis type B.

Moreover, parasitic agents causing disease or symptoms that can be treated or detected by a polynucleotide or polypeptide and/or agonist or antagonist of the present invention include, but not limited to, the following families or class: Amebiasis, Babesiosis, Coccidiosis, Cryptosporidiosis, Dientamoebiasis, Dourine, Ectoparasitic, Giardiasis, Helminthiasis, Leishmaniasis, Theileriasis, Toxoplasmosis, Trypanosomiasis, and Trichomonas and Sporozoans (e.g., Plasmodium virax, Plasmodium falciparum, Plasmodium malariae and Plasmodium ovale). These parasites can cause a variety of diseases or symptoms, including, but not limited to: Scabies, Trombiculiasis, eye infections, intestinal disease (e.g., dysentery, giardiasis), liver disease, lung disease, opportunistic infections (e.g., AIDS related), malaria, pregnancy complications, and toxoplasmosis. polynucleotides or polypeptides, or agonists or antagonists of the invention, can be used to treat or detect any of these symptoms or diseases. In specific embodiments, polynucleotides, polypeptides, or agonists or antagonists of the invention are used to treat malaria.

Preferably, treatment using a polypeptide or polynucleotide and/or agonist or antagonist of the present invention could either be by administering an effective amount of a polypeptide to the patient, or by removing cells from the patient, supplying the cells with a polynucleotide of the present invention, and returning the engineered cells to the patient (ex vivo therapy). Moreover, the polypeptide or polynucleotide of the present invention can be used as an antigen in a vaccine to raise an immune response against infectious disease.

### **Regeneration**

TGF alpha HIII polynucleotides or polypeptides, or agonists or antagonists of TGF alpha HIII, can be used to differentiate, proliferate, and attract cells, leading to the

regeneration of tissues. (See, Science 276:59-87 (1997).) The regeneration of tissues could be used to repair, replace, or protect tissue damaged by congenital defects, trauma (wounds, burns, incisions, or ulcers), age, disease (e.g. osteoporosis, osteoarthritis, periodontal disease, liver failure), surgery, including cosmetic plastic surgery, fibrosis, reperfusion injury, or systemic cytokine damage.

Tissues that could be regenerated using the present invention include organs (e.g., pancreas, liver, intestine, kidney, skin, endothelium), muscle (smooth, skeletal or cardiac), vasculature (including vascular and lymphatics), nervous, hematopoietic, and skeletal (bone, cartilage, tendon, and ligament) tissue. Preferably, regeneration occurs without or decreased scarring. Regeneration also may include angiogenesis.

Moreover, TGF alpha HIII polynucleotides or polypeptides, or agonists or antagonists of TGF alpha HIII, may increase regeneration of tissues difficult to heal. For example, increased tendon/ligament regeneration would quicken recovery time after damage. TGF alpha HIII polynucleotides or polypeptides, or agonists or antagonists of TGF alpha HIII, of the present invention could also be used prophylactically in an effort to avoid damage. Specific diseases that could be treated include of tendinitis, carpal tunnel syndrome, and other tendon or ligament defects. A further example of tissue regeneration of non-healing wounds includes pressure ulcers, ulcers associated with vascular insufficiency, surgical, and traumatic wounds.

Similarly, nerve and brain tissue could also be regenerated by using TGF alpha HIII polynucleotides or polypeptides, or agonists or antagonists of TGF alpha HIII, to proliferate and differentiate nerve cells. Diseases that could be treated using this method include central and peripheral nervous system diseases, neuropathies, or mechanical and traumatic disorders (e.g., spinal cord disorders, head trauma, cerebrovascular disease, and stroke). Specifically, diseases associated with peripheral nerve injuries, peripheral neuropathy (e.g., resulting from chemotherapy or other medical therapies), localized neuropathies, and central nervous system diseases (e.g., Alzheimer's disease, Parkinson's disease, Huntington's disease, amyotrophic lateral sclerosis, and Shy-Drager syndrome), could all be treated using the TGF alpha HIII polynucleotides or polypeptides, or agonists or antagonists of TGF alpha HIII.

### **Chemotaxis**



TGF alpha HIII polynucleotides or polypeptides, or agonists or antagonists of TGF alpha HIII, may have chemotaxis activity. A chemotactic molecule attracts or mobilizes cells (e.g., monocytes, fibroblasts, neutrophils, T-cells, mast cells, eosinophils, epithelial and/or endothelial cells) to a particular site in the body, such as inflammation, infection, or site of hyperproliferation. The mobilized cells can then fight off and/or heal the particular trauma or abnormality.

TGF alpha HIII polynucleotides or polypeptides, or agonists or antagonists of TGF alpha HIII, may increase chemotactic activity of particular cells. These chemotactic molecules can then be used to treat inflammation, infection, hyperproliferative disorders, or any immune system disorder by increasing the number of cells targeted to a particular location in the body. For example, chemotactic molecules can be used to treat wounds and other trauma to tissues by attracting immune cells to the injured location. Chemotactic molecules of the present invention can also attract fibroblasts, which can be used to treat wounds.

It is also contemplated that TGF alpha HIII polynucleotides or polypeptides, or agonists or antagonists of TGF alpha HIII, may inhibit chemotactic activity. These molecules could also be used to treat disorders. Thus, TGF alpha HIII polynucleotides or polypeptides, or agonists or antagonists of TGF alpha HIII, could be used as an inhibitor of chemotaxis.

### **Binding Activity**

TGF alpha HIII polypeptides may be used to screen for molecules that bind to TGF alpha HIII or for molecules to which TGF alpha HIII binds. The binding of TGF alpha HIII and the molecule may activate (agonist), increase, inhibit (antagonist), or decrease activity of the TGF alpha HIII or the molecule bound. Examples of such molecules include antibodies, oligonucleotides, proteins (e.g., receptors), or small molecules.

Preferably, the molecule is closely related to the natural ligand of TGF alpha HIII, e.g., a fragment of the ligand, or a natural substrate, a ligand, a structural or functional mimetic. (See, Coligan et al., Current Protocols in Immunology 1(2):Chapter 5 (1991).) Similarly, the molecule can be closely related to the natural receptor to which TGF alpha HIII binds, or at least, a fragment of the receptor capable of being bound by TGF alpha HIII (e.g., active site). In either case, the molecule can be rationally designed using known techniques.

Preferably, the screening for these molecules involves producing appropriate cells which express TGF alpha HIII, either as a secreted protein or on the cell membrane. Preferred cells include cells from mammals, yeast, Drosophila, or E. coli. Cells expressing TGF alpha HIII(or cell membrane containing the expressed polypeptide) are then preferably contacted with a test compound potentially containing the molecule to observe binding, stimulation, or inhibition of activity of either TGF alpha HIII or the molecule.

The assay may simply test binding of a candidate compound to TGF alpha HIII, wherein binding is detected by a label, or in an assay involving competition with a labeled competitor. Further, the assay may test whether the candidate compound results in a signal generated by binding to TGF alpha HIII.

Alternatively, the assay can be carried out using cell-free preparations, polypeptide/molecule affixed to a solid support, chemical libraries, or natural product mixtures. The assay may also simply comprise the steps of mixing a candidate compound with a solution containing TGF alpha HIII, measuring TGF alpha HIII/molecule activity or binding, and comparing the TGF alpha HIII/molecule activity or binding to a standard.

Preferably, an ELISA assay can measure TGF alpha HIII level or activity in a sample (e.g., biological sample) using a monoclonal or polyclonal antibody. The antibody can measure TGF alpha HIII level or activity by either binding, directly or indirectly, to TGF alpha HIII or by competing with TGF alpha HIII for a substrate.

Additionally, the receptor to which TGF alpha HIII binds can be identified by numerous methods known to those of skill in the art, for example, ligand panning and FACS sorting (Coligan, et al., Current Protocols in Immun., 1(2), Chapter 5, (1991)). For example, expression cloning is employed wherein polyadenylated RNA is prepared from a cell responsive to the polypeptides, for example, NIH3T3 cells which are known to contain multiple receptors for the FGF family proteins, and SC-3 cells, and a cDNA library created from this RNA is divided into pools and used to transfect COS cells or other cells that are not responsive to the polypeptides. Transfected cells which are grown on glass slides are exposed to the polypeptide of the present invention, after they have been labelled. The polypeptides can be labeled by a variety of means including iodination or inclusion of a recognition site for a site-specific protein kinase.

Following fixation and incubation, the slides are subjected to auto-radiographic analysis. Positive pools are identified and sub-pools are prepared and re-transfected using an

iterative sub-pooling and re-screening process, eventually yielding a single clones that encodes the putative receptor.

As an alternative approach for receptor identification, the labeled polypeptides can be photoaffinity linked with cell membrane or extract preparations that express the receptor molecule. Cross-linked material is resolved by PAGE analysis and exposed to X-ray film. The labeled complex containing the receptors of the polypeptides can be excised, resolved into peptide fragments, and subjected to protein microsequencing. The amino acid sequence obtained from microsequencing would be used to design a set of degenerate oligonucleotide probes to screen a cDNA library to identify the genes encoding the putative receptors.

Moreover, the techniques of gene-shuffling, motif-shuffling, exon-shuffling, and/or codon-shuffling (collectively referred to as "DNA shuffling") may be employed to modulate the activities of TGF alpha HIII thereby effectively generating agonists and antagonists of TGF alpha HIII. *See generally*, U.S. Patent Nos. 5,605,793, 5,811,238, 5,830,721, 5,834,252, and 5,837,458, and Patten, P. A., *et al.*, *Curr. Opinion Biotechnol.* 8:724-33 (1997); Harayama, S. *Trends Biotechnol.* 16(2):76-82 (1998); Hansson, L. O., *et al.*, *J. Mol. Biol.* 287:265-76 (1999); and Lorenzo, M. M. and Blasco, R. *Biotechniques* 24(2):308-13 (1998) (each of these patents and publications are hereby incorporated by reference). In one embodiment, alteration of TGF alpha HIII polynucleotides and corresponding polypeptides may be achieved by DNA shuffling. DNA shuffling involves the assembly of two or more DNA segments into a desired TGF alpha HIII molecule by homologous, or site-specific, recombination. In another embodiment, TGF alpha HIII polynucleotides and corresponding polypeptides may be altered by being subjected to random mutagenesis by error-prone PCR, random nucleotide insertion or other methods prior to recombination. In another embodiment, one or more components, motifs, sections, parts, domains, fragments, etc., of TGF alpha HIII may be recombined with one or more components, motifs, sections, parts, domains, fragments, etc. of one or more heterologous molecules. In preferred embodiments, the heterologous molecules are Transforming Growth Factor family members. In further preferred embodiments, the heterologous molecule is a growth factor such as, for example, platelet-derived growth factor (PDGF), insulin-like growth factor (IGF-I), transforming growth factor (TGF)-alpha, epidermal growth factor (EGF), fibroblast growth factor (FGF), TGF-beta, bone morphogenetic protein (BMP)-2, BMP-4, BMP-5, BMP-6, BMP-7, activins A and B, decapentaplegic(dpp), 60A, OP-2, dorsalin, growth differentiation factors (GDFs),

Other preferred fragments are biologically active TGF alpha HIII fragments. Biologically active fragments are those exhibiting activity similar, but not necessarily identical, to an activity of the TGF alpha HIII polypeptide. The biological activity of the fragments may include an improved desired activity, or a decreased undesirable activity.

In another method, a mammalian cell or membrane preparation expressing a receptor for a polypeptide of the present invention is incubated with a labeled polypeptide of the present invention in the presence of the compound. The ability of the compound to enhance or block this interaction could then be measured. Alternatively, the response of a known second messenger system following interaction of a compound to be screened and the TGF alpha HIII receptor is measured and the ability of the compound to bind to the receptor and elicit a second messenger response is measured to determine if the compound is a potential agonist or antagonist. Such second messenger systems include but are not limited to, cAMP guanylate cyclase, ion channels or phosphoinositide hydrolysis.

All of these above assays can be used as diagnostic or prognostic markers. The molecules discovered using these assays can be used to treat disease or to bring about a particular result in a patient (e.g., blood vessel growth) by activating or inhibiting the polypeptide/molecule. Moreover, the assays can discover agents which may inhibit or enhance the production of the polypeptides of the invention from suitably manipulated cells

or tissues. Therefore, the invention includes a method of identifying compounds which bind to TGF alpha HIII comprising the steps of: (a) incubating a candidate binding compound with TGF alpha HIII; and (b) determining if binding has occurred. Moreover, the invention includes a method of identifying agonists/antagonists comprising the steps of: (a) incubating a candidate compound with TGF alpha HIII, (b) assaying a biological activity, and (b) determining if a biological activity of TGF alpha HIII has been altered.

Also, one could identify molecules bind TGF alpha HIII experimentally by using the beta-pleated sheet regions disclosed in Figure 3 and Table 1. Accordingly, specific embodiments of the invention are directed to polynucleotides encoding polypeptides which comprise, or alternatively consist of, the amino acid sequence of each beta pleated sheet regions disclosed in Figure 3/Table 1. Additional embodiments of the invention are directed to polynucleotides encoding TGF alpha HIII polypeptides which comprise, or alternatively consist of, any combination or all of the beta pleated sheet regions disclosed in Figure 3/Table 1. Additional preferred embodiments of the invention are directed to polypeptides which comprise, or alternatively consist of, the TGF alpha HIII amino acid sequence of each of the beta pleated sheet regions disclosed in Figure 3/Table 1. Additional embodiments of the invention are directed to TGF alpha HIII polypeptides which comprise, or alternatively consist of, any combination or all of the beta pleated sheet regions disclosed in Figure 3/Table 1.

### **Targeted Delivery**

In another embodiment, the invention provides a method of delivering compositions to targeted cells expressing a receptor for a polypeptide of the invention, or cells expressing a cell bound form of a polypeptide of the invention.

As discussed herein, polypeptides or antibodies of the invention may be associated with heterologous polypeptides, heterologous nucleic acids, toxins, or prodrugs via hydrophobic, hydrophilic, ionic and/or covalent interactions. In one embodiment, the invention provides a method for the specific delivery of compositions of the invention to cells by administering polypeptides of the invention (including antibodies) that are associated with heterologous polypeptides or nucleic acids. In one example, the invention provides a method for delivering a therapeutic protein into the targeted cell. In another example, the invention provides a method for delivering a single stranded nucleic acid (e.g., antisense or ribozymes)

or double stranded nucleic acid (e.g., DNA that can integrate into the cell's genome or replicate episomally and that can be transcribed) into the targeted cell.

In another embodiment, the invention provides a method for the specific destruction of cells (e.g., the destruction of tumor cells) by administering polypeptides of the invention (e.g., polypeptides of the invention or antibodies of the invention) in association with toxins or cytotoxic prodrugs.

By "toxin" is meant compounds that bind and activate endogenous cytotoxic effector systems, radioisotopes, holotoxins, modified toxins, catalytic subunits of toxins, or any molecules or enzymes not normally present in or on the surface of a cell that under defined conditions cause the cell's death. Toxins that may be used according to the methods of the invention include, but are not limited to, radioisotopes known in the art, compounds such as, for example, antibodies (or complement fixing containing portions thereof) that bind an inherent or induced endogenous cytotoxic effector system, thymidine kinase, endonuclease, RNase, alpha toxin, ricin, abrin, *Pseudomonas* exotoxin A, diphtheria toxin, saporin, momordin, gelonin, pokeweed antiviral protein, alpha-sarcin and cholera toxin. By "cytotoxic prodrug" is meant a non-toxic compound that is converted by an enzyme, normally present in the cell, into a cytotoxic compound. Cytotoxic prodrugs that may be used according to the methods of the invention include, but are not limited to, glutamyl derivatives of benzoic acid mustard alkylating agent, phosphate derivatives of etoposide or mitomycin C, cytosine arabinoside, daunorubisin, and phenoxyacetamide derivatives of doxorubicin.

### Drug Screening

Further contemplated is the use of the polypeptides of the present invention, or the polynucleotides encoding these polypeptides, to screen for molecules which modify the activities of the polypeptides of the present invention. Such a method would include contacting the polypeptide of the present invention with a selected compound(s) suspected of having antagonist or agonist activity, and assaying the activity of these polypeptides following binding.

This invention is particularly useful for screening therapeutic compounds by using the polypeptides of the present invention, or binding fragments thereof, in any of a variety of drug screening techniques. The polypeptide or fragment employed in such a test may be affixed to a solid support, expressed on a cell surface, free in solution, or located intracellularly. One

method of drug screening utilizes eukaryotic or prokaryotic host cells which are stably transformed with recombinant nucleic acids expressing the polypeptide or fragment. Drugs are screened against such transformed cells in competitive binding assays. One may measure, for example, the formulation of complexes between the agent being tested and a polypeptide of the present invention.

Thus, the present invention provides methods of screening for drugs or any other agents which affect activities mediated by the polypeptides of the present invention. These methods comprise contacting such an agent with a polypeptide of the present invention or a fragment thereof and assaying for the presence of a complex between the agent and the polypeptide or a fragment thereof, by methods well known in the art. In such a competitive binding assay, the agents to screen are typically labeled. Following incubation, free agent is separated from that present in bound form, and the amount of free or uncomplexed label is a measure of the ability of a particular agent to bind to the polypeptides of the present invention.

Another technique for drug screening provides high throughput screening for compounds having suitable binding affinity to the polypeptides of the present invention, and is described in great detail in European Patent Application 84/03564, published on September 13, 1984, which is incorporated herein by reference herein. Briefly stated, large numbers of different small peptide test compounds are synthesized on a solid substrate, such as plastic pins or some other surface. The peptide test compounds are reacted with polypeptides of the present invention and washed. Bound polypeptides are then detected by methods well known in the art. Purified polypeptides are coated directly onto plates for use in the aforementioned drug screening techniques. In addition, non-neutralizing antibodies may be used to capture the peptide and immobilize it on the solid support.

This invention also contemplates the use of competitive drug screening assays in which neutralizing antibodies capable of binding polypeptides of the present invention specifically compete with a test compound for binding to the polypeptides or fragments thereof. In this manner, the antibodies are used to detect the presence of any peptide which shares one or more antigenic epitopes with a polypeptide of the invention.

#### **Antisense And Ribozyme (Antagonists)**

In specific embodiments, antagonists according to the present invention are nucleic acids corresponding to the sequences contained in SEQ ID NO:1, or the complementary strand thereof, and/or to nucleotide sequences contained in the deposited clone 97342. In one embodiment, antisense sequence is generated internally, by the organism, in another  
5 embodiment, the antisense sequence is separately administered (see, for example, O'Connor, J., *Neurochem.* 56:560 (1991). *Oligodeoxynucleotides as Antisense Inhibitors of Gene Expression*, CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL (1988). Antisense technology can be used to control gene expression through antisense DNA or RNA, or through triple-helix formation. Antisense techniques are discussed for example, in Okano, J., *Neurochem.* 56:560 (1991);  
10 *Oligodeoxynucleotides as Antisense Inhibitors of Gene Expression*, CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL (1988). Triple helix formation is discussed in, for instance, Lee et al., *Nucleic Acids Research* 6:3073 (1979); Cooney et al., *Science* 241:456 (1988); and Dervan et al., *Science* 251:1300 (1991). The methods are based on binding of a polynucleotide to a complementary DNA or RNA.

For example, the use of c-myc and c-myb antisense RNA constructs to inhibit the growth of the non-lymphocytic leukemia cell line HL-60 and other cell lines was previously described. (Wickstrom et al. (1988); Anfossi et al. (1989)). These experiments were performed in vitro by incubating cells with the oligoribonucleotide. A similar procedure for in vivo use is described in WO 91/15580. Briefly, a pair of oligonucleotides for a given  
15 antisense RNA is produced as follows: A sequence complimentary to the first 15 bases of the open reading frame is flanked by an EcoR1 site on the 5' end and a HindIII site on the 3' end. Next, the pair of oligonucleotides is heated at 90°C for one minute and then annealed in 2X ligation buffer (20mM TRIS HCl pH 7.5, 10mM MgCl<sub>2</sub>, 10mM dithiothreitol (DTT) and 0.2 mM ATP) and then ligated to the EcoR1/Hind III site of the retroviral vector PMV7 (WO  
20 91/15580).

For example, the 5' coding portion of a polynucleotide that encodes the mature polypeptide of the present invention may be used to design an antisense RNA oligonucleotide of from about 10 to 40 base pairs in length. A DNA oligonucleotide is designed to be complementary to a region of the gene involved in transcription thereby preventing  
25 transcription and the production of the receptor. The antisense RNA oligonucleotide hybridizes to the mRNA in vivo and blocks translation of the mRNA molecule into receptor polypeptide.



In one embodiment, the TGF alpha HIII antisense nucleic acid of the invention is produced intracellularly by transcription from an exogenous sequence. For example, a vector or a portion thereof, is transcribed, producing an antisense nucleic acid (RNA) of the invention. Such a vector would contain a sequence encoding the TGF alpha HIII antisense nucleic acid. Such a vector can remain episomal or become chromosomally integrated, as long as it can be transcribed to produce the desired antisense RNA. Such vectors can be constructed by recombinant DNA technology methods standard in the art. Vectors can be plasmid, viral, or others known in the art, used for replication and expression in vertebrate cells. Expression of the sequence encoding TGF alpha HIII, or fragments thereof, can be by any promoter known in the art to act in vertebrate, preferably human cells. Such promoters can be inducible or constitutive. Such promoters include, but are not limited to, the SV40 early promoter region (Bernoist and Chambon, *Nature* 29:304-310 (1981), the promoter contained in the 3' long terminal repeat of Rous sarcoma virus (Yamamoto et al., *Cell* 22:787-797 (1980), the herpes thymidine promoter (Wagner et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A.* 78:1441-1445 (1981), the regulatory sequences of the metallothionein gene (Brinster, et al., *Nature* 296:39-42 (1982)), etc.

The antisense nucleic acids of the invention comprise a sequence complementary to at least a portion of an RNA transcript of a TGF alpha HIII gene. However, absolute complementarity, although preferred, is not required. A sequence "complementary to at least a portion of an RNA," referred to herein, means a sequence having sufficient complementarity to be able to hybridize with the RNA, forming a stable duplex; in the case of double stranded TGF alpha HIII antisense nucleic acids, a single strand of the duplex DNA may thus be tested, or triplex formation may be assayed. The ability to hybridize will depend on both the degree of complementarity and the length of the antisense nucleic acid. Generally, the larger the hybridizing nucleic acid, the more base mismatches with a TGF alpha HIII RNA it may contain and still form a stable duplex (or triplex as the case may be). One skilled in the art can ascertain a tolerable degree of mismatch by use of standard procedures to determine the melting point of the hybridized complex.

Oligonucleotides that are complementary to the 5' end of the message, e.g., the 5' untranslated sequence up to and including the AUG initiation codon, should work most efficiently at inhibiting translation. However, sequences complementary to the 3' untranslated sequences of mRNAs have been shown to be effective at inhibiting translation of mRNAs as well. See generally, Wagner, R., 1994, *Nature* 372:333-335. Thus, oligonucleotides complementary to either the 5'- or 3'- non- translated, non-coding regions of TGF alpha HIII shown in Figures 1A-B could be used in an antisense approach to inhibit translation of endogenous TGF alpha HIII mRNA. Oligonucleotides complementary to the 5' untranslated region of the mRNA should include the complement of the AUG start codon. Antisense oligonucleotides complementary to mRNA coding regions are less efficient inhibitors of translation but could be used in accordance with the invention. Whether designed to hybridize to the 5'-, 3'- or coding region of TGF alpha HIII mRNA, antisense nucleic acids should be at least six nucleotides in length, and are preferably oligonucleotides ranging from 6 to about 50 nucleotides in length. In specific aspects the oligonucleotide is at least 10 nucleotides, at least 17 nucleotides, at least 25 nucleotides or at least 50 nucleotides.

The polynucleotides of the invention can be DNA or RNA or chimeric mixtures or derivatives or modified versions thereof, single-stranded or double-stranded. The oligonucleotide can be modified at the base moiety, sugar moiety, or phosphate backbone, for example, to improve stability of the molecule, hybridization, etc. The oligonucleotide may include other appended groups such as peptides (e.g., for targeting host cell receptors in vivo), or agents facilitating transport across the cell membrane (see, e.g., Letsinger et al., 1989, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A.* 86:6553-6556; Lemaitre et al., 1987, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci.* 84:648-652; PCT Publication No. WO88/09810, published December 15, 1988) or the blood-brain barrier (see, e.g., PCT Publication No. WO89/10134, published April 25, 1988), hybridization-triggered cleavage agents. (See, e.g., Krol et al., 1988, *BioTechniques* 6:958-976) or intercalating agents. (See, e.g., Zon, 1988, *Pharm. Res.* 5:539-549). To this end, the oligonucleotide may be conjugated to another molecule, e.g., a peptide, hybridization triggered cross-linking agent, transport agent, hybridization-triggered cleavage agent, etc.

The antisense oligonucleotide may comprise at least one modified base moiety which is selected from the group including, but not limited to, 5-fluorouracil, 5-bromouracil, 5-chlorouracil, 5-iodouracil, hypoxanthine, xantine, 4-acetylcytosine, 5-(carboxyhydroxymethyl) uracil, 5-carboxymethylaminomethyl-2-thiouridine,

5-carboxymethylaminomethyluracil, dihydrouracil, beta-D-galactosylqueosine, inosine, N6-isopentenyladenine, 1-methylguanine, 1-methylinosine, 2,2-dimethylguanine, 2-methyladenine, 2-methylguanine, 3-methylcytosine, 5-methylcytosine, N6-adenine, 7-methylguanine, 5-methylaminomethyluracil, 5-methoxyaminomethyl-2-thiouracil, beta-D-mannosylqueosine, 5'-methoxycarboxymethyluracil, 5-methoxyuracil, 2-methylthio-N6-isopentenyladenine, uracil-5-oxyacetic acid (v), wybutoxosine, pseudouracil, queosine, 2-thiocytosine, 5-methyl-2-thiouracil, 2-thiouracil, 4-thiouracil, 5-methyluracil, uracil-5-oxyacetic acid methylester, uracil-5-oxyacetic acid (v), 5-methyl-2-thiouracil, 3-(3-amino-3-N-2-carboxypropyl) uracil, (acp3)w, and 2,6-diaminopurine.

The antisense oligonucleotide may also comprise at least one modified sugar moiety selected from the group including, but not limited to, arabinose, 2-fluoroarabinose, xylulose, and hexose.

In yet another embodiment, the antisense oligonucleotide comprises at least one modified phosphate backbone selected from the group including, but not limited to, a phosphorothioate, a phosphorodithioate, a phosphoramidothioate, a phosphoramidate, a phosphordiamidate, a methylphosphonate, an alkyl phosphotriester, and a formacetal or analog thereof.

In yet another embodiment, the antisense oligonucleotide is an a-anomeric oligonucleotide. An a-anomeric oligonucleotide forms specific double-stranded hybrids with complementary RNA in which, contrary to the usual b-units, the strands run parallel to each other (Gautier et al., 1987, Nucl. Acids Res. 15:6625-6641). The oligonucleotide is a 2'-O-methylribonucleotide (Inoue et al., 1987, Nucl. Acids Res. 15:6131-6148), or a chimeric RNA-DNA analogue (Inoue et al., 1987, FEBS Lett. 215:327-330).

Polynucleotides of the invention may be synthesized by standard methods known in the art, e.g. by use of an automated DNA synthesizer (such as are commercially available from Biosearch, Applied Biosystems, etc.). As examples, phosphorothioate oligonucleotides may be synthesized by the method of Stein et al. (1988, Nucl. Acids Res. 16:3209), methylphosphonate oligonucleotides can be prepared by use of controlled pore glass polymer supports (Sarin et al., 1988, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A. 85:7448-7451), etc.

While antisense nucleotides complementary to the TGF alpha HIII coding region sequence could be used, those complementary to the transcribed untranslated region are most preferred.

Potential antagonists according to the invention also include catalytic RNA, or a ribozyme (See, e.g., PCT International Publication WO 90/11364, published October 4, 1990; Sarver et al, Science 247:1222-1225 (1990). While ribozymes that cleave mRNA at site specific recognition sequences can be used to destroy TGF alpha HIII mRNAs, the use of hammerhead ribozymes is preferred. Hammerhead ribozymes cleave mRNAs at locations dictated by flanking regions that form complementary base pairs with the target mRNA. The sole requirement is that the target mRNA have the following sequence of two bases: 5'-UG-3'. The construction and production of hammerhead ribozymes is well known in the art and is described more fully in Haseloff and Gerlach, Nature 334:585-591 (1988). There are numerous potential hammerhead ribozyme cleavage sites within the nucleotide sequence of TGF alpha HIII (Figures 1A-B). Preferably, the ribozyme is engineered so that the cleavage recognition site is located near the 5' end of the TGF alpha HIII mRNA; i.e., to increase efficiency and minimize the intracellular accumulation of non-functional mRNA transcripts.

As in the antisense approach, the ribozymes of the invention can be composed of modified oligonucleotides (e.g. for improved stability, targeting, etc.) and should be delivered to cells which express TGF alpha HIII in vivo. DNA constructs encoding the ribozyme may be introduced into the cell in the same manner as described above for the introduction of antisense encoding DNA. A preferred method of delivery involves using a DNA construct "encoding" the ribozyme under the control of a strong constitutive promoter, such as, for example, pol III or pol II promoter, so that transfected cells will produce sufficient quantities of the ribozyme to destroy endogenous TGF alpha HIII messages and inhibit translation. Since ribozymes unlike antisense molecules, are catalytic, a lower intracellular concentration is required for efficiency.

Antagonist/agonist compounds may be employed to inhibit the cell growth and proliferation effects of the polypeptides of the present invention on neoplastic cells and tissues, i.e. stimulation of angiogenesis of tumors, and, therefore, retard or prevent abnormal cellular growth and proliferation, for example, in tumor formation or growth.

The antagonist/agonist may also be employed to prevent hyper-vascular diseases, and prevent the proliferation of epithelial lens cells after extracapsular cataract surgery.

Prevention of the mitogenic activity of the polypeptides of the present invention may also be desirable in cases such as restenosis after balloon angioplasty.

The antagonist/agonist may also be employed to prevent the growth of scar tissue during wound healing.

The antagonist/agonist may also be employed to treat the diseases described herein.

Thus, the invention provides a method of treating disorders or diseases, including but not limited to the disorders or diseases listed throughout this application, associated with overexpression of a polynucleotide of the present invention by administering to a patient (a) an antisense molecule directed to the polynucleotide of the present invention, and/or (b) a ribozyme directed to the polynucleotide of the present invention.

Additionally, this invention provides a method of screening compounds to identify agonist or antagonist compounds to the polypeptide of the present invention. As an example, a mammalian cell or membrane preparation expressing a TGF alphaHIII receptor is incubated with a potential compound and the ability of the compound to generate a second signal from the receptor is measured to determine if it is an effective agonist. Such second messenger systems include but are not limited to, cAMP guanylate cyclase, ion channels or phosphoinositide hydrolysis. Effective antagonists are determined by the method above wherein an antagonist compound is detected which binds to the receptor but does not elicit a second messenger response to thereby block the receptor from TGF alpha HIII.

Another assay for identifying potential antagonists specific to the receptors to the polypeptide of the present invention is a competition assay which comprises isolating plasma membranes which overexpress a receptor to the polypeptide of the present invention, for example, human A431 carcinoma cells. Serially diluted test sample in a medium (volume is approximately 10 microliters) containing 10 nM 125I-TGF alpha HIII is added to five micrograms of the plasma membrane in the presence of the potential antagonist compound and incubated for 4 hours at 40 degree C. The reaction mixtures are diluted and immediately passed through a millipore filter. The filters are then rapidly washed and the bound radioactivity is measured in a gamma counter. The amount of bound TGF alpha HIII is then measured. A control assay is also performed in the absence of the compound to determine if the antagonists reduce the amount of bound TGF alpha HIII.

Potential antagonist compounds include an antibody, or in some cases, an oligopeptide, which binds to the polypeptide. Alternatively, a potential antagonist may be a closely related protein which binds to the receptor which is an inactive forms of the polypeptide and thereby prevent the action of the polypeptide of the present invention.

Another antagonist compound is an antisense construct prepared using antisense technology. Antisense technology can be used to control gene expression through triple-helix formation or antisense DNA or RNA, both of which methods are based on binding of a polynucleotide to DNA or RNA. For example, the 5' coding portion of the polynucleotide sequence, which encodes for the mature polypeptides of the present invention, is used to design an antisense RNA oligonucleotide of from about 10 to 40 base pairs in length. A DNA oligonucleotide is designed to be complementary to a region of the gene involved in transcription (triple helix -see Lee et al., Nucl. Acids Res., 6:3073 (1979) ; Cooney et al, Science, 241:456 (1988) and Dervan et al., Science, 251: 1360 (1991)), thereby preventing transcription and the production of the polypeptide of the present invention. The antisense RNA oligonucleotide hybridizes to the mRNA in vivo and blocks translation of the mRNA molecule into the polypeptide of the present invention (Antisense - Okano, J. Neurochem., 56:560 (1991); Oligodeoxynucleotides as Antisense Inhibitors of Gene Expression, CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL (1988)) . The oligonucleotides described above can also be delivered to cells such that the antisense RNA or DNA may be expressed in vivo to inhibit production of the polypeptide of the present invention.

Antagonist compounds include a small molecule which binds to the polypeptide of the present invention and blocks its action at the receptor such that normal biological activity is prevented. The small molecules may also bind the receptor to the polypeptide to prevent binding. Examples of small molecules include but are not limited to small peptides or peptide-like molecules.

The antagonists may be employed to treat neoplasia, for example, cancers and tumors. It is known that inhibition of secretion or production of members of the EGF family by tumor cells in mice causes regression of tumors.

The antagonists to the polypeptides of the present invention may also be used therapeutically for the treatment of certain skin disorders, for example, psoriasis. Elevated levels of expression of members of this family of growth factors in skin biopsies taken from diseases such as psoriatic lesions have been found to be elevated (Cook, et al., Cancer Research, 52:3224-3227 (1992)). The antagonists may be employed in a composition with a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier, e.g., as hereinafter described.

#### Other Activities

A polypeptide, polynucleotide, agonist, or antagonist of the present invention, as a result of the ability to stimulate vascular endothelial cell growth, may be employed in treatment for stimulating re-vascularization of ischemic tissues due to various disease conditions such as thrombosis, arteriosclerosis, and other cardiovascular conditions. The  
5 polypeptide, polynucleotide, agonist, or antagonist of the present invention may also be employed to stimulate angiogenesis and limb regeneration, as discussed above.

A polypeptide, polynucleotide, agonist, or antagonist of the present invention may also be employed for treating wounds due to injuries, burns, post-operative tissue repair, and ulcers since they are mitogenic to various cells of different origins, such as fibroblast cells  
10 and skeletal muscle cells, and therefore, facilitate the repair or replacement of damaged or diseased tissue.

A polypeptide, polynucleotide, agonist, or antagonist of the present invention may also be employed stimulate neuronal growth and to treat and prevent neuronal damage which occurs in certain neuronal disorders or neuro-degenerative conditions such as Alzheimer's  
15 disease, Parkinson's disease, and AIDS-related complex. A polypeptide, polynucleotide, agonist, or antagonist of the present invention may have the ability to stimulate chondrocyte growth, therefore, they may be employed to enhance bone and periodontal regeneration and aid in tissue transplants or bone grafts.

A polypeptide, polynucleotide, agonist, or antagonist of the present invention may be  
20 also be employed to prevent skin aging due to sunburn by stimulating keratinocyte growth.

A polypeptide, polynucleotide, agonist, or antagonist of the present invention may also be employed for preventing hair loss, since FGF family members activate hair-forming cells and promotes melanocyte growth. Along the same lines, a polypeptide, polynucleotide, agonist, or antagonist of the present invention may be employed to stimulate growth and  
25 differentiation of hematopoietic cells and bone marrow cells when used in combination with other cytokines.

A polypeptide, polynucleotide, agonist, or antagonist of the present invention may also be employed to maintain organs before transplantation or for supporting cell culture of primary tissues. A polypeptide, polynucleotide, agonist, or antagonist of the present  
30 invention may also be employed for inducing tissue of mesodermal origin to differentiate in early embryos.

A polypeptide, polynucleotide, agonist, or antagonist of the present invention may also increase or decrease the differentiation or proliferation of embryonic stem cells, besides, as discussed above, hematopoietic lineage.

A polypeptide, polynucleotide, agonist, or antagonist of the present invention may also be used to modulate mammalian characteristics, such as body height, weight, hair color, eye color, skin, percentage of adipose tissue, pigmentation, size, and shape (e.g., cosmetic surgery). Similarly, a polypeptide, polynucleotide, agonist, or antagonist of the present invention may be used to modulate mammalian metabolism affecting catabolism, anabolism, processing, utilization, and storage of energy.

A polypeptide, polynucleotide, agonist, or antagonist of the present invention may be used to change a mammal's mental state or physical state by influencing biorhythms, cardiac rhythms, depression (including depressive disorders), tendency for violence, tolerance for pain, reproductive capabilities (preferably by Activin or Inhibin-like activity), hormonal or endocrine levels, appetite, libido, memory, stress, or other cognitive qualities.

A polypeptide, polynucleotide, agonist, or antagonist of the present invention may also be used as a food additive or preservative, such as to increase or decrease storage capabilities, fat content, lipid, protein, carbohydrate, vitamins, minerals, cofactors or other nutritional components.

The above-recited applications have uses in a wide variety of hosts. Such hosts include, but are not limited to, human, murine, rabbit, goat, guinea pig, camel, horse, mouse, rat, hamster, pig, micro-pig, chicken, goat, cow, sheep, dog, cat, non-human primate, and human. In specific embodiments, the host is a mouse, rabbit, goat, guinea pig, chicken, rat, hamster, pig, sheep, dog or cat. In preferred embodiments, the host is a mammal. In most preferred embodiments, the host is a human.

Having generally described the invention, the same will be more readily understood by reference to the following examples, which are provided by way of illustration and are not intended as limiting. Having generally described the invention, the same will be more readily understood by reference to the following examples, which are provided by way of illustration and are not intended as limiting.

### Examples



### Example 1: Isolation of the TGF alpha HIII cDNA Clone From the Deposited Sample

Two approaches can be used to isolate TGF alpha HIII from the deposited sample.

5 First, the deposited clone is transformed into a suitable host (such as XL-1 Blue (Stratagene)) using techniques known to those of skill in the art, such as those provided by the vector supplier or in related publications or patents. The transformants are plated on 1.5% agar plates (containing the appropriate selection agent, e.g., ampicillin) to a density of about 150 transformants (colonies) per plate. A single colony is then used to generate DNA using  
10 nucleic acid isolation techniques well known to those skilled in the art. (e.g., Sambrook et al., Molecular Cloning: A Laboratory Manual, 2nd Edit., (1989), Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory Press.)

Alternatively, two primers of 17-20 nucleotides derived from both ends of the SEQ ID NO:1 (i.e., within the region of SEQ ID NO:1 bounded by the 5' NT and the 3' NT of the  
15 clone) are synthesized and used to amplify the TGF alpha HIII cDNA using the deposited cDNA plasmid as a template. The polymerase chain reaction is carried out under routine conditions, for instance, in 25 ul of reaction mixture with 0.5 ug of the above cDNA template. A convenient reaction mixture is 1.5-5 mM MgCl<sub>2</sub>, 0.01% (w/v) gelatin, 20 uM each of dATP, dCTP, dGTP, dTTP, 25 pmol of each primer and 0.25 Unit of Taq polymerase. Thirty  
20 five cycles of PCR (denaturation at 94 degree C for 1 min; annealing at 55 degree C for 1 min; elongation at 72 degree C for 1 min) are performed with a Perkin-Elmer Cetus automated thermal cycler. The amplified product is analyzed by agarose gel electrophoresis and the DNA band with expected molecular weight is excised and purified. The PCR product is verified to be the selected sequence by subcloning and sequencing the DNA product.

25 Several methods are available for the identification of the 5' or 3' non-coding portions of the TGF alpha HIII gene which may not be present in the deposited clone. These methods include but are not limited to, filter probing, clone enrichment using specific probes, and protocols similar or identical to 5' and 3' "RACE" protocols which are well known in the art. For instance, a method similar to 5' RACE is available for generating the missing 5' end of a  
30 desired full-length transcript. (Fromont-Racine et al., Nucleic Acids Res. 21(7):1683-1684 (1993).)

007027 84292260

Briefly, a specific RNA oligonucleotide is ligated to the 5' ends of a population of RNA presumably containing full-length gene RNA transcripts. A primer set containing a primer specific to the ligated RNA oligonucleotide and a primer specific to a known sequence of the TGF alpha HIII gene of interest is used to PCR amplify the 5' portion of the TGF alpha HIII full-length gene. This amplified product may then be sequenced and used to generate the full length gene.

This above method starts with total RNA isolated from the desired source, although poly-A<sup>+</sup> RNA can be used. The RNA preparation can then be treated with phosphatase if necessary to eliminate 5' phosphate groups on degraded or damaged RNA which may interfere with the later RNA ligase step. The phosphatase should then be inactivated and the RNA treated with tobacco acid pyrophosphatase in order to remove the cap structure present at the 5' ends of messenger RNAs. This reaction leaves a 5' phosphate group at the 5' end of the cap cleaved RNA which can then be ligated to an RNA oligonucleotide using T4 RNA ligase.

This modified RNA preparation is used as a template for first strand cDNA synthesis using a gene specific oligonucleotide. The first strand synthesis reaction is used as a template for PCR amplification of the desired 5' end using a primer specific to the ligated RNA oligonucleotide and a primer specific to the known sequence of the gene of interest. The resultant product is then sequenced and analyzed to confirm that the 5' end sequence belongs to the TGF alpha HIII gene.

### Example 2: Isolation of TGF alpha HIII Genomic Clones

A human genomic P1 library (Genomic Systems, Inc.) is screened by PCR using primers selected for the cDNA sequence corresponding to SEQ ID NO:1., according to the method described in Example 1. (See also, Sambrook.)

### Example 3: Tissue Distribution of TGF alpha HIII Polypeptides

Tissue distribution of mRNA expression of TGF alpha HIII is determined using protocols for Northern blot analysis, described by, among others, Sambrook et al. For example, a TGF alpha HIII probe produced by the method described in Example 1 is labeled

with P<sup>32</sup> using the rediprime™ DNA labeling system (Amersham Life Science), according to manufacturer's instructions. After labeling, the probe is purified using CHROMA SPIN-100™ column (Clontech Laboratories, Inc.), according to manufacturer's protocol number PT1200-1. The purified labeled probe is then used to examine various human tissues for mRNA expression.

Multiple Tissue Northern (MTN) blots containing various human tissues (H) or human immune system tissues (IM) (Clontech) are examined with the labeled probe using ExpressHyb™ hybridization solution (Clontech) according to manufacturer's protocol number PT1190-1. Following hybridization and washing, the blots are mounted and exposed to film at -70 degree C overnight, and the films developed according to standard procedures.

#### Example 4: Chromosomal Mapping of TGF alpha HIII

An oligonucleotide primer set is designed according to the sequence at the 5' end of SEQ ID NO:1. This primer preferably spans about 100 nucleotides. This primer set is then used in a polymerase chain reaction under the following set of conditions : 30 seconds, 95 degree C; 1 minute, 56 degree C; 1 minute, 70 degree C. This cycle is repeated 32 times followed by one 5 minute cycle at 70 degree C. Human, mouse, and hamster DNA is used as template in addition to a somatic cell hybrid panel containing individual chromosomes or chromosome fragments (Bios, Inc). The reactions is analyzed on either 8% polyacrylamide gels or 3.5 % agarose gels. Chromosome mapping is determined by the presence of an approximately 100 bp PCR fragment in the particular somatic cell hybrid.

#### Example 5: Bacterial Expression of TGF alpha HIII

The DNA sequence encoding TGF alpha HIII, ATCC # 97342, was initially amplified using PCR oligonucleotide primers corresponding to the 51 sequences of the processed TGF alpha HIII protein (minus the signal peptide sequence) and the vector sequences 3' to the TGF alpha HIII gene. Additional nucleotides corresponding to TGF alpha HIII were added to the 5' and 3' sequences respectively. The 5' oligonucleotide primer has the sequence 5'

**CGCGGATCCGGGCAAAGAACCTTTGC** 3' (SEQ ID NO:14) contains a BamHI restriction enzyme site (in bold) followed by 18 nucleotides of TGF alpha HIII coding

sequence starting from the presumed terminal amino acid of the processed protein. The 3' sequence

5' GCGTCTAGACTAAAGCAGTGAGAACGAGCC 3' (SEQ ID NO:15) contains complementary sequences to a XbaI site and is followed by 21 nucleotides of TGF alpha HIII. The restriction enzyme sites correspond to the restriction enzyme sites on the bacterial expression vector pQE-9 (Qiagen, Inc. Chatsworth, CA, 91311). pQE-9 encodes antibiotic resistance (Amp<sup>r</sup>) a bacterial origin of replication (ori) , an IPTG-regulatable promoter operator (P/O), a ribosome binding site (RBS) , a 6-His tag and restriction enzyme sites. pQE-9 was then digested with BamHI and XbaI. The amplified sequences were ligated into pQE-9 and were inserted in frame with the sequence encoding for the histidine tag and the RBS. The ligation mixture was then used to transform E. coli strain M15/rep 4 (Qiagen, Inc.) by the procedure described in Sambrook, J. et al., Molecular Cloning: A Laboratory Manual, Cold Spring Laboratory Press, (1989) M15/rep4 contains multiple copies of the plasmid pREP4, which expresses the lacI repressor and also confers kanamycin resistance (Kan<sup>r</sup>). Transf ormants were identified by their ability to grow on LB plates and ampicillin/kanamycin resistant colonies were selected. Plasmid DNA was isolated and confirmed by restriction analysis. Clones containing the desired constructs were grown overnight (O/N) in liquid culture in LB media supplemented with both Amp (100 ug/ml) and Kan (25 ug/ml) The O/N culture was used to inoculate a large culture at a ratio of 1:100 to 1:250. The cells were grown to an optical density 600 (O.D.6w) of between 0.4 and 0.6 IPTG ("Isopropyl-B-D-thiogalacto pyranoside") was then added to a final concentration of 1 mM. IPTG induces by inactivating the lacI repressor, clearing the P/O leading to increased gene expression. Cells were grown an extra 3 to 4 hours. Cells were then harvested by centrifugation. The cell pellet was solubilized in the chaotropic agent 6 Molar Guanidine HC1. After clarification, solubilized TGF alpha HIII was purified from this solution by chromatography on a Nickel-Chelate column under conditions that allow for tight binding by proteins containing the 6-His tag (Hochuli, E. et al., J. Chromatography 411:177-184 (1984)). TGF alpha HIII (85 % pure) was eluted from the column in 6 molar guanidine HC1 pH 5.0 and for the purpose of renaturation adjusted to 3 molar guanidine HC1, 100 mM sodium phosphate, 10 molar glutathione (reduced) and 2 molar glutathione (oxidized). After incubation in this solution for 12 hours the protein was dialyzed to 10 molar sodium phosphate.

In addition to the above expression vector, the present invention further includes an expression vector comprising phage operator and promoter elements operatively linked to a TGF alpha HIII polynucleotide, called pHE4a. (ATCC Accession Number 209645, deposited February 25, 1998.) This vector contains: 1) a neomycinphosphotransferase gene as a selection marker, 2) an E. coli origin of replication, 3) a T5 phage promoter sequence, 4) two lac operator sequences, 5) a Shine-Delgarno sequence, and 6) the lactose operon repressor gene (lacIq). The origin of replication (oriC) is derived from pUC19 (LTI, Gaithersburg, MD). The promoter sequence and operator sequences are made synthetically.

DNA can be inserted into the pHEa by restricting the vector with NdeI and XbaI, BamHI, XhoI, or Asp718, running the restricted product on a gel, and isolating the larger fragment (the stuffer fragment should be about 310 base pairs). The DNA insert is generated according to the PCR protocol described in Example 1, using PCR primers having restriction sites for NdeI (5' primer) and XbaI, BamHI, XhoI, or Asp718 (3' primer). The PCR insert is gel purified and restricted with compatible enzymes. The insert and vector are ligated according to standard protocols.

The engineered vector could easily be substituted in the above protocol to express protein in a bacterial system.

#### Example 6: Purification of TGF alpha HIII Polypeptide from an Inclusion Body

The following alternative method can be used to purify TGF alpha HIII polypeptide expressed in E coli when it is present in the form of inclusion bodies. Unless otherwise specified, all of the following steps are conducted at 4-10 degree C.

Upon completion of the production phase of the E. coli fermentation, the cell culture is cooled to 4-10 degree C and the cells harvested by continuous centrifugation at 15,000 rpm (Heraeus Sepatech). On the basis of the expected yield of protein per unit weight of cell paste and the amount of purified protein required, an appropriate amount of cell paste, by weight, is suspended in a buffer solution containing 100 mM Tris, 50 mM EDTA, pH 7.4. The cells are dispersed to a homogeneous suspension using a high shear mixer.

The cells are then lysed by passing the solution through a microfluidizer (Microfluidics, Corp. or APV Gaulin, Inc.) twice at 4000-6000 psi. The homogenate is then

mixed with NaCl solution to a final concentration of 0.5 M NaCl, followed by centrifugation at 7000 xg for 15 min. The resultant pellet is washed again using 0.5M NaCl, 100 mM Tris, 50 mM EDTA, pH 7.4.

The resulting washed inclusion bodies are solubilized with 1.5 M guanidine hydrochloride (GuHCl) for 2-4 hours. After 7000 xg centrifugation for 15 min., the pellet is discarded and the polypeptide containing supernatant is incubated at 4 degree C overnight to allow further GuHCl extraction.

Following high speed centrifugation (30,000 xg) to remove insoluble particles, the GuHCl solubilized protein is refolded by quickly mixing the GuHCl extract with 20 volumes of buffer containing 50 mM sodium, pH 4.5, 150 mM NaCl, 2 mM EDTA by vigorous stirring. The refolded diluted protein solution is kept at 4 degree C without mixing for 12 hours prior to further purification steps.

To clarify the refolded polypeptide solution, a previously prepared tangential filtration unit equipped with 0.16 um membrane filter with appropriate surface area (e.g., Filtron), equilibrated with 40 mM sodium acetate, pH 6.0 is employed. The filtered sample is loaded onto a cation exchange resin (e.g., Poros HS-50, Perseptive Biosystems). The column is washed with 40 mM sodium acetate, pH 6.0 and eluted with 250 mM, 500 mM, 1000 mM, and 1500 mM NaCl in the same buffer, in a stepwise manner. The absorbance at 280 nm of the effluent is continuously monitored. Fractions are collected and further analyzed by SDS-PAGE.

Fractions containing the TGF alpha HIII polypeptide are then pooled and mixed with 4 volumes of water. The diluted sample is then loaded onto a previously prepared set of tandem columns of strong anion (Poros HQ-50, Perseptive Biosystems) and weak anion (Poros CM-20, Perseptive Biosystems) exchange resins. The columns are equilibrated with 40 mM sodium acetate, pH 6.0. Both columns are washed with 40 mM sodium acetate, pH 6.0, 200 mM NaCl. The CM-20 column is then eluted using a 10 column volume linear gradient ranging from 0.2 M NaCl, 50 mM sodium acetate, pH 6.0 to 1.0 M NaCl, 50 mM sodium acetate, pH 6.5. Fractions are collected under constant  $A_{280}$  monitoring of the effluent. Fractions containing the polypeptide (determined, for instance, by 16% SDS-PAGE) are then pooled.

The resultant TGF alpha HIII polypeptide should exhibit greater than 95% purity after the above refolding and purification steps. No major contaminant bands should be observed

from Commassie blue stained 16% SDS-PAGE gel when 5 ug of purified protein is loaded. The purified TGF alpha HIII protein can also be tested for endotoxin/LPS contamination, and typically the LPS content is less than 0.1 ng/ml according to LAL assays.

## 5 Example 7: Cloning and Expression of TGF alpha HIII in a Baculovirus Expression System

The DNA sequence encoding the TGF alpha HIII protein, ATCC 97342, was amplified using PCR oligonucleotide primers corresponding to the 5' and 3' sequences of the  
10 gene. The first set of primers listed below correspond to the extracellular domain and the second set correspond the putative active domain.

The first set of primers are:

5' **CGCGGATCCGTCCATCATGGCGCCTCACGGCCCG** 3' (SEQ ID NO:16) and  
5' **GCGTCTAGACTACATAAGCAGTGACAACGAGCC** 3' (SEQ ID NO:17).

15 The second set of primers are:

5' **CGCGGATCCCGGGCAAAGAACCTTTGC** 3' (SEQ ID NO:18)  
5' **GCGTCTAGACTACATAAGCAGTGAGAACGAGCC** 3' (SEQ ID NO:19)

All 5' primers have a BamHI restriction enzyme site (in bold). The 3' primer  
20 sequences contain the cleavage site for the restriction endonuclease XbaI and have nucleotides complementary to the 3' extracellular and active domain, respectively of the TGF alpha HIII gene. The amplified sequences were isolated from a 1% agarose gel using a commercially available kit ("GeneClean," BIO 101 Inc., La Jolla, Ca.) . The fragment was then digested with the endonucleases BamHI and XbaI and then purified again on a 1% agarose gel. This fragment was designated F2.

25 The vectors pA2 and pA2GP were used (modification of PVL941 vector, discussed below) for the expression of the TGF alpha HIII protein using the baculovirus expression system (for review see: Summers, M.D. and Smith, G.E. 1987, A manual of methods for baculovirus vectors and insect cell culture procedures, Texas Agricultural Experimental Station Bulletin No. 1555). This expression vector contains the strong polyhedrin promoter  
30 of the Autographa californica nuclear polyhedrosis virus (AcMNPV) followed by the recognition sites for the restriction endonucleases. The polyadenylation site of the simian virus SV40 was used for efficient polyadenylation. For an easy selection of recombinant

virus the beta-galactosidase gene from E.coli was inserted in the same orientation as the polyhedrin promoter followed by the polyadenylation signal of the polyhedrin gene. The polyhedrin sequences were flanked at both sides by viral sequences for the cell-mediated homologous recombination of co-transfected wild-type viral DNA. Many other baculovirus  
 5 vectors could be used such as pAc373, pRG1, pVL941 and pAcIM1 (Luckow, V.A. and Summers, M.D., Virology, 170:31-39).

The plasmid was digested with the restriction enzymes BamHI and XbaI and then dephosphorylated using calf intestinal phosphatase by procedures known in the art. The DNA  
 10 was then isolated from a 1% agarose gel using the commercially available kit ("GeneClean" BIO 101 Inc., La Jolla, Ca.). This vector DNA was designated V2.

Fragment F2 and the dephosphorylated plasmid V2 were ligated with T4 DNA ligase. E.coli HB101 cells were then transformed and bacteria identified that contained the plasmid (pBacTGF alpha HIII) with the TGF alpha HIII gene using the restriction enzymes BamHI and XbaI. The sequence of the cloned fragment was confirmed by DNA sequencing.

15 5 ug of the plasmid pBacTGF alpha HIII was co-transfected with 1.0 ug of a commercially available linearized baculovirus ("BaculoGold baculovirus DNA", Pharmingen, San Diego, CA.) using the lipofection method (Felgner et al. Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA, 84:7413-7417 (1987)).

20 1ug of BaculoGold virus DNA and 5 ug of the plasmid pBacTGF alpha HIII were mixed in a sterile well of a microtiter plate containing 50 ul of serum free Grace's medium (Life Technologies Inc., Gaithersburg, MD) Afterwards 10 ul Lipofectin plus 90 ul Grace's medium were added, mixed and incubated for 15 minutes at room temperature. Then the transfection mixture was added drop-wise to the Sf9 insect cells (ATCC CRL 1711) seeded in a 35 mm tissue culture plate with 1 ml Grace's medium without serum. The plate was  
 25 rocked back and forth to mix the newly added solution. The plate was then incubated for 5 hours at 27 degree C. After 5 hours the transfection solution was removed from the plate and 2 ml of Grace's insect medium supplemented with 10% fetal calf serum was added. The plate was put back into an incubator and cultivation continued at 27 degree C for four days.

30 After four days the supernatant was collected and a plaque assay performed similar as described by Summers and Smith (supra) . As a modification an agarose gel with "Blue Gall" (Life Technologies Inc., Gaithersburg) was used which allows an easy isolation of blue stained plaques. (A detailed description of a "plaque assay" can also be found in the user's



guide for insect cell culture and baculovirology distributed by Life Technologies Inc., Gaithersburg, page 9-10).

Four days after the serial dilution, the virus was added to the cells and blue stained plaques were picked with the tip of an Eppendorf pipette. The agar containing the recombinant viruses was then resuspended in an Eppendorf tube containing 200 ul of Grace's medium. The agar was removed by a brief centrifugation and the supernatant containing the recombinant baculovirus was used to infect Sf9 cells seeded in 35 mm dishes. Four days later the supernatants of these culture dishes were harvested and then stored at 4 degree C.

Sf9 cells were grown in Grace's medium supplemented with 10% heat-inactivated FBS. The cells were infected with the recombinant baculovirus V-TGF alpha HIII at a multiplicity of infection (MOI) of 2. Six hours later the medium was removed and replaced with SF900 II medium minus methionine and cysteine (Life Technologies Inc., Gaithersburg). 42 hours later 5 uCi of 35S methionine and 5 uCi 35S cysteine (Amersham) were added. The cells were further incubated for 16 hours before they were harvested by centrifugation and the labelled proteins visualized by SDS-PAGE and autoradiography.

Microsequencing of the amino acid sequence of the amino terminus of purified protein may be used to determine the amino terminal sequence of the produced TGF alpha HIII protein.

## Example 8: Expression of TGF alpha HIII in Mammalian Cells

TGF alpha HIII polypeptide can be expressed in a mammalian cell. A typical mammalian expression vector contains a promoter element, which mediates the initiation of transcription of mRNA, a protein coding sequence, and signals required for the termination of transcription and polyadenylation of the transcript. Additional elements include enhancers, Kozak sequences and intervening sequences flanked by donor and acceptor sites for RNA splicing. Highly efficient transcription is achieved with the early and late promoters from SV40, the long terminal repeats (LTRs) from Retroviruses, e.g., RSV, HTLVI, HIVI and the early promoter of the cytomegalovirus (CMV). However, cellular elements can also be used (e.g., the human actin promoter).

Suitable expression vectors for use in practicing the present invention include, for example, vectors such as pSVL and pMSG (Pharmacia, Uppsala, Sweden), pRSVcat (ATCC

37152), pSV2DHFR (ATCC 37146), pBC12MI (ATCC 67109), pCMVSPORT 2.0, and pCMVSPORT 3.0. Mammalian host cells that could be used include, human Hela, 293, H9 and Jurkat cells, mouse NIH3T3 and C127 cells, Cos 1, Cos 7 and CV1, quail QC1-3 cells, mouse L cells and Chinese hamster ovary (CHO) cells.

5 Alternatively, TGF alpha HIII polypeptide can be expressed in stable cell lines containing the TGF alpha HIII polynucleotide integrated into a chromosome. The co-transfection with a selectable marker such as DHFR, gpt, neomycin, hygromycin allows the identification and isolation of the transfected cells.

10 The transfected TGF alpha HIII gene can also be amplified to express large amounts of the encoded protein. The DHFR (dihydrofolate reductase) marker is useful in developing cell lines that carry several hundred or even several thousand copies of the gene of interest. (See, e.g., Alt, F. W., et al., J. Biol. Chem. 253:1357-1370 (1978); Hamlin, J. L. and Ma, C., Biochem. et Biophys. Acta, 1097:107-143 (1990); Page, M. J. and Sydenham, M. A., Biotechnology 9:64-68 (1991).) Another useful selection marker is the enzyme glutamine  
15 synthase (GS) (Murphy et al., Biochem J. 227:277-279 (1991); Bebbington et al., Bio/Technology 10:169-175 (1992). Using these markers, the mammalian cells are grown in selective medium and the cells with the highest resistance are selected. These cell lines contain the amplified gene(s) integrated into a chromosome. Chinese hamster ovary (CHO) and NSO cells are often used for the production of proteins.

20 Derivatives of the plasmid pSV2-DHFR (ATCC Accession No. 37146), the expression vectors pC4 (ATCC Accession No. 209646) and pC6 (ATCC Accession No. 209647) contain the strong promoter (LTR) of the Rous Sarcoma Virus (Cullen et al., Molecular and Cellular Biology, 438-447 (March, 1985)) plus a fragment of the CMV-enhancer (Boshart et al., Cell 41:521-530 (1985).) Multiple cloning sites, e.g., with the  
25 restriction enzyme cleavage sites BamHI, XbaI and Asp718, facilitate the cloning of TGF alpha HIII. The vectors also contain the 3' intron, the polyadenylation and termination signal of the rat preproinsulin gene, and the mouse DHFR gene under control of the SV40 early promoter.

30 If a naturally occurring signal sequence is used to produce a secreted protein, the vector does not need a second signal peptide. Alternatively, if a naturally occurring signal sequence is not used, the vector can be modified to include a heterologous signal sequence in an effort to secrete the protein from the cell. (See, e.g., WO 96/34891.)

The amplified fragment is then digested and purified on a 1% agarose gel using a commercially available kit ("GeneClean," BIO 101 Inc., La Jolla, Ca.). The isolated fragment and the dephosphorylated vector are then ligated with T4 DNA ligase. *E. coli* HB101 or XL-1 Blue cells are then transformed and bacteria are identified that contain the fragment inserted into plasmid pC6 or pC4 using, for instance, restriction enzyme analysis.

Chinese hamster ovary cells lacking an active DHFR gene is used for transfection. Five  $\mu$ g of the expression plasmid pC6 or pC4 is cotransfected with 0.5  $\mu$ g of the plasmid pSVneo using lipofectin (Felgner et al., supra). The plasmid pSV2-neo contains a dominant selectable marker, the neo gene from Tn5 encoding an enzyme that confers resistance to a group of antibiotics including G418. The cells are seeded in alpha minus MEM supplemented with 1 mg/ml G418. After 2 days, the cells are trypsinized and seeded in hybridoma cloning plates (Greiner, Germany) in alpha minus MEM supplemented with 10, 25, or 50 ng/ml of methotrexate plus 1 mg/ml G418. After about 10-14 days single clones are trypsinized and then seeded in 6-well petri dishes or 10 ml flasks using different concentrations of methotrexate (50 nM, 100 nM, 200 nM, 400 nM, 800 nM). Clones growing at the highest concentrations of methotrexate are then transferred to new 6-well plates containing even higher concentrations of methotrexate (1  $\mu$ M, 2  $\mu$ M, 5  $\mu$ M, 10 mM, 20 mM). The same procedure is repeated until clones are obtained which grow at a concentration of 100 - 200  $\mu$ M. Expression of TGF alpha HIII is analyzed, for instance, by SDS-PAGE and Western blot or by reversed phase HPLC analysis.

Alternatively, the expression of plasmid, TGF alpha HIII HA is derived from a vector pcDNA3/Amp (Invitrogen) containing: 1) SV40 origin of replication, 2) ampicillin resistance gene, 3) *E. coli* replication origin, 4) CMV promoter followed by a polylinker region, an SV40 intron and polyadenylation site. A DNA fragment encoding the entire TGF alpha HIII precursor and a HA tag fused in frame to its 3' end is cloned into the polylinker region of the vector, therefore, the recombinant protein expression is directed under the CMV promoter. The HA tag corresponds to an epitope derived from the influenza hemagglutinin protein as previously described (I. Wilson, H. Niman, R. Heighen, A. Cherenson, M. Connolly, and R. Lerner, 1984, *Cell* 37:767, (1984)). The infusion of HA tag to the target protein allows easy detection of the recombinant protein with an antibody that recognizes the HA epitope.

The plasmid construction strategy is described as follows:

The DNA sequence encoding TGF alpha HIII, ATCC 97342, is constructed by PCR using two primers: the 5' primer 5'

CGCGGATCCGTCCATCATGGCGCCTCACGGCCCG 3' (SEQ ID NO:20) contains a BamHI site (in bold) followed by 18 nucleotides of TGF alpha HIII coding sequence starting from the initiation codon; the 3' sequence

5' GCGCTCAGACATAAGCAGTGAGAACGAGCC 3' (SEQ ID NO:21) contains complementary sequences to an XhoI site, the last 21 nucleotides of the TGF alpha HIII domain and an XhoI site. pcDNA3/Amp vector contains BamHI/XhoI cloning sites which bring the PCR insert in frame with the 3' HA tag followed by a stop codon. Therefore, the PCR product contains a BamHI site, 606 base pair coding sequence and an XhoI site. The PCR amplified DNA fragment and the vector, pcDNA3/Amp, are digested with BamHI and XhoI restriction enzyme and ligated. The ligation mixture is transformed into E. coli strain SURE (available from Stratagene Cloning Systems, La Jolla, CA 92037) the transformed culture is plated on ampicillin media plates and resistant colonies are selected. Plasmid DNA is isolated from transformants and examined by restriction analysis for the presence of the correct fragment. For expression of the recombinant TGF alpha HIII, COS cells are transfected with the expression vector by DEAE-DEXTRAN method (J. Sambrook, E. Fritsch, T. Maniatis, Molecular Cloning: A Laboratory Manual, Cold Spring Laboratory Press, (1989)). The expression of the TGF alpha HIII HA protein is detected by radiolabelling and immunoprecipitation method (E. Harlow, D. Lane, Antibodies: A Laboratory Manual, Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory Press, (1988)). Cells are labelled for 8 hours with 35S cysteine two days post transfection. Culture media is then collected and cells are lysed with detergent (RIPA buffer (150 mM NaCl, 1% NP40, 0.1% SDS, 1% NP-40, 0.5% DOC, 50mM Tris, pH 7.5) (Wilson, I. et al., Id. 37:767 (1984)). Both cell lysate and culture media are precipitated with an HA specific monoclonal antibody. Proteins precipitated are analyzed on 15% SDS-PAGE gels.

#### Example 9: Construction of N-Terminal and/or C-Terminal Deletion Mutants

The following general approach may be used to clone a N-terminal or C-terminal deletion TGF alpha HIII deletion mutant. Generally, two oligonucleotide primers of about

15-25 nucleotides are derived from the desired 5' and 3' positions of a polynucleotide of SEQ ID NO:1. The 5' and 3' positions of the primers are determined based on the desired TGF alpha HIII polynucleotide fragment. An initiation and stop codon are added to the 5' and 3' primers respectively, if necessary, to express the TGF alpha HIII polypeptide fragment encoded by the polynucleotide fragment. Preferred TGF alpha HIII polynucleotide fragments are those encoding the N-terminal and C-terminal deletion mutants disclosed above in the "Polynucleotide and Polypeptide Fragments" section of the Specification.

Additional nucleotides containing restriction sites to facilitate cloning of the TGF alpha HIII polynucleotide fragment in a desired vector may also be added to the 5' and 3' primer sequences. The TGF alpha HIII polynucleotide fragment is amplified from genomic DNA or from the deposited cDNA clone using the appropriate PCR oligonucleotide primers and conditions discussed herein or known in the art. The TGF alpha HIII polypeptide fragments encoded by the TGF alpha HIII polynucleotide fragments of the present invention may be expressed and purified in the same general manner as the full length polypeptides, although routine modifications may be necessary due to the differences in chemical and physical properties between a particular fragment and full length polypeptide.

As a means of exemplifying but not limiting the present invention, the polynucleotide encoding the TGF alpha HIII polypeptide fragment C-35 to S-215 is amplified and cloned as follows: A 5' primer is generated comprising a restriction enzyme site followed by an initiation codon in frame with the polynucleotide sequence encoding the N-terminal portion of the polypeptide fragment beginning with C-35. A complementary 3' primer is generated comprising a restriction enzyme site followed by a stop codon in frame with the polynucleotide sequence encoding C-terminal portion of the TGF alpha HIII polypeptide fragment ending with S-215.

The amplified polynucleotide fragment and the expression vector are digested with restriction enzymes which recognize the sites in the primers. The digested polynucleotides are then ligated together. The TGF alpha HIII polynucleotide fragment is inserted into the restricted expression vector, preferably in a manner which places the TGF alpha HIII polypeptide fragment coding region downstream from the promoter. The ligation mixture is transformed into competent *E. coli* cells using standard procedures and as described in the Examples herein. Plasmid DNA is isolated from resistant colonies and the identity of the cloned DNA confirmed by restriction analysis, PCR and DNA sequencing.

### Example 10: Protein Fusions of TGF alpha HIII

TGF alpha HIII polypeptides are preferably fused to other proteins. These fusion proteins can be used for a variety of applications. For example, fusion of TGF alpha HIII polypeptides to His-tag, HA-tag, protein A, IgG domains, and maltose binding protein facilitates purification. (See Example 5; see also EP A 394,827; Traunecker, et al., Nature 331:84-86 (1988).) Similarly, fusion to IgG-1, IgG-3, and albumin increases the half-life time in vivo. Nuclear localization signals fused to TGF alpha HIII polypeptides can target the protein to a specific subcellular localization, while covalent heterodimer or homodimers can increase or decrease the activity of a fusion protein. Fusion proteins can also create chimeric molecules having more than one function. Finally, fusion proteins can increase solubility and/or stability of the fused protein compared to the non-fused protein. All of the types of fusion proteins described above can be made by modifying the following protocol, which outlines the fusion of a polypeptide to an IgG molecule, or the protocol described in Example 5.

Briefly, the human Fc portion of the IgG molecule can be PCR amplified, using primers that span the 5' and 3' ends of the sequence described below. These primers also should have convenient restriction enzyme sites that will facilitate cloning into an expression vector, preferably a mammalian expression vector.

For example, if pC4 (Accession No. 209646) is used, the human Fc portion can be ligated into the BamHI cloning site. Note that the 3' BamHI site should be destroyed. Next, the vector containing the human Fc portion is re-restricted with BamHI, linearizing the vector, and TGF alpha HIII polynucleotide, isolated by the PCR protocol described in Example 1, is ligated into this BamHI site. Note that the polynucleotide is cloned without a stop codon, otherwise a fusion protein will not be produced.

If the naturally occurring signal sequence is used to produce the secreted protein, pC4 does not need a second signal peptide. Alternatively, if the naturally occurring signal sequence is not used, the vector can be modified to include a heterologous signal sequence. (See, e.g., WO 96/34891.)

Human IgG Fc region:

GGGATCCGGAGCCCAAATCTTCTGACAAAACCTCACACATGCCCACCGTGCCCAGCACCTGAATTCGAGGGTGACAC  
 CGTCAGTCTTCTCTTCCCCCAAACCCAAGGACACCCTCATGATCTCCCGGACTCCTGAGGTCACATGCGTGG  
 TGGTGGACGTAAGCCACGAAGACCCTGAGGTCAAGTTCAACTGGTACGTGGACGGCGTGGAGGTGCATAATGCCA  
 AGACAAAGCCGCGGGAGGAGCAGTACAACAGCACGTACCGTGTGGTCAGCGTCCTCACCGTCCTGCACCAGGACT  
 5 GGCTGAATGGCAAGGAGTACAAGTGCAAGGTCTCCAACAAAGCCCTCCCAACCCCATCGAGAAAACCATCTCCA  
 AAGCCAAAGGGCAGCCCCGAGAACCACAGGTGTACACCCTGCCCCCATCCCGGGATGAGCTGACCAAGAACCAGG  
 TCAGCCTGACCTGCCTGGTCAAAGGCTTCTATCCAAGCGACATCGCCGTGGAGTGGGAGAGCAATGGGCAGCCGG  
 AGAACAACTACAAGACCACGCCTCCCGTGTGGACTCCGACGGCTCCTTCTTCTCTACAGCAAGCTCACCGTGG  
 ACAAGAGCAGGTGGCAGCAGGGGAACGTCTTCTCATGCTCCGTGATGCATGAGGCTCTGCACAACCACTACACGC  
 10 AGAAGAGCCTCTCCCTGTCTCCGGGTAAATGAGTGCGACGGCCGCGACTCTAGAGGAT (SEQ ID NO:4)

## Example 11: Production of an Antibody

### a) Hybridoma Technology

15 The antibodies of the present invention can be prepared by a variety of methods. (See, Current Protocols, Chapter 2.) As one example of such methods, cells expressing TGF alpha HIII are administered to an animal to induce the production of sera containing polyclonal antibodies. In a preferred method, a preparation of TGF alpha HIII protein is prepared and purified to render it substantially free of natural contaminants. Such a preparation is then  
 20 introduced into an animal in order to produce polyclonal antisera of greater specific activity.

Monoclonal antibodies specific for TGF alpha HIII protein are prepared using hybridoma technology. (Kohler et al., Nature 256:495 (1975); Kohler et al., Eur. J. Immunol. 6:511 (1976); Kohler et al., Eur. J. Immunol. 6:292 (1976); Hammerling et al., in: Monoclonal Antibodies and T-Cell Hybridomas, Elsevier, N.Y., pp. 563-681 (1981)). In  
 25 general, an animal (preferably a mouse) is immunized with TGF alpha HIII polypeptide or, more preferably, with a secreted TGF alpha HIII polypeptide-expressing cell. Such polypeptide-expressing cells are cultured in any suitable tissue culture medium, preferably in Earle's modified Eagle's medium supplemented with 10% fetal bovine serum (inactivated at about 56°C), and supplemented with about 10 g/l of nonessential amino acids, about 1,000  
 30 U/ml of penicillin, and about 100 µg/ml of streptomycin.

The splenocytes of such mice are extracted and fused with a suitable myeloma cell line. Any suitable myeloma cell line may be employed in accordance with the present invention; however, it is preferable to employ the parent myeloma cell line (SP2O), available from the ATCC. After fusion, the resulting hybridoma cells are selectively maintained in  
 35 HAT medium, and then cloned by limiting dilution as described by Wands et al.

(Gastroenterology 80:225-232 (1981)). The hybridoma cells obtained through such a selection are then assayed to identify clones which secrete antibodies capable of binding the TGF alpha HIII polypeptide.

Alternatively, additional antibodies capable of binding to TGF alpha HIII polypeptide can be produced in a two-step procedure using anti-idiotypic antibodies. Such a method makes use of the fact that antibodies are themselves antigens, and therefore, it is possible to obtain an antibody which binds to a second antibody. In accordance with this method, protein specific antibodies are used to immunize an animal, preferably a mouse. The splenocytes of such an animal are then used to produce hybridoma cells, and the hybridoma cells are screened to identify clones which produce an antibody whose ability to bind to the TGF alpha HIII protein-specific antibody can be blocked by TGF alpha HIII. Such antibodies comprise anti-idiotypic antibodies to the TGF alpha HIII protein-specific antibody and are used to immunize an animal to induce formation of further TGF alpha HIII protein-specific antibodies.

For in vivo use of antibodies in humans, an antibody is "humanized". Such antibodies can be produced using genetic constructs derived from hybridoma cells producing the monoclonal antibodies described above. Methods for producing chimeric and humanized antibodies are known in the art and are discussed herein. (See, for review, Morrison, Science 229:1202 (1985); Oi et al., BioTechniques 4:214 (1986); Cabilly et al., U.S. Patent No. 4,816,567; Taniguchi et al., EP 171496; Morrison et al., EP 173494; Neuberger et al., WO 8601533; Robinson et al., WO 8702671; Boulianne et al., Nature 312:643 (1984); Neuberger et al., Nature 314:268 (1985).)

#### **b) Isolation Of Antibody Fragments Directed Against TGF alpha HIII From A Library Of scFvs**

Naturally occurring V-genes isolated from human PBLs are constructed into a library of antibody fragments which contain reactivities against TGF alpha HIII to which the donor may or may not have been exposed (see e.g., U.S. Patent 5,885,793 incorporated herein by reference in its entirety).

*Rescue of the Library.* A library of scFvs is constructed from the RNA of human PBLs as described in PCT publication WO 92/01047. To rescue phage displaying antibody fragments, approximately 109 E. coli harboring the phagemid are used to inoculate 50 ml of



2xTY containing 1% glucose and 100 µg/ml of ampicillin (2xTY-AMP-GLU) and grown to an O.D. of 0.8 with shaking. Five ml of this culture is used to inoculate 50 ml of 2xTY-AMP-GLU,  $2 \times 10^8$  TU of delta gene 3 helper (M13 delta gene III, see PCT publication WO 92/01047) are added and the culture incubated at 37°C for 45 minutes without shaking and then at 37°C for 45 minutes with shaking. The culture is centrifuged at 4000 r.p.m. for 10 min. and the pellet resuspended in 2 liters of 2xTY containing 100 µg/ml ampicillin and 50 µg/ml kanamycin and grown overnight. Phage are prepared as described in PCT publication WO 92/01047.

M13 delta gene III is prepared as follows: M13 delta gene III helper phage does not encode gene III protein, hence the phage(mid) displaying antibody fragments have a greater avidity of binding to antigen. Infectious M13 delta gene III particles are made by growing the helper phage in cells harboring a pUC19 derivative supplying the wild type gene III protein during phage morphogenesis. The culture is incubated for 1 hour at 37°C without shaking and then for a further hour at 37°C with shaking. Cells are spun down (IEC-Centra 8,400 r.p.m. for 10 min), resuspended in 300 ml 2xTY broth containing 100 µg ampicillin/ml and 25 µg kanamycin/ml (2xTY-AMP-KAN) and grown overnight, shaking at 37°C. Phage particles are purified and concentrated from the culture medium by two PEG-precipitations (Sambrook et al., 1990), resuspended in 2 ml PBS and passed through a 0.45 µm filter (Minisart NML; Sartorius) to give a final concentration of approximately  $10^{13}$  transducing units/ml (ampicillin-resistant clones).

*Panning of the Library.* Immuntubes (Nunc) are coated overnight in PBS with 4 ml of either 100 µg/ml or 10 µg/ml of a polypeptide of the present invention. Tubes are blocked with 2% Marvel-PBS for 2 hours at 37°C and then washed 3 times in PBS. Approximately  $10^{13}$  TU of phage is applied to the tube and incubated for 30 minutes at room temperature tumbling on an over and under turntable and then left to stand for another 1.5 hours. Tubes are washed 10 times with PBS 0.1% Tween-20 and 10 times with PBS. Phage are eluted by adding 1 ml of 100 mM triethylamine and rotating 15 minutes on an under and over turntable after which the solution is immediately neutralized with 0.5 ml of 1.0M Tris-HCl, pH 7.4. Phage are then used to infect 10 ml of mid-log E. coli TG1 by incubating eluted phage with bacteria for 30 minutes at 37°C. The E. coli are then plated on TYE plates containing 1% glucose and 100 µg/ml ampicillin. The resulting bacterial library is then rescued with delta gene 3 helper phage as described above to prepare phage for a subsequent round of selection.

This process is then repeated for a total of 4 rounds of affinity purification with tube-washing increased to 20 times with PBS, 0.1% Tween-20 and 20 times with PBS for rounds 3 and 4.

*Characterization of Binders.* Eluted phage from the 3rd and 4th rounds of selection are used to infect *E. coli* HB 2151 and soluble scFv is produced (Marks, et al., 1991) from single colonies for assay. ELISAs are performed with microtitre plates coated with either 10 pg/ml of the polypeptide of the present invention in 50 mM bicarbonate pH 9.6. Clones positive in ELISA are further characterized by PCR fingerprinting (see, e.g., PCT publication WO 92/01047) and then by sequencing. These ELISA positive clones may also be further characterized by techniques known in the art, such as, for example, epitope mapping, binding affinity, receptor signal transduction, ability to block or competitively inhibit antibody/antigen binding, and competitive agonistic or antagonistic activity.

#### Example 12: Production Of TGF alpha HIII Protein For High-Throughput Screening Assays

The following protocol produces a supernatant containing TGF alpha HIII polypeptide to be tested. This supernatant can then be used in the Screening Assays described in Examples 14-21.

First, dilute Poly-D-Lysine (644 587 Boehringer-Mannheim) stock solution (1mg/ml in PBS) 1:20 in PBS (w/o calcium or magnesium 17-516F Biowhittaker) for a working solution of 50ug/ml. Add 200 ul of this solution to each well (24 well plates) and incubate at RT for 20 minutes. Be sure to distribute the solution over each well (note: a 12-channel pipetter may be used with tips on every other channel). Aspirate off the Poly-D-Lysine solution and rinse with 1ml PBS (Phosphate Buffered Saline). The PBS should remain in the well until just prior to plating the cells and plates may be poly-lysine coated in advance for up to two weeks.

Plate 293T cells (do not carry cells past P+20) at  $2 \times 10^5$  cells/well in .5ml DMEM(Dulbecco's Modified Eagle Medium)(with 4.5 G/L glucose and L-glutamine (12-604F Biowhittaker))/10% heat inactivated FBS(14-503F Biowhittaker)/1x Penstrep(17-602E Biowhittaker). Let the cells grow overnight.

The next day, mix together in a sterile solution basin: 300 ul Lipofectamine (18324-012 Gibco/BRL) and 5ml Optimem I (31985070 Gibco/BRL)/96-well plate. With a small

volume multi-channel pipetter, aliquot approximately 2ug of an expression vector containing a polynucleotide insert, produced by the methods described in Examples 8-10, into an appropriately labeled 96-well round bottom plate. With a multi-channel pipetter, add 50ul of the Lipofectamine/Optimem I mixture to each well. Pipette up and down gently to mix.

- 5 Incubate at RT 15-45 minutes. After about 20 minutes, use a multi-channel pipetter to add 150ul Optimem I to each well. As a control, one plate of vector DNA lacking an insert should be transfected with each set of transfections.

Preferably, the transfection should be performed by tag-teaming the following tasks. By tag-teaming, hands on time is cut in half, and the cells do not spend too much time on PBS. First, person A aspirates off the media from four 24-well plates of cells, and then person B rinses each well with .5-1ml PBS. Person A then aspirates off PBS rinse, and person B, using a 12-channel pipetter with tips on every other channel, adds the 200ul of DNA/Lipofectamine/Optimem I complex to the odd wells first, then to the even wells, to each row on the 24-well plates. Incubate at 37 degree C for 6 hours.

- 15 While cells are incubating, prepare appropriate media, either 1%BSA in DMEM with 1x penstrep, or HGS CHO-5 media (116.6 mg/L of  $\text{CaCl}_2$  (anhyd); 0.00130 mg/L  $\text{CuSO}_4 \cdot 5\text{H}_2\text{O}$ ; 0.050 mg/L of  $\text{Fe}(\text{NO}_3)_3 \cdot 9\text{H}_2\text{O}$ ; 0.417 mg/L of  $\text{FeSO}_4 \cdot 7\text{H}_2\text{O}$ ; 311.80 mg/L of KCl; 28.64 mg/L of  $\text{MgCl}_2$ ; 48.84 mg/L of  $\text{MgSO}_4$ ; 6995.50 mg/L of NaCl; 2400.0 mg/L of  $\text{NaHCO}_3$ ; 62.50 mg/L of  $\text{NaH}_2\text{PO}_4 \cdot \text{H}_2\text{O}$ ; 71.02 mg/L of  $\text{Na}_2\text{HPO}_4$ ; .4320 mg/L of  $\text{ZnSO}_4 \cdot 7\text{H}_2\text{O}$ ; .002 mg/L of Arachidonic Acid ; 1.022 mg/L of Cholesterol; .070 mg/L of DL-alpha-Tocopherol-Acetate; 0.0520 mg/L of Linoleic Acid; 0.010 mg/L of Linolenic Acid; 0.010 mg/L of Myristic Acid; 0.010 mg/L of Oleic Acid; 0.010 mg/L of Palmitic Acid; 0.010 mg/L of Palmitic Acid; 100 mg/L of Pluronic F-68; 0.010 mg/L of Stearic Acid; 2.20 mg/L of Tween 80; 4551 mg/L of D-Glucose; 130.85 mg/ml of L- Alanine; 147.50 mg/ml of L-Arginine-HCL; 7.50 mg/ml of L-Asparagine- $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ ; 6.65 mg/ml of L-Aspartic Acid; 29.56 mg/ml of L-Cystine-2HCL- $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ ; 31.29 mg/ml of L-Cystine-2HCL; 7.35 mg/ml of L-Glutamic Acid; 365.0 mg/ml of L-Glutamine; 18.75 mg/ml of Glycine; 52.48 mg/ml of L-Histidine-HCL- $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ ; 106.97 mg/ml of L-Isoleucine; 111.45 mg/ml of L-Leucine; 163.75 mg/ml of L-Lysine HCL; 32.34 mg/ml of L-Methionine; 68.48 mg/ml of L-Phenylalanine; 40.0 mg/ml of L-Proline; 26.25 mg/ml of L-Serine; 101.05 mg/ml of L-Threonine; 19.22
- 20
- 25
- 30

mg/ml of L-Tryptophan; 91.79 mg/ml of L-Tyrosine-2Na-2H<sub>2</sub>O; and 99.65 mg/ml of L-Valine; 0.0035 mg/L of Biotin; 3.24 mg/L of D-Ca Pantothenate; 11.78 mg/L of Choline Chloride; 4.65 mg/L of Folic Acid; 15.60 mg/L of i-Inositol; 3.02 mg/L of Niacinamide; 3.00 mg/L of Pyridoxal HCL; 0.031 mg/L of Pyridoxine HCL; 0.319 mg/L of Riboflavin; 3.17 mg/L of Thiamine HCL; 0.365 mg/L of Thymidine; 0.680 mg/L of Vitamin B<sub>12</sub>; 25 mM of HEPES Buffer; 2.39 mg/L of Na Hypoxanthine; 0.105 mg/L of Lipoic Acid; 0.081 mg/L of Sodium Putrescine-2HCL; 55.0 mg/L of Sodium Pyruvate; 0.0067 mg/L of Sodium Selenite; 20uM of Ethanolamine; 0.122 mg/L of Ferric Citrate; 41.70 mg/L of Methyl-B-Cyclodextrin complexed with Linoleic Acid; 33.33 mg/L of Methyl-B-Cyclodextrin complexed with Oleic Acid; 10 mg/L of Methyl-B-Cyclodextrin complexed with Retinal Acetate. Adjust osmolarity to 327 mOsm) with 2mm glutamine and 1x penstrep. (BSA (81-068-3 Bayer) 100gm dissolved in 1L DMEM for a 10% BSA stock solution). Filter the media and collect 50 ul for endotoxin assay in 15ml polystyrene conical.

The transfection reaction is terminated, preferably by tag-teaming, at the end of the incubation period. Person A aspirates off the transfection media, while person B adds 1.5ml appropriate media to each well. Incubate at 37 degree C for 45 or 72 hours depending on the media used: 1%BSA for 45 hours or CHO-5 for 72 hours.

On day four, using a 300ul multichannel pipetter, aliquot 600ul in one 1ml deep well plate and the remaining supernatant into a 2ml deep well. The supernatants from each well can then be used in the assays described in Examples 14-21.

It is specifically understood that when activity is obtained in any of the assays described below using a supernatant, the activity originates from either the TGF alpha HIII polypeptide directly (e.g., as a secreted protein) or by TGF alpha HIII inducing expression of other proteins, which are then secreted into the supernatant. Thus, the invention further provides a method of identifying the protein in the supernatant characterized by an activity in a particular assay.

### Example 13: Construction of GAS Reporter Construct

One signal transduction pathway involved in the differentiation and proliferation of cells is called the Jaks-STATs pathway. Activated proteins in the Jaks-STATs pathway bind to gamma activation site "GAS" elements or interferon-sensitive responsive element

("ISRE"), located in the promoter of many genes. The binding of a protein to these elements alter the expression of the associated gene.

GAS and ISRE elements are recognized by a class of transcription factors called Signal Transducers and Activators of Transcription, or "STATs." There are six members of the STATs family. Stat1 and Stat3 are present in many cell types, as is Stat2 (as response to IFN-alpha is widespread). Stat4 is more restricted and is not in many cell types though it has been found in T helper class I, cells after treatment with IL-12. Stat5 was originally called mammary growth factor, but has been found at higher concentrations in other cells including myeloid cells. It can be activated in tissue culture cells by many cytokines.

The STATs are activated to translocate from the cytoplasm to the nucleus upon tyrosine phosphorylation by a set of kinases known as the Janus Kinase ("Jaks") family. Jaks represent a distinct family of soluble tyrosine kinases and include Tyk2, Jak1, Jak2, and Jak3. These kinases display significant sequence similarity and are generally catalytically inactive in resting cells.

The Jaks are activated by a wide range of receptors summarized in the Table below. (Adapted from review by Schidler and Darnell, *Ann. Rev. Biochem.* 64:621-51 (1995).) A cytokine receptor family, capable of activating Jaks, is divided into two groups: (a) Class 1 includes receptors for IL-2, IL-3, IL-4, IL-6, IL-7, IL-9, IL-11, IL-12, IL-15, Epo, PRL, GH, G-CSF, GM-CSF, LIF, CNTF, and thrombopoietin; and (b) Class 2 includes IFN-a, IFN-g, and IL-10. The Class 1 receptors share a conserved cysteine motif (a set of four conserved cysteines and one tryptophan) and a WSXWS motif (a membrane proximal region encoding Trp-Ser-Xaa-Trp-Ser (SEQ ID NO:5)).

Thus, on binding of a ligand to a receptor, Jaks are activated, which in turn activate STATs, which then translocate and bind to GAS elements. This entire process is encompassed in the Jaks-STATs signal transduction pathway.

Therefore, activation of the Jaks-STATs pathway, reflected by the binding of the GAS or the ISRE element, can be used to indicate proteins involved in the proliferation and differentiation of cells. For example, growth factors and cytokines are known to activate the Jaks-STATs pathway. (See Table below.) Thus, by using GAS elements linked to reporter molecules, activators of the Jaks-STATs pathway can be identified.

	<u>Ligand</u>	<u>tyk2</u>	<u>JAKs</u> <u>Jak1</u>	<u>Jak2</u>	<u>Jak3</u>	<u>STATS</u>	<u>GAS(elements) or ISRE</u>
	<u>IFN family</u>						
5	IFN-a/B	+	+	-	-	1,2,3	ISRE
	IFN-g		+	+	-	1	GAS (IRF1>Lys6>IFP)
	Il-10	+	?	?	-	1,3	
	<u>gp130 family</u>						
10	IL-6 (Pleiotrohic)	+	+	+	?	1,3	GAS (IRF1>Lys6>IFP)
	Il-11(Pleiotrohic)	?	+	?	?	1,3	
	OnM(Pleiotrohic)	?	+	+	?	1,3	
	LIF(Pleiotrohic)	?	+	+	?	1,3	
	CNTF(Pleiotrohic)	-/+	+	+	?	1,3	
15	G-CSF(Pleiotrohic)	?	+	?	?	1,3	
	IL-12(Pleiotrohic)	+	-	+	+	1,3	
	<u>g-C family</u>						
20	IL-2 (lymphocytes)	-	+	-	+	1,3,5	GAS
	IL-4 (lymph/myeloid)	-	+	-	+	6	GAS (IRF1 = IFP
	>>Ly6)(IgH)						
	IL-7 (lymphocytes)	-	+	-	+	5	GAS
	IL-9 (lymphocytes)	-	+	-	+	5	GAS
	IL-13 (lymphocyte)	-	+	?	?	6	GAS
25	IL-15	?	+	?	+	5	GAS
	<u>gp140 family</u>						
	IL-3 (myeloid)	-	-	+	-	5	GAS (IRF1>IFP>>Ly6)
	IL-5 (myeloid)	-	-	+	-	5	GAS
30	GM-CSF (myeloid)	-	-	+	-	5	GAS
	<u>Growth hormone family</u>						
	GH	?	-	+	-	5	
	PRL	?	+/-	+	-	1,3,5	
35	EPO	?	-	+	-	5	GAS(B-
	CAS>IRF1=IFP>>Ly6)						
	<u>Receptor Tyrosine Kinases</u>						
	EGF	?	+	+	-	1,3	GAS (IRF1)
40	PDGF	?	+	+	-	1,3	
	CSF-1	?	+	+	-	1,3	GAS (not IRF1)

To construct a synthetic GAS containing promoter element, which is used in the Biological Assays described in Examples 14-15, a PCR based strategy is employed to generate a GAS-SV40 promoter sequence. The 5' primer contains four tandem copies of the

GAS binding site found in the IRF1 promoter and previously demonstrated to bind STATs upon induction with a range of cytokines (Rothman et al., Immunity 1:457-468 (1994).), although other GAS or ISRE elements can be used instead. The 5' primer also contains 18bp of sequence complementary to the SV40 early promoter sequence and is flanked with an XhoI site. The sequence of the 5' primer is:

5':GCGCCTCGAGATTTCCTCCGAAATCTAGATTTCCTCCGAAATGATTTCCTCCGAAATGATTTCCTCCGAAATATCTGCCATCTCAATTAG:3' (SEQ ID NO:6)

The downstream primer is complementary to the SV40 promoter and is flanked with a Hind III site: 5':GCGGCAAGCTTTTGGCAAAGCCTAGGC:3' (SEQ ID NO:7)

PCR amplification is performed using the SV40 promoter template present in the B-gal:promoter plasmid obtained from Clontech. The resulting PCR fragment is digested with XhoI/Hind III and subcloned into BLSK2-. (Stratagene.) Sequencing with forward and reverse primers confirms that the insert contains the following sequence:

5':CTCGAGATTTCCTCCGAAATCTAGATTTCCTCCGAAATGATTTCCTCCGAAATATCTGCCATCTCAATTAGTCAGCAACCATAGTCCCGCCCCTAACTCCGCCCATCCCGCCCCTAACTCCGCCCAGTTCCGCCCATTCTCCGCCCCATGGCTGACTAATTTTTTTTATTTATGCAGAGGCCGAGGCCGCTCGGCCTCTGAGCTATTCAGAAAGTAGTGAGGAGGCTTTTTTGGAGGCCTAGGCTTTTGCAAAAAGCTT:3' (SEQ ID NO:8)

With this GAS promoter element linked to the SV40 promoter, a GAS:SEAP2 reporter construct is next engineered. Here, the reporter molecule is a secreted alkaline phosphatase, or "SEAP." Clearly, however, any reporter molecule can be instead of SEAP, in this or in any of the other Examples. Well known reporter molecules that can be used instead of SEAP include chloramphenicol acetyltransferase (CAT), luciferase, alkaline phosphatase, B-galactosidase, green fluorescent protein (GFP), or any protein detectable by an antibody.

The above sequence confirmed synthetic GAS-SV40 promoter element is subcloned into the pSEAP-Promoter vector obtained from Clontech using HindIII and XhoI, effectively replacing the SV40 promoter with the amplified GAS:SV40 promoter element, to create the GAS-SEAP vector. However, this vector does not contain a neomycin resistance gene, and therefore, is not preferred for mammalian expression systems.

Thus, in order to generate mammalian stable cell lines expressing the GAS-SEAP reporter, the GAS-SEAP cassette is removed from the GAS-SEAP vector using SalI and

NotI, and inserted into a backbone vector containing the neomycin resistance gene, such as pGFP-1 (Clontech), using these restriction sites in the multiple cloning site, to create the GAS-SEAP/Neo vector. Once this vector is transfected into mammalian cells, this vector can then be used as a reporter molecule for GAS binding as described in Examples 14-15.

5 Other constructs can be made using the above description and replacing GAS with a different promoter sequence. For example, construction of reporter molecules containing NFK-B and EGR promoter sequences are described in Examples 16 and 17. However, many other promoters can be substituted using the protocols described in these Examples. For instance, SRE, IL-2, NFAT, or Osteocalcin promoters can be substituted, alone or in  
10 combination (e.g., GAS/NF-KB/EGR, GAS/NF-KB, IL-2/NFAT, or NF-KB/GAS). Similarly, other cell lines can be used to test reporter construct activity, such as HELA (epithelial), HUVEC (endothelial), Reh (B-cell), Saos-2 (osteoblast), HUVAC (aortic), or Cardiomyocyte.

#### 15 Example 14: High-Throughput Screening Assay for T-cell Activity.

The following protocol is used to assess T-cell activity by identifying factors, and determining whether supernate containing a polypeptide of the invention proliferates and/or differentiates T-cells. T-cell activity is assessed using the GAS/SEAP/Neo construct  
20 produced in Example 13. Thus, factors that increase SEAP activity indicate the ability to activate the Jaks-STATS signal transduction pathway. The T-cell used in this assay is Jurkat T-cells (ATCC Accession No. TIB-152), although Molt-3 cells (ATCC Accession No. CRL-1552) and Molt-4 cells (ATCC Accession No. CRL-1582) cells can also be used.

Jurkat T-cells are lymphoblastic CD4+ Th1 helper cells. In order to generate stable  
25 cell lines, approximately 2 million Jurkat cells are transfected with the GAS-SEAP/neo vector using DMRIE-C (Life Technologies)(transfection procedure described below). The transfected cells are seeded to a density of approximately 20,000 cells per well and transfectants resistant to 1 mg/ml gentamicin selected. Resistant colonies are expanded and then tested for their response to increasing concentrations of interferon gamma. The dose response  
30 of a selected clone is demonstrated.

Specifically, the following protocol will yield sufficient cells for 75 wells containing 200 ul of cells. Thus, it is either scaled up, or performed in multiple to generate sufficient



cells for multiple 96 well plates. Jurkat cells are maintained in RPMI + 10% serum with 1%Pen-Strep. Combine 2.5 mls of OPTI-MEM (Life Technologies) with 10 ug of plasmid DNA in a T25 flask. Add 2.5 ml OPTI-MEM containing 50 ul of DMRIE-C and incubate at room temperature for 15-45 mins.

5 During the incubation period, count cell concentration, spin down the required number of cells ( $10^7$  per transfection), and resuspend in OPTI-MEM to a final concentration of  $10^7$  cells/ml. Then add 1ml of  $1 \times 10^7$  cells in OPTI-MEM to T25 flask and incubate at 37 degree C for 6 hrs. After the incubation, add 10 ml of RPMI + 15% serum.

10 The Jurkat:GAS-SEAP stable reporter lines are maintained in RPMI + 10% serum, 1 mg/ml Genticin, and 1% Pen-Strep. These cells are treated with supernatants containing TGF alpha HIII polypeptides or TGF alpha HIII induced polypeptides as produced by the protocol described in Example 12.

15 On the day of treatment with the supernatant, the cells should be washed and resuspended in fresh RPMI + 10% serum to a density of 500,000 cells per ml. The exact number of cells required will depend on the number of supernatants being screened. For one 96 well plate, approximately 10 million cells (for 10 plates, 100 million cells) are required.

Transfer the cells to a triangular reservoir boat, in order to dispense the cells into a 96 well dish, using a 12 channel pipette. Using a 12 channel pipette, transfer 200 ul of cells into each well (therefore adding 100, 000 cells per well).

20 After all the plates have been seeded, 50 ul of the supernatants are transferred directly from the 96 well plate containing the supernatants into each well using a 12 channel pipette. In addition, a dose of exogenous interferon gamma (0.1, 1.0, 10 ng) is added to wells H9, H10, and H11 to serve as additional positive controls for the assay.

25 The 96 well dishes containing Jurkat cells treated with supernatants are placed in an incubator for 48 hrs (note: this time is variable between 48-72 hrs). 35 ul samples from each well are then transferred to an opaque 96 well plate using a 12 channel pipette. The opaque plates should be covered (using sellophene covers) and stored at -20 degree C until SEAP assays are performed according to Example 18. The plates containing the remaining treated cells are placed at 4 degree C and serve as a source of material for repeating the assay on a  
30 specific well if desired.

As a positive control, 100 Unit/ml interferon gamma can be used which is known to activate Jurkat T cells. Over 30 fold induction is typically observed in the positive control wells.

The above protocol may be used in the generation of both transient, as well as, stable  
5 transfected cells, which would be apparent to those of skill in the art.

CONFIDENTIAL

### Example 15: High-Throughput Screening Assay Identifying Myeloid Activity

The following protocol is used to assess myeloid activity of TGF alpha HIII by determining whether TGF alpha HIII proliferates and/or differentiates myeloid cells. Myeloid cell activity is assessed using the GAS/SEAP/Neo construct produced in Example 13. Thus, factors that increase SEAP activity indicate the ability to activate the Jaks-STATS signal transduction pathway. The myeloid cell used in this assay is U937, a pre-monocyte cell line, although TF-1, HL60, or KG1 can be used.

To transiently transfect U937 cells with the GAS/SEAP/Neo construct produced in Example 13, a DEAE-Dextran method (Kharbanda et. al., 1994, Cell Growth & Differentiation, 5:259-265) is used. First, harvest  $2 \times 10^7$  U937 cells and wash with PBS. The U937 cells are usually grown in RPMI 1640 medium containing 10% heat-inactivated fetal bovine serum (FBS) supplemented with 100 units/ml penicillin and 100 mg/ml streptomycin.

Next, suspend the cells in 1 ml of 20 mM Tris-HCl (pH 7.4) buffer containing 0.5 mg/ml DEAE-Dextran, 8 ug GAS-SEAP2 plasmid DNA, 140 mM NaCl, 5 mM KCl, 375 uM  $\text{Na}_2\text{HPO}_4 \cdot 7\text{H}_2\text{O}$ , 1 mM  $\text{MgCl}_2$ , and 675 uM  $\text{CaCl}_2$ . Incubate at 37 degrees C for 45 min.

Wash the cells with RPMI 1640 medium containing 10% FBS and then resuspend in 10 ml complete medium and incubate at 37 degree C for 36 hr.

The GAS-SEAP/U937 stable cells are obtained by growing the cells in 400 ug/ml G418. The G418-free medium is used for routine growth but every one to two months, the cells should be re-grown in 400 ug/ml G418 for couple of passages.

These cells are tested by harvesting  $1 \times 10^8$  cells (this is enough for ten 96-well plates assay) and wash with PBS. Suspend the cells in 200 ml above described growth medium, with a final density of  $5 \times 10^5$  cells/ml. Plate 200 ul cells per well in the 96-well plate (or  $1 \times 10^5$  cells/well).

Add 50 ul of the supernatant prepared by the protocol described in Example 12. Incubate at 37 degree C for 48 to 72 hr. As a positive control, 100 Unit/ml interferon gamma can be used which is known to activate U937 cells. Over 30 fold induction is typically observed in the positive control wells. SEAP assay the supernatant according to the protocol described in Example 18.

### Example 16: High-Throughput Screening Assay Identifying Neuronal Activity.

5           When cells undergo differentiation and proliferation, a group of genes are activated through many different signal transduction pathways. One of these genes, EGR1 (early growth response gene 1), is induced in various tissues and cell types upon activation. The promoter of EGR1 is responsible for such induction. Using the EGR1 promoter linked to reporter molecules, activation of cells can be assessed by TGF alpha HIII.

10           Particularly, the following protocol is used to assess neuronal activity in PC12 cell lines. PC12 cells (rat phenochromocytoma cells) are known to proliferate and/or differentiate by activation with a number of mitogens, such as TPA (tetradecanoyl phorbol acetate), NGF (nerve growth factor), and EGF (epidermal growth factor). The EGR1 gene expression is activated during this treatment. Thus, by stably transfecting PC12 cells with a construct  
15           containing an EGR promoter linked to SEAP reporter, activation of PC12 cells by TGF alpha HIII can be assessed.

          The EGR/SEAP reporter construct can be assembled by the following protocol. The EGR-1 promoter sequence (-633 to +1)(Sakamoto K et al., Oncogene 6:867-871 (1991)) can be PCR amplified from human genomic DNA using the following primers:

20           5' GCGCTCGAGGGATGACAGCGATAGAACCCCGG -3' (SEQ ID NO:9)

          5' GCGAAGCTTCGCGACTCCCCGGATCCGCCTC-3' (SEQ ID NO:10)

          Using the GAS:SEAP/Neo vector produced in Example 13, EGR1 amplified product can then be inserted into this vector. Linearize the GAS:SEAP/Neo vector using restriction enzymes XhoI/HindIII, removing the GAS/SV40 stuffer. Restrict the EGR1 amplified  
25           product with these same enzymes. Ligate the vector and the EGR1 promoter.

          To prepare 96 well-plates for cell culture, two mls of a coating solution (1:30 dilution of collagen type I (Upstate Biotech Inc. Cat#08-115) in 30% ethanol (filter sterilized)) is added per one 10 cm plate or 50 ml per well of the 96-well plate, and allowed to air dry for 2 hr.

30           PC12 cells are routinely grown in RPMI-1640 medium (Bio Whittaker) containing 10% horse serum (JRH BIOSCIENCES, Cat. # 12449-78P), 5% heat-inactivated fetal bovine serum (FBS) supplemented with 100 units/ml penicillin and 100 ug/ml streptomycin on a

precoated 10 cm tissue culture dish. One to four split is done every three to four days. Cells are removed from the plates by scraping and resuspended with pipetting up and down for more than 15 times.

Transfect the EGR/SEAP/Neo construct into PC12 using the Lipofectamine protocol described in Example 12. EGR-SEAP/PC12 stable cells are obtained by growing the cells in 300 ug/ml G418. The G418-free medium is used for routine growth but every one to two months, the cells should be re-grown in 300 ug/ml G418 for couple of passages.

To assay for neuronal activity, a 10 cm plate with cells around 70 to 80% confluent is screened by removing the old medium. Wash the cells once with PBS (Phosphate buffered saline). Then starve the cells in low serum medium (RPMI-1640 containing 1% horse serum and 0.5% FBS with antibiotics) overnight.

The next morning, remove the medium and wash the cells with PBS. Scrape off the cells from the plate, suspend the cells well in 2 ml low serum medium. Count the cell number and add more low serum medium to reach final cell density as  $5 \times 10^5$  cells/ml.

Add 200 ul of the cell suspension to each well of 96-well plate (equivalent to  $1 \times 10^5$  cells/well). Add 50 ul supernatant produced by Example 12, 37 degree C for 48 to 72 hr. As a positive control, a growth factor known to activate PC12 cells through EGR can be used, such as 50 ng/ul of Neuronal Growth Factor (NGF). Over fifty-fold induction of SEAP is typically seen in the positive control wells. SEAP assay the supernatant according to Example 18.

### Example 17: High-Throughput Screening Assay for T-cell Activity

NF-KB (Nuclear Factor KB) is a transcription factor activated by a wide variety of agents including the inflammatory cytokines IL-1 and TNF, CD30 and CD40, lymphotoxin-alpha and lymphotoxin-beta, by exposure to LPS or thrombin, and by expression of certain viral gene products. As a transcription factor, NF-KB regulates the expression of genes involved in immune cell activation, control of apoptosis (NF- KB appears to shield cells from apoptosis), B and T-cell development, anti-viral and antimicrobial responses, and multiple stress responses.

In non-stimulated conditions, NF- KB is retained in the cytoplasm with I-KB (Inhibitor KB). However, upon stimulation, I- KB is phosphorylated and degraded, causing

NF- KB to shuttle to the nucleus, thereby activating transcription of target genes. Target genes activated by NF- KB include IL-2, IL-6, GM-CSF, ICAM-1 and class 1 MHC.

Due to its central role and ability to respond to a range of stimuli, reporter constructs utilizing the NF-KB promoter element are used to screen the supernatants produced in Example 12. Activators or inhibitors of NF-KB would be useful in treating diseases. For example, inhibitors of NF-KB could be used to treat those diseases related to the acute or chronic activation of NF-KB, such as rheumatoid arthritis.

To construct a vector containing the NF-KB promoter element, a PCR based strategy is employed. The upstream primer contains four tandem copies of the NF-KB binding site (GGGGACTTTCCC) (SEQ ID NO:11), 18 bp of sequence complementary to the 5' end of the SV40 early promoter sequence, and is flanked with an XhoI site:

5':GCGGCCTCGAGGGGACTTTCCCGGGGACTTTCCGGGGACTTTCCGGGACTTTC  
CATCCTGCCATCTCAATTAG:3' (SEQ ID NO:12)

The downstream primer is complementary to the 3' end of the SV40 promoter and is flanked with a Hind III site:

5':GCGGCAAGCTTTTTTGCAAAGCCTAGGC:3' (SEQ ID NO:7)

PCR amplification is performed using the SV40 promoter template present in the pB-gal:promoter plasmid obtained from Clontech. The resulting PCR fragment is digested with XhoI and Hind III and subcloned into BLSK2-. (Stratagene) Sequencing with the T7 and T3 primers confirms the insert contains the following sequence:

5':CTCGAGGGGACTTTCCCGGGGACTTTCCGGGGACTTTCCGGGACTTTCCATCTG  
CCATCTCAATTAGTCAGCAACCATAGTCCCGCCCCTAACTCCGCCCATCCCGCCC  
CTAACTCCGCCCAGTTCCGCCCATTCTCCGCCCCATGGCTGACTAATTTTTTTTAT  
TTATGCAGAGGCCGAGGCCGCTCGGCCTCTGAGCTATTCCAGAAGTAGTGAGG  
AGGCTTTTTTGGAGGCCTAGGCTTTTGCAAAAAGCTT:3' (SEQ ID NO:13)

Next, replace the SV40 minimal promoter element present in the pSEAP2-promoter plasmid (Clontech) with this NF-KB/SV40 fragment using XhoI and HindIII. However, this vector does not contain a neomycin resistance gene, and therefore, is not preferred for mammalian expression systems.

In order to generate stable mammalian cell lines, the NF-KB/SV40/SEAP cassette is removed from the above NF-KB/SEAP vector using restriction enzymes SalI and NotI, and inserted into a vector containing neomycin resistance. Particularly, the NF-KB/SV40/SEAP

cassette was inserted into pGFP-1 (Clontech), replacing the GFP gene, after restricting pGFP-1 with SalI and NotI.

Once NF-KB/SV40/SEAP/Neo vector is created, stable Jurkat T-cells are created and maintained according to the protocol described in Example 14. Similarly, the method for assaying supernatants with these stable Jurkat T-cells is also described in Example 14. As a positive control, exogenous TNF alpha (0.1, 1, 10 ng) is added to wells H9, H10, and H11, with a 5-10 fold activation typically observed.

### Example 18: Assay for SEAP Activity

As a reporter molecule for the assays described in Examples 14-17, SEAP activity is assayed using the Tropix Phospho-light Kit (Cat. BP-400) according to the following general procedure. The Tropix Phospho-light Kit supplies the Dilution, Assay, and Reaction Buffers used below.

Prime a dispenser with the 2.5x Dilution Buffer and dispense 15 ul of 2.5x dilution buffer into Optiplates containing 35 ul of a supernatant. Seal the plates with a plastic sealer and incubate at 65 degree C for 30 min. Separate the Optiplates to avoid uneven heating.

Cool the samples to room temperature for 15 minutes. Empty the dispenser and prime with the Assay Buffer. Add 50 ml Assay Buffer and incubate at room temperature 5 min. Empty the dispenser and prime with the Reaction Buffer (see the table below). Add 50 ul Reaction Buffer and incubate at room temperature for 20 minutes. Since the intensity of the chemiluminescent signal is time dependent, and it takes about 10 minutes to read 5 plates on luminometer, one should treat 5 plates at each time and start the second set 10 minutes later.

Read the relative light unit in the luminometer. Set H12 as blank, and print the results. An increase in chemiluminescence indicates reporter activity.

#### Reaction Buffer Formulation:

# of plates	Rxn buffer diluent (ml)	CSPD (ml)
10	60	3
11	65	3.25
12	70	3.5
13	75	3.75
14	80	4

15	85	4.25
16	90	4.5
17	95	4.75
18	100	5
19	105	5.25
20	110	5.5
21	115	5.75
22	120	6
23	125	6.25
24	130	6.5
25	135	6.75
26	140	7
27	145	7.25
28	150	7.5
29	155	7.75
30	160	8
31	165	8.25
32	170	8.5
33	175	8.75
34	180	9
35	185	9.25
36	190	9.5
37	195	9.75
38	200	10
39	205	10.25
40	210	10.5
41	215	10.75
42	220	11
43	225	11.25
44	230	11.5
45	235	11.75
46	240	12
47	245	12.25
48	250	12.5
49	255	12.75
50	260	13

---

COPIES OF THIS REPORT



### Example 19: High-Throughput Screening Assay Identifying Changes in Small Molecule Concentration and Membrane Permeability

Binding of a ligand to a receptor is known to alter intracellular levels of small molecules, such as calcium, potassium, sodium, and pH, as well as alter membrane potential. These alterations can be measured in an assay to identify supernatants which bind to receptors of a particular cell. Although the following protocol describes an assay for calcium, this protocol can easily be modified to detect changes in potassium, sodium, pH, membrane potential, or any other small molecule which is detectable by a fluorescent probe.

The following assay uses Fluorometric Imaging Plate Reader ("FLIPR") to measure changes in fluorescent molecules (Molecular Probes) that bind small molecules. Clearly, any fluorescent molecule detecting a small molecule can be used instead of the calcium fluorescent molecule, fluo-4 (Molecular Probes, Inc.; catalog no. F-14202), used here.

For adherent cells, seed the cells at 10,000 -20,000 cells/well in a Co-star black 96-well plate with clear bottom. The plate is incubated in a CO<sub>2</sub> incubator for 20 hours. The adherent cells are washed two times in Biotek washer with 200 ul of HBSS (Hank's Balanced Salt Solution) leaving 100 ul of buffer after the final wash.

A stock solution of 1 mg/ml fluo-4 is made in 10% pluronic acid DMSO. To load the cells with fluo-4, 50 ul of 12 ug/ml fluo-4 is added to each well. The plate is incubated at 37 degrees C in a CO<sub>2</sub> incubator for 60 min. The plate is washed four times in the Biotek washer with HBSS leaving 100 ul of buffer.

For non-adherent cells, the cells are spun down from culture media. Cells are resuspended to  $2-5 \times 10^6$  cells/ml with HBSS in a 50-ml conical tube. 4 ul of 1 mg/ml fluo-4 solution in 10% pluronic acid DMSO is added to each ml of cell suspension. The tube is then placed in a 37 degrees C water bath for 30-60 min. The cells are washed twice with HBSS, resuspended to  $1 \times 10^6$  cells/ml, and dispensed into a microplate, 100 ul/well. The plate is centrifuged at 1000 rpm for 5 min. The plate is then washed once in Denley CellWash with 200 ul, followed by an aspiration step to 100 ul final volume.

For a non-cell based assay, each well contains a fluorescent molecule, such as fluo-4. The supernatant is added to the well, and a change in fluorescence is detected.

To measure the fluorescence of intracellular calcium, the FLIPR is set for the following parameters: (1) System gain is 300-800 mW; (2) Exposure time is 0.4 second; (3)

Camera F/stop is F/2; (4) Excitation is 488 nm; (5) Emission is 530 nm; and (6) Sample addition is 50 ul. Increased emission at 530 nm indicates an extracellular signaling event caused by the a molecule, either TGF alpha HIII or a molecule induced by TGF alpha HIII, which has resulted in an increase in the intracellular  $\text{Ca}^{++}$  concentration.

5

## Example 20: High-Throughput Screening Assay Identifying Tyrosine Kinase Activity

The Protein Tyrosine Kinases (PTK) represent a diverse group of transmembrane and cytoplasmic kinases. Within the Receptor Protein Tyrosine Kinase (RPTK) group are receptors for a range of mitogenic and metabolic growth factors including the PDGF, FGF, EGF, NGF, HGF and Insulin receptor subfamilies. In addition there are a large family of RPTKs for which the corresponding ligand is unknown. Ligands for RPTKs include mainly secreted small proteins, but also membrane-bound and extracellular matrix proteins.

Activation of RPTK by ligands involves ligand-mediated receptor dimerization, resulting in transphosphorylation of the receptor subunits and activation of the cytoplasmic tyrosine kinases. The cytoplasmic tyrosine kinases include receptor associated tyrosine kinases of the src-family (e.g., src, yes, lck, lyn, fyn) and non-receptor linked and cytosolic protein tyrosine kinases, such as the Jak family, members of which mediate signal transduction triggered by the cytokine superfamily of receptors (e.g., the Interleukins, Interferons, GM-CSF, and Leptin).

Because of the wide range of known factors capable of stimulating tyrosine kinase activity, identifying whether TGF alpha HIII or a molecule induced by TGF alpha HIII is capable of activating tyrosine kinase signal transduction pathways is of interest. Therefore, the following protocol is designed to identify such molecules capable of activating the tyrosine kinase signal transduction pathways.

Seed target cells (e.g., primary keratinocytes) at a density of approximately 25,000 cells per well in a 96 well Loprodyne Silent Screen Plates purchased from Nalge Nunc (Naperville, IL). The plates are sterilized with two 30 minute rinses with 100% ethanol, rinsed with water and dried overnight. Some plates are coated for 2 hr with 100 ml of cell culture grade type I collagen (50 mg/ml), gelatin (2%) or polylysine (50 mg/ml), all of which can be purchased from Sigma Chemicals (St. Louis, MO) or 10% Matrigel purchased from

Becton Dickinson (Bedford,MA), or calf serum, rinsed with PBS and stored at 4 degree C. Cell growth on these plates is assayed by seeding 5,000 cells/well in growth medium and indirect quantitation of cell number through use of alamarBlue as described by the manufacturer Alamar Biosciences, Inc. (Sacramento, CA) after 48 hr. Falcon plate covers  
5 #3071 from Becton Dickinson (Bedford,MA) are used to cover the Loprodyne Silent Screen Plates. Falcon Microtest III cell culture plates can also be used in some proliferation experiments.

To prepare extracts, A431 cells are seeded onto the nylon membranes of Loprodyne plates (20,000/200ml/well) and cultured overnight in complete medium. Cells are quiesced  
10 by incubation in serum-free basal medium for 24 hr. After 5-20 minutes treatment with EGF (60ng/ml) or 50 ul of the supernatant produced in Example 12, the medium was removed and 100 ml of extraction buffer ((20 mM HEPES pH 7.5, 0.15 M NaCl, 1% Triton X-100, 0.1% SDS, 2 mM Na<sub>3</sub>VO<sub>4</sub>, 2 mM Na<sub>4</sub>P<sub>2</sub>O<sub>7</sub> and a cocktail of protease inhibitors (# 1836170) obtained from Boehringer Mannheim (Indianapolis, IN) is added to each well and the plate  
15 is shaken on a rotating shaker for 5 minutes at 4°C. The plate is then placed in a vacuum transfer manifold and the extract filtered through the 0.45 mm membrane bottoms of each well using house vacuum. Extracts are collected in a 96-well catch/assay plate in the bottom of the vacuum manifold and immediately placed on ice. To obtain extracts clarified by centrifugation, the content of each well, after detergent solubilization for 5 minutes, is  
20 removed and centrifuged for 15 minutes at 4 degree C at 16,000 x g.

Test the filtered extracts for levels of tyrosine kinase activity. Although many methods of detecting tyrosine kinase activity are known, one method is described here.

Generally, the tyrosine kinase activity of a supernatant is evaluated by determining its ability to phosphorylate a tyrosine residue on a specific substrate (a biotinylated peptide).  
25 Biotinylated peptides that can be used for this purpose include PSK1 (corresponding to amino acids 6-20 of the cell division kinase cdc2-p34) and PSK2 (corresponding to amino acids 1-17 of gastrin). Both peptides are substrates for a range of tyrosine kinases and are available from Boehringer Mannheim.

The tyrosine kinase reaction is set up by adding the following components in order.  
30 First, add 10ul of 5uM Biotinylated Peptide, then 10ul ATP/Mg<sub>2</sub><sup>+</sup> (5mM ATP/50mM MgCl<sub>2</sub>), then 10ul of 5x Assay Buffer (40mM imidazole hydrochloride, pH7.3, 40 mM beta-

glycerophosphate, 1mM EGTA, 100mM MgCl<sub>2</sub>, 5 mM MnCl<sub>2</sub>, 0.5 mg/ml BSA), then 5ul of Sodium Vanadate(1mM), and then 5ul of water. Mix the components gently and preincubate the reaction mix at 30 degree C for 2 min. Initial the reaction by adding 10ul of the control enzyme or the filtered supernatant.

5       The tyrosine kinase assay reaction is then terminated by adding 10 ul of 120mM EDTA and place the reactions on ice.

10       Tyrosine kinase activity is determined by transferring 50 ul aliquot of reaction mixture to a microtiter plate (MTP) module and incubating at 37 degree C for 20 min. This allows the streptavidin coated 96 well plate to associate with the biotinylated peptide. Wash the MTP module with 300ul/well of PBS four times. Next add 75 ul of anti-phosphotyrosine antibody conjugated to horse radish peroxidase(anti-P-Tyr-POD(0.5u/ml)) to each well and incubate at 37 degree C for one hour. Wash the well as above.

15       Next add 100ul of peroxidase substrate solution (Boehringer Mannheim) and incubate at room temperature for at least 5 mins (up to 30 min). Measure the absorbance of the sample at 405 nm by using ELISA reader. The level of bound peroxidase activity is quantitated using an ELISA reader and reflects the level of tyrosine kinase activity.

### Example 21: High-Throughput Screening Assay Identifying Phosphorylation Activity

20       As a potential alternative and/or compliment to the assay of protein tyrosine kinase activity described in Example 20, an assay which detects activation (phosphorylation) of major intracellular signal transduction intermediates can also be used. For example, as described below one particular assay can detect tyrosine phosphorylation of the Erk-1 and Erk-2 kinases. However, phosphorylation of other molecules, such as Raf, JNK, p38 MAP, Map kinase kinase (MEK), MEK kinase, Src, Muscle specific kinase (MuSK), IRAK, Tec, and Janus, as well as any other phosphoserine, phosphotyrosine, or phosphothreonine molecule, can be detected by substituting these molecules for Erk-1 or Erk-2 in the following assay.

30       Specifically, assay plates are made by coating the wells of a 96-well ELISA plate with 0.1ml of protein G (1ug/ml) for 2 hr at room temp, (RT). The plates are then rinsed with PBS

and blocked with 3% BSA/PBS for 1 hr at RT. The protein G plates are then treated with 2 commercial monoclonal antibodies (100ng/well) against Erk-1

and Erk-2 (1 hr at RT) (Santa Cruz Biotechnology). (To detect other molecules, this step can easily be modified by substituting a monoclonal antibody detecting any of the above described molecules.) After 3-5 rinses with PBS, the plates are stored at 4 degree C until use.

A431 cells are seeded at 20,000/well in a 96-well Loprodyne filterplate and cultured overnight in growth medium. The cells are then starved for 48 hr in basal medium (DMEM) and then treated with EGF (6ng/well) or 50 ul of the supernatants obtained in Example 12 for 5-20 minutes. The cells are then solubilized and extracts filtered directly into the assay plate.

After incubation with the extract for 1 hr at RT, the wells are again rinsed. As a positive control, a commercial preparation of MAP kinase (10ng/well) is used in place of A431 extract. Plates are then treated with a commercial polyclonal (rabbit) antibody (1ug/ml) which specifically recognizes the phosphorylated epitope of the Erk-1 and Erk-2 kinases (1 hr at RT). This antibody is biotinylated by standard procedures. The bound polyclonal antibody is then quantitated by successive incubations with Europium-streptavidin and Europium fluorescence enhancing reagent in the Wallac DELFIA instrument (time-resolved fluorescence). An increased fluorescent signal over background indicates a phosphorylation by TGF alpha HIII or a molecule induced by TGF alpha HIII.

#### Example 22: Method of Determining Alterations in the TGF alpha HIII Gene

RNA isolated from entire families or individual patients presenting with a phenotype of interest (such as a disease) is be isolated. cDNA is then generated from these RNA samples using protocols known in the art. (See, Sambrook.) The cDNA is then used as a template for PCR, employing primers surrounding regions of interest in SEQ ID NO:1. Suggested PCR conditions consist of 35 cycles at 95 degree C for 30 seconds; 60-120 seconds at 52-58 degree C; and 60-120 seconds at 70 degree C, using buffer solutions described in Sidransky, D., et al., Science 252:706 (1991).

PCR products are then sequenced using primers labeled at their 5' end with T4 polynucleotide kinase, employing SequiTherm Polymerase. (Epicentre Technologies). The intron-exon borders of selected exons of TGF alpha HIII is also determined and genomic PCR products analyzed to confirm the results. PCR products harboring suspected mutations in TGF alpha HIII is then cloned and sequenced to validate the results of the direct sequencing.

PCR products of TGF alpha HIII are cloned into T-tailed vectors as described in Holton, T.A. and Graham, M.W., Nucleic Acids Research, 19:1156 (1991) and sequenced with T7 polymerase (United States Biochemical). Affected individuals are identified by mutations in TGF alpha HIII not present in unaffected individuals.

Genomic rearrangements are also observed as a method of determining alterations in a gene corresponding to TGF alpha HIII. Genomic clones isolated according to Example 2 are nick-translated with digoxigenindeoxy-uridine 5'-triphosphate (Boehringer Mannheim), and FISH performed as described in Johnson, Cg. et al., Methods Cell Biol. 35:73-99 (1991). Hybridization with the labeled probe is carried out using a vast excess of human cot-1 DNA for specific hybridization to the TGF alpha HIII genomic locus.

Chromosomes are counterstained with 4,6-diamino-2-phenylidole and propidium iodide, producing a combination of C- and R-bands. Aligned images for precise mapping are obtained using a triple-band filter set (Chroma Technology, Brattleboro, VT) in combination with a cooled charge-coupled device camera (Photometrics, Tucson, AZ) and variable excitation wavelength filters. (Johnson, Cv. et al., Genet. Anal. Tech. Appl., 8:75 (1991).) Image collection, analysis and chromosomal fractional length measurements are performed using the ISee Graphical Program System. (Inovision Corporation, Durham, NC.) Chromosome alterations of the genomic region of TGF alpha HIII (hybridized by the probe) are identified as insertions, deletions, and translocations. These TGF alpha HIII alterations are used as a diagnostic marker for an associated disease.

### Example 23: Method of Detecting Abnormal Levels of TGF alpha HIII in a Biological Sample

TGF alpha HIII polypeptides can be detected in a biological sample, and if an increased or decreased level of TGF alpha HIII is detected, this polypeptide is a marker for a

particular phenotype. Methods of detection are numerous, and thus, it is understood that one skilled in the art can modify the following assay to fit their particular needs.

For example, antibody-sandwich ELISAs are used to detect TGF alpha HIII in a sample, preferably a biological sample. Wells of a microtiter plate are coated with specific antibodies to TGF alpha HIII, at a final concentration of 0.2 to 10 ug/ml. The antibodies are either monoclonal or polyclonal and are produced by the method described in Example 11. The wells are blocked so that non-specific binding of TGF alpha HIII to the well is reduced.

The coated wells are then incubated for > 2 hours at RT with a sample containing TGF alpha HIII. Preferably, serial dilutions of the sample should be used to validate results. The plates are then washed three times with deionized or distilled water to remove unbounded TGF alpha HIII.

Next, 50 ul of specific antibody-alkaline phosphatase conjugate, at a concentration of 25-400 ng, is added and incubated for 2 hours at room temperature. The plates are again washed three times with deionized or distilled water to remove unbounded conjugate.

Add 75 ul of 4-methylumbelliferyl phosphate (MUP) or p-nitrophenyl phosphate (NPP) substrate solution to each well and incubate 1 hour at room temperature. Measure the reaction by a microtiter plate reader. Prepare a standard curve, using serial dilutions of a control sample, and plot TGF alpha HIII polypeptide concentration on the X-axis (log scale) and fluorescence or absorbance of the Y-axis (linear scale). Interpolate the concentration of the TGF alpha HIII in the sample using the standard curve.

#### Example 24: Formulation

The invention also provides methods of treatment and/or prevention of diseases or disorders (such as, for example, any one or more of the diseases or disorders disclosed herein) by administration to a subject of an effective amount of a Therapeutic. By therapeutic is meant a polynucleotides or polypeptides of the invention (including fragments and variants), agonists or antagonists thereof, and/or antibodies thereto, in combination with a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier type (e.g., a sterile carrier).

The Therapeutic will be formulated and dosed in a fashion consistent with good medical practice, taking into account the clinical condition of the individual patient (especially the side effects of treatment with the Therapeutic alone), the site of delivery, the

method of administration, the scheduling of administration, and other factors known to practitioners. The "effective amount" for purposes herein is thus determined by such considerations.

As a general proposition, the total pharmaceutically effective amount of the  
5 Therapeutic administered parenterally per dose will be in the range of about 1ug/kg/day to 10  
mg/kg/day of patient body weight, although, as noted above, this will be subject to  
therapeutic discretion. More preferably, this dose is at least 0.01 mg/kg/day, and most  
preferably for humans between about 0.01 and 1 mg/kg/day for the hormone. If given  
continuously, the Therapeutic is typically administered at a dose rate of about 1 ug/kg/hour to  
10 about 50 ug/kg/hour, either by 1-4 injections per day or by continuous subcutaneous  
infusions, for example, using a mini-pump. An intravenous bag solution may also be  
employed. The length of treatment needed to observe changes and the interval following  
treatment for responses to occur appears to vary depending on the desired effect.

Therapeutics can be are administered orally, rectally, parenterally, intracistemally,  
15 intravaginally, intraperitoneally, topically (as by powders, ointments, gels, drops or  
transdermal patch), buccally, or as an oral or nasal spray. "Pharmaceutically acceptable carrier"  
refers to a non-toxic solid, semisolid or liquid filler, diluent, encapsulating material or  
formulation auxiliary of any. The term "parenteral" as used herein refers to modes of  
administration which include intravenous, intramuscular, intraperitoneal, intrasternal,  
20 subcutaneous and intraarticular injection and infusion.

Therapeutics of the invention are also suitably administered by sustained-release  
systems. Suitable examples of sustained-release Therapeutics are administered orally,  
rectally, parenterally, intracistemally, intravaginally, intraperitoneally, topically (as by  
powders, ointments, gels, drops or transdermal patch), buccally, or as an oral or nasal spray.  
25 "Pharmaceutically acceptable carrier" refers to a non-toxic solid, semisolid or liquid filler,  
diluent, encapsulating material or formulation auxiliary of any type. The term "parenteral" as  
used herein refers to modes of administration which include intravenous, intramuscular,  
intraperitoneal, intrasternal, subcutaneous and intraarticular injection and infusion.

Therapeutics of the invention are also suitably administered by sustained-release  
30 systems. Suitable examples of sustained-release Therapeutics include suitable polymeric  
materials (such as, for example, semi-permeable polymer matrices in the form of shaped  
articles, e.g., films, or microcapsules), suitable hydrophobic materials (for example as an



emulsion in an acceptable oil) or ion exchange resins, and sparingly soluble derivatives (such as, for example, a sparingly soluble salt).

Sustained-release matrices include polylactides (U.S. Pat. No. 3,773,919, EP 58,481), copolymers of L-glutamic acid and gamma-ethyl-L-glutamate (Sidman et al., Biopolymers 22:547-556 (1983)), poly (2- hydroxyethyl methacrylate) (Langer et al., J. Biomed. Mater. Res. 15:167-277 (1981), and Langer, Chem. Tech. 12:98-105 (1982)), ethylene vinyl acetate (Langer et al., Id.) or poly-D- (-)-3-hydroxybutyric acid (EP 133,988).

Sustained-release Therapeutics also include liposomally entrapped Therapeutics of the invention (see generally, Langer, *Science* 249:1527-1533 (1990); Treat et al., in *Liposomes in the Therapy of Infectious Disease and Cancer*, Lopez-Berestein and Fidler (eds.), Liss, New York, pp. 317 -327 and 353-365 (1989)). Liposomes containing the Therapeutic are prepared by methods known per se: DE 3,218,121; Epstein et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. (USA) 82:3688-3692 (1985); Hwang et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci.(USA) 77:4030-4034 (1980); EP 52,322; EP 36,676; EP 88,046; EP 143,949; EP 142,641; Japanese Pat. Appl. 83-118008; U.S. Pat. Nos. 4,485,045 and 4,544,545; and EP 102,324. Ordinarily, the liposomes are of the small (about 200-800 Angstroms) unilamellar type in which the lipid content is greater than about 30 mol. percent cholesterol, the selected proportion being adjusted for the optimal Therapeutic.

In yet an additional embodiment, the Therapeutics of the invention are delivered by way of a pump (see Langer, *supra*; Sefton, CRC Crit. Ref. Biomed. Eng. 14:201 (1987); Buchwald et al., Surgery 88:507 (1980); Saudek et al., N. Engl. J. Med. 321:574 (1989)).

Other controlled release systems are discussed in the review by Langer (*Science* 249:1527-1533 (1990)).

For parenteral administration, in one embodiment, the Therapeutic is formulated generally by mixing it at the desired degree of purity, in a unit dosage injectable form (solution, suspension, or emulsion), with a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier, i.e., one that is non-toxic to recipients at the dosages and concentrations employed and is compatible with other ingredients of the formulation. For example, the formulation preferably does not include oxidizing agents and other compounds that are known to be deleterious to the Therapeutic.

Generally, the formulations are prepared by contacting the Therapeutic uniformly and intimately with liquid carriers or finely divided solid carriers or both. Then, if necessary, the

product is shaped into the desired formulation. Preferably the carrier is a parenteral carrier, more preferably a solution that is isotonic with the blood of the recipient. Examples of such carrier vehicles include water, saline, Ringer's solution, and dextrose solution. Non-aqueous vehicles such as fixed oils and ethyl oleate are also useful herein, as well as liposomes.

5       The carrier suitably contains minor amounts of additives such as substances that enhance isotonicity and chemical stability. Such materials are non-toxic to recipients at the dosages and concentrations employed, and include buffers such as phosphate, citrate, succinate, acetic acid, and other organic acids or their salts; antioxidants such as ascorbic acid; low molecular weight (less than about ten residues) polypeptides, e.g., polyarginine or  
10       tripeptides; proteins, such as serum albumin, gelatin, or immunoglobulins; hydrophilic polymers such as polyvinylpyrrolidone; amino acids, such as glycine, glutamic acid, aspartic acid, or arginine; monosaccharides, disaccharides, and other carbohydrates including cellulose or its derivatives, glucose, manose, or dextrans; chelating agents such as EDTA; sugar alcohols such as mannitol or sorbitol; counterions such as sodium; and/or nonionic  
15       surfactants such as polysorbates, poloxamers, or PEG.

      The Therapeutic is typically formulated in such vehicles at a concentration of about 0.1 mg/ml to 100 mg/ml, preferably 1-10 mg/ml, at a pH of about 3 to 8. It will be understood that the use of certain of the foregoing excipients, carriers, or stabilizers will result in the formation of polypeptide salts.

20       Any pharmaceutical used for therapeutic administration can be sterile. Sterility is readily accomplished by filtration through sterile filtration membranes (e.g., 0.2 micron membranes). Therapeutics generally are placed into a container having a sterile access port, for example, an intravenous solution bag or vial having a stopper pierceable by a hypodermic injection needle.

25       Therapeutics ordinarily will be stored in unit or multi-dose containers, for example, sealed ampoules or vials, as an aqueous solution or as a lyophilized formulation for reconstitution. As an example of a lyophilized formulation, 10-ml vials are filled with 5 ml of sterile-filtered 1% (w/v) aqueous Therapeutic solution, and the resulting mixture is lyophilized. The infusion solution is prepared by reconstituting the lyophilized Therapeutic  
30       using bacteriostatic Water-for-Injection.

      The invention also provides a pharmaceutical pack or kit comprising one or more containers filled with one or more of the ingredients of the Therapeutics of the invention.

Associated with such container(s) can be a notice in the form prescribed by a governmental agency regulating the manufacture, use or sale of pharmaceuticals or biological products, which notice reflects approval by the agency of manufacture, use or sale for human administration. In addition, the Therapeutics may be employed in conjunction with other therapeutic compounds.

The Therapeutics of the invention may be administered alone or in combination with adjuvants. Adjuvants that may be administered with the Therapeutics of the invention include, but are not limited to, alum, alum plus deoxycholate (ImmunoAg), MTP-PE (Biocine Corp.), QS21 (Genentech, Inc.), BCG, and MPL. In a specific embodiment, Therapeutics of the invention are administered in combination with alum. In another specific embodiment, Therapeutics of the invention are administered in combination with QS-21. Further adjuvants that may be administered with the Therapeutics of the invention include, but are not limited to, Monophosphoryl lipid immunomodulator, AdjuVax 100a, QS-21, QS-18, CRL1005, Aluminum salts, MF-59, and Virosomal adjuvant technology. Vaccines that may be administered with the Therapeutics of the invention include, but are not limited to, vaccines directed toward protection against MMR (measles, mumps, rubella), polio, varicella, tetanus/diphtheria, hepatitis A, hepatitis B, haemophilus influenzae B, whooping cough, pneumonia, influenza, Lyme's Disease, rotavirus, cholera, yellow fever, Japanese encephalitis, poliomyelitis, rabies, typhoid fever, and pertussis. Combinations may be administered either concomitantly, e.g., as an admixture, separately but simultaneously or concurrently; or sequentially. This includes presentations in which the combined agents are administered together as a therapeutic mixture, and also procedures in which the combined agents are administered separately but simultaneously, e.g., as through separate intravenous lines into the same individual. Administration "in combination" further includes the separate administration of one of the compounds or agents given first, followed by the second.

The Therapeutics of the invention may be administered alone or in combination with other therapeutic agents. Therapeutic agents that may be administered in combination with the Therapeutics of the invention, include but not limited to, other members of the TNF family, chemotherapeutic agents, antibiotics, steroidal and non-steroidal anti-inflammatories, conventional immunotherapeutic agents, cytokines and/or growth factors. Combinations may be administered either concomitantly, e.g., as an admixture, separately but simultaneously or concurrently; or sequentially. This includes presentations in which the combined agents are

administered together as a therapeutic mixture, and also procedures in which the combined agents are administered separately but simultaneously, e.g., as through separate intravenous lines into the same individual. Administration "in combination" further includes the separate administration of one of the compounds or agents given first, followed by the second.

5 In one embodiment, the Therapeutics of the invention are administered in combination with members of the TNF family. TNF, TNF-related or TNF-like molecules that may be administered with the Therapeutics of the invention include, but are not limited to, soluble forms of TNF-alpha, lymphotoxin-alpha (LT-alpha, also known as TNF-beta), LT-beta (found in complex heterotrimer LT-alpha2-beta), OPGL, FasL, CD27L, CD30L,  
10 CD40L, 4-1BBL, DcR3, OX40L, TNF-gamma (International Publication No. WO 96/14328), AIM-I (International Publication No. WO 97/33899), endokine-alpha (International Publication No. WO 98/07880), TR6 (International Publication No. WO 98/30694), OPG, and neutrokin-alpha (International Publication No. WO 98/18921, OX40, and nerve growth factor (NGF), and soluble forms of Fas, CD30, CD27, CD40 and 4-IBB,  
15 TR2 (International Publication No. WO 96/34095), DR3 (International Publication No. WO 97/33904), DR4 (International Publication No. WO 98/32856), TR5 (International Publication No. WO 98/30693), TR6 (International Publication No. WO 98/30694), TR7 (International Publication No. WO 98/41629), TRANK, TR9 (International Publication No. WO 98/56892), TR10 (International Publication No. WO 98/54202), 312C2 (International  
20 Publication No. WO 98/06842), and TR12, and soluble forms CD154, CD70, and CD153.

In certain embodiments, Therapeutics of the invention are administered in combination with antiretroviral agents, nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors, non-nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors, and/or protease inhibitors. Nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors that may be administered in combination with the Therapeutics of the  
25 invention, include, but are not limited to, RETROVIR™ (zidovudine/AZT), VIDEX™ (didanosine/ddI), HIVID™ (zalcitabine/ddC), ZERIT™ (stavudine/d4T), EPIVIR™ (lamivudine/3TC), and COMBIVIR™ (zidovudine/lamivudine). Non-nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors that may be administered in combination with the Therapeutics of the invention, include, but are not limited to, VIRAMUNE™ (nevirapine), RESCRIPTOR™  
30 (delavirdine), and SUSTIVA™ (efavirenz). Protease inhibitors that may be administered in combination with the Therapeutics of the invention, include, but are not limited to,

CRIVAN™ (indinavir), NORVIR™ (ritonavir), INVIRASE™ (saquinavir), and VIRACEPT™ (nelfinavir). In a specific embodiment, antiretroviral agents, nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors, non-nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors, and/or protease inhibitors may be used in any combination with Therapeutics of the invention to  
5 treat AIDS and/or to prevent or treat HIV infection.

In other embodiments, Therapeutics of the invention may be administered in combination with anti-opportunistic infection agents. Anti-opportunistic agents that may be administered in combination with the Therapeutics of the invention, include, but are not limited to, TRIMETHOPRIM-SULFAMETHOXAZOLE™, DAPSONE™,

10 PENTAMIDINE™, ATOVAQUONE™, ISONIAZID™, RIFAMPIN™, PYRAZINAMIDE™, ETHAMBUTOL™, RIFABUTIN™, CLARITHROMYCIN™, AZITHROMYCIN™, GANCICLOVIR™, FOSCARNET™, CIDOFOVIR™, FLUCONAZOLE™, ITRACONAZOLE™, KETOCONAZOLE™, ACYCLOVIR™, FAMCICOLVIR™, PYRIMETHAMINE™, LEUCOVORIN™, NEUPOGEN™ (filgrastim/G-CSF), and

15 LEUKINE™ (sargramostim/GM-CSF). In a specific embodiment, Therapeutics of the invention are used in any combination with TRIMETHOPRIM-SULFAMETHOXAZOLE™, DAPSONE™, PENTAMIDINE™, and/or ATOVAQUONE™ to prophylactically treat or prevent an opportunistic *Pneumocystis carinii* pneumonia infection. In another specific embodiment, Therapeutics of the invention are used in any combination with ISONIAZID™,

20 RIFAMPIN™, PYRAZINAMIDE™, and/or ETHAMBUTOL™ to prophylactically treat or prevent an opportunistic *Mycobacterium avium* complex infection. In another specific embodiment, Therapeutics of the invention are used in any combination with RIFABUTIN™, CLARITHROMYCIN™, and/or AZITHROMYCIN™ to prophylactically treat or prevent an opportunistic *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* infection. In another specific embodiment,

25 Therapeutics of the invention are used in any combination with GANCICLOVIR™, FOSCARNET™, and/or CIDOFOVIR™ to prophylactically treat or prevent an opportunistic cytomegalovirus infection. In another specific embodiment, Therapeutics of the invention are used in any combination with FLUCONAZOLE™, ITRACONAZOLE™, and/or KETOCONAZOLE™ to prophylactically treat or prevent an opportunistic fungal infection.

30 In another specific embodiment, Therapeutics of the invention are used in any combination with ACYCLOVIR™ and/or FAMCICOLVIR™ to prophylactically treat or prevent an

opportunistic herpes simplex virus type I and/or type II infection. In another specific embodiment, Therapeutics of the invention are used in any combination with PYRIMETHAMINE™ and/or LEUCOVORIN™ to prophylactically treat or prevent an opportunistic *Toxoplasma gondii* infection. In another specific embodiment, Therapeutics of the invention are used in any combination with LEUCOVORIN™ and/or NEUPOGEN™ to prophylactically treat or prevent an opportunistic bacterial infection.

In a further embodiment, the Therapeutics of the invention are administered in combination with an antiviral agent. Antiviral agents that may be administered with the Therapeutics of the invention include, but are not limited to, acyclovir, ribavirin, amantadine, and remantidine.

In a further embodiment, the Therapeutics of the invention are administered in combination with an antibiotic agent. Antibiotic agents that may be administered with the Therapeutics of the invention include, but are not limited to, amoxicillin, beta-lactamases, aminoglycosides, beta-lactam (glycopeptide), beta-lactamases, Clindamycin, chloramphenicol, cephalosporins, ciprofloxacin, ciprofloxacin, erythromycin, fluoroquinolones, macrolides, metronidazole, penicillins, quinolones, rifampin, streptomycin, sulfonamide, tetracyclines, trimethoprim, trimethoprim-sulfamthoxazole, and vancomycin.

Conventional nonspecific immunosuppressive agents, that may be administered in combination with the Therapeutics of the invention include, but are not limited to, steroids, cyclosporine, cyclosporine analogs, cyclophosphamide methylprednisone, prednisone, azathioprine, FK-506, 15-deoxyspergualin, and other immunosuppressive agents that act by suppressing the function of responding T cells.

In specific embodiments, Therapeutics of the invention are administered in combination with immunosuppressants. Immunosuppressants preparations that may be administered with the Therapeutics of the invention include, but are not limited to, ORTHOCLONE™ (OKT3), SANDIMMUNE™/NEORAL™/SANGDYA™ (cyclosporin), PROGRAF™ (tacrolimus), CELLCEPT™ (mycophenolate), Azathioprine, glucocorticosteroids, and RAPAMUNE™ (sirolimus). In a specific embodiment, immunosuppressants may be used to prevent rejection of organ or bone marrow transplantation.

In an additional embodiment, Therapeutics of the invention are administered alone or in combination with one or more intravenous immune globulin preparations. Intravenous immune globulin preparations that may be administered with the Therapeutics of the invention include, but not limited to, GAMMAR™, IVEEGAM™, SANDOGLOBULIN™, 5 GAMMAGARD S/D™, and GAMIMUNE™. In a specific embodiment, Therapeutics of the invention are administered in combination with intravenous immune globulin preparations in transplantation therapy (e.g., bone marrow transplant).

In an additional embodiment, the Therapeutics of the invention are administered alone or in combination with an anti-inflammatory agent. Anti-inflammatory agents that may 10 be administered with the Therapeutics of the invention include, but are not limited to, glucocorticoids and the nonsteroidal anti-inflammatories, aminoarylcarboxylic acid derivatives, arylacetic acid derivatives, arylbutyric acid derivatives, arylcarboxylic acids, arylpropionic acid derivatives, pyrazoles, pyrazolones, salicylic acid derivatives, thiazinecarboxamides, e-acetamidocaproic acid, S-adenosylmethionine, 3-amino-4- 15 hydroxybutyric acid, amixetrine, bendazac, benzydamine, bucolome, difenpiramide, ditazol, emorfazone, guaiazulene, nabumetone, nimesulide, orgotein, oxaceprol, paranyline, perisoxal, pifoxime, proquazone, proxazole, and tenidap.

In another embodiment, compositions of the invention are administered in combination with a chemotherapeutic agent. Chemotherapeutic agents that may be 20 administered with the Therapeutics of the invention include, but are not limited to, antibiotic derivatives (e.g., doxorubicin, bleomycin, daunorubicin, and dactinomycin); antiestrogens (e.g., tamoxifen); antimetabolites (e.g., fluorouracil, 5-FU, methotrexate, floxuridine, interferon alpha-2b, glutamic acid, plicamycin, mercaptopurine, and 6-thioguanine); cytotoxic agents (e.g., carmustine, BCNU, lomustine, CCNU, cytosine arabinoside, 25 cyclophosphamide, estramustine, hydroxyurea, procarbazine, mitomycin, busulfan, cisplatin, and vincristine sulfate); hormones (e.g., medroxyprogesterone, estramustine phosphate sodium, ethinyl estradiol, estradiol, megestrol acetate, methyltestosterone, diethylstilbestrol diphosphate, chlorotrianisene, and testolactone); nitrogen mustard derivatives (e.g., mephallen, chorambucil, mechlorethamine (nitrogen mustard) and thiotepa); 30 steroids and combinations (e.g., bethamethasone sodium phosphate); and others (e.g., dicarbazine, asparaginase, mitotane, vincristine sulfate, vinblastine sulfate, and etoposide).

In a specific embodiment, Therapeutics of the invention are administered in

combination with CHOP (cyclophosphamide, doxorubicin, vincristine, and prednisone) or any combination of the components of CHOP. In another embodiment, Therapeutics of the invention are administered in combination with Rituximab. In a further embodiment, Therapeutics of the invention are administered with Rituxmab and CHOP, or Rituxmab and any combination of the components of CHOP.

In an additional embodiment, the Therapeutics of the invention are administered in combination with cytokines. Cytokines that may be administered with the Therapeutics of the invention include, but are not limited to, IL2, IL3, IL4, IL5, IL6, IL7, IL10, IL12, IL13, IL15, anti-CD40, CD40L, IFN-gamma and TNF-alpha. In another embodiment, Therapeutics of the invention may be administered with any interleukin, including, but not limited to, IL-1alpha, IL-1beta, IL-2, IL-3, IL-4, IL-5, IL-6, IL-7, IL-8, IL-9, IL-10, IL-11, IL-12, IL-13, IL-14, IL-15, IL-16, IL-17, IL-18, IL-19, IL-20, and IL-21.

In an additional embodiment, the Therapeutics of the invention are administered in combination with angiogenic proteins. Angiogenic proteins that may be administered with the Therapeutics of the invention include, but are not limited to, Glioma Derived Growth Factor (GDGF), as disclosed in European Patent Number EP-399816; Platelet Derived Growth Factor-A (PDGF-A), as disclosed in European Patent Number EP-682110; Platelet Derived Growth Factor-B (PDGF-B), as disclosed in European Patent Number EP-282317; Placental Growth Factor (PIGF), as disclosed in International Publication Number WO 92/06194; Placental Growth Factor-2 (PIGF-2), as disclosed in Hauser et al., Growth Factors, 4:259-268 (1993); Vascular Endothelial Growth Factor (VEGF), as disclosed in International Publication Number WO 90/13649; Vascular Endothelial Growth Factor-A (VEGF-A), as disclosed in European Patent Number EP-506477; Vascular Endothelial Growth Factor-2 (VEGF-2), as disclosed in International Publication Number WO 96/39515; Vascular Endothelial Growth Factor B (VEGF-3); Vascular Endothelial Growth Factor B-186 (VEGF-B186), as disclosed in International Publication Number WO 96/26736; Vascular Endothelial Growth Factor-D (VEGF-D), as disclosed in International Publication Number WO 98/02543; Vascular Endothelial Growth Factor-D (VEGF-D), as disclosed in International Publication Number WO 98/07832; and Vascular Endothelial Growth Factor-E (VEGF-E), as disclosed in German Patent Number DE19639601. The above mentioned references are incorporated herein by reference herein.



In an additional embodiment, the Therapeutics of the invention are administered in combination with hematopoietic growth factors. Hematopoietic growth factors that may be administered with the Therapeutics of the invention include, but are not limited to, LEUKINE™ (SARGRAMOSTIM™) and NEUPOGEN™ (FILGRASTIM™).

5 In an additional embodiment, the Therapeutics of the invention are administered in combination with Fibroblast Growth Factors. Fibroblast Growth Factors that may be administered with the Therapeutics of the invention include, but are not limited to, FGF-1, FGF-2, FGF-3, FGF-4, FGF-5, FGF-6, FGF-7, FGF-8, FGF-9, FGF-10, FGF-11, FGF-12, FGF-13, FGF-14, and FGF-15.

10 In additional embodiments, the Therapeutics of the invention are administered in combination with other therapeutic or prophylactic regimens, such as, for example, radiation therapy.

#### 15 Example 25: Method of Treating Decreased Levels of TGF alpha HIII

The present invention relates to a method for treating an individual in need of an increased level of a polypeptide of the invention in the body comprising administering to such an individual a composition comprising a therapeutically effective amount of an agonist of  
20 the invention (including polypeptides of the invention). Moreover, it will be appreciated that conditions caused by a decrease in the standard or normal expression level of TGF alpha HIII in an individual can be treated by administering TGF alpha HIII, preferably in the secreted form. Thus, the invention also provides a method of treatment of an individual in need of an increased level of TGF alpha HIII polypeptide comprising administering to such an individual  
25 a Therapeutic comprising an amount of TGF alpha HIII to increase the activity level of TGF alpha HIII in such an individual.

For example, a patient with decreased levels of TGF alpha HIII polypeptide receives a daily dose 0.1-100 ug/kg of the polypeptide for six consecutive days. Preferably, the polypeptide is in the secreted form. The exact details of the dosing scheme, based on  
30 administration and formulation, are provided in Example 24.

### Example 26: Method of Treating Increased Levels of TGF alpha HIII

The present invention also relates to a method of treating an individual in need of a decreased level of a polypeptide of the invention in the body comprising administering to  
5 such an individual a composition comprising a therapeutically effective amount of an antagonist of the invention (including polypeptides and antibodies of the invention).

In one example, antisense technology is used to inhibit production of TGF alpha HIII. This technology is one example of a method of decreasing levels of TGF alpha HIII polypeptide, preferably a secreted form, due to a variety of etiologies, such as cancer.

10 For example, a patient diagnosed with abnormally increased levels of TGF alpha HIII is administered intravenously antisense polynucleotides at 0.5, 1.0, 1.5, 2.0 and 3.0 mg/kg day for 21 days. This treatment is repeated after a 7-day rest period if the treatment was well tolerated. The formulation of the antisense polynucleotide is provided in Example 24.

### 15 Example 27: Method of Treatment Using Gene Therapy - Ex Vivo

One method of gene therapy transplants fibroblasts, which are capable of expressing TGF alpha HIII polypeptides, onto a patient. Generally, fibroblasts are obtained from a  
20 subject by skin biopsy. The resulting tissue is placed in tissue-culture medium and separated into small pieces. Small chunks of the tissue are placed on a wet surface of a tissue culture flask, approximately ten pieces are placed in each flask. The flask is turned upside down, closed tight and left at room temperature over night. After 24 hours at room temperature, the flask is inverted and the chunks of tissue remain fixed to the bottom of the flask and fresh  
25 media (e.g., Ham's F12 media, with 10% FBS, penicillin and streptomycin) is added. The flasks are then incubated at 37 degree C for approximately one week.

At this time, fresh media is added and subsequently changed every several days. After an additional two weeks in culture, a monolayer of fibroblasts emerge. The monolayer is trypsinized and scaled into larger flasks.

30 pMV-7 (Kirschmeier, P.T. et al., DNA, 7:219-25 (1988)), flanked by the long terminal repeats of the Moloney murine sarcoma virus, is digested with EcoRI and HindIII

and subsequently treated with calf intestinal phosphatase. The linear vector is fractionated on agarose gel and purified, using glass beads.

The cDNA encoding TGF alpha HIII can be amplified using PCR primers which correspond to the 5' and 3' end sequences respectively as set forth in Example 1. Preferably, the 5' primer contains an EcoRI site and the 3' primer includes a HindIII site. Equal quantities of the Moloney murine sarcoma virus linear backbone and the amplified EcoRI and HindIII fragment are added together, in the presence of T4 DNA ligase. The resulting mixture is maintained under conditions appropriate for ligation of the two fragments. The ligation mixture is then used to transform bacteria HB101, which are then plated onto agar containing kanamycin for the purpose of confirming that the vector contains properly inserted TGF alpha HIII.

The amphotropic pA317 or GP+am12 packaging cells are grown in tissue culture to confluent density in Dulbecco's Modified Eagles Medium (DMEM) with 10% calf serum (CS), penicillin and streptomycin. The MSV vector containing the TGF alpha HIII gene is then added to the media and the packaging cells transduced with the vector. The packaging cells now produce infectious viral particles containing the TGF alpha HIII gene (the packaging cells are now referred to as producer cells).

Fresh media is added to the transduced producer cells, and subsequently, the media is harvested from a 10 cm plate of confluent producer cells. The spent media, containing the infectious viral particles, is filtered through a millipore filter to remove detached producer cells and this media is then used to infect fibroblast cells. Media is removed from a sub-confluent plate of fibroblasts and quickly replaced with the media from the producer cells. This media is removed and replaced with fresh media. If the titer of virus is high, then virtually all fibroblasts will be infected and no selection is required. If the titer is very low, then it is necessary to use a retroviral vector that has a selectable marker, such as neo or his. Once the fibroblasts have been efficiently infected, the fibroblasts are analyzed to determine whether TGF alpha HIII protein is produced.

The engineered fibroblasts are then transplanted onto the host, either alone or after having been grown to confluence on cytodex 3 microcarrier beads.

### Example 28: Gene Therapy Using Endogenous TGF alpha HIII Gene

Another method of gene therapy according to the present invention involves operably associating the endogenous TGF alpha HIII sequence with a promoter via homologous recombination as described, for example, in U.S. Patent No. 5,641,670, issued June 24, 1997; International Publication No. WO 96/29411, published September 26, 1996; International Publication No. WO 94/12650, published August 4, 1994; Koller et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 86:8932-8935 (1989); and Zijlstra et al., Nature 342:435-438 (1989). This method involves the activation of a gene which is present in the target cells, but which is not expressed in the cells, or is expressed at a lower level than desired.

Polynucleotide constructs are made which contain a promoter and targeting sequences, which are homologous to the 5' non-coding sequence of endogenous TGF alpha HIII, flanking the promoter. The targeting sequence will be sufficiently near the 5' end of TGF alpha HIII so the promoter will be operably linked to the endogenous sequence upon homologous recombination. The promoter and the targeting sequences can be amplified using PCR. Preferably, the amplified promoter contains distinct restriction enzyme sites on the 5' and 3' ends. Preferably, the 3' end of the first targeting sequence contains the same restriction enzyme site as the 5' end of the amplified promoter and the 5' end of the second targeting sequence contains the same restriction site as the 3' end of the amplified promoter.

The amplified promoter and the amplified targeting sequences are digested with the appropriate restriction enzymes and subsequently treated with calf intestinal phosphatase. The digested promoter and digested targeting sequences are added together in the presence of T4 DNA ligase. The resulting mixture is maintained under conditions appropriate for ligation of the two fragments. The construct is size fractionated on an agarose gel then purified by phenol extraction and ethanol precipitation.

In this Example, the polynucleotide constructs are administered as naked polynucleotides via electroporation. However, the polynucleotide constructs may also be administered with transfection-facilitating agents, such as liposomes, viral sequences, viral particles, precipitating agents, etc. Such methods of delivery are known in the art.

Once the cells are transfected, homologous recombination will take place which results in the promoter being operably linked to the endogenous TGF alpha HIII sequence. This results in the expression of TGF alpha HIII in the cell. Expression may be detected by immunological staining, or any other method known in the art.

5 Fibroblasts are obtained from a subject by skin biopsy. The resulting tissue is placed in DMEM + 10% fetal calf serum. Exponentially growing or early stationary phase fibroblasts are trypsinized and rinsed from the plastic surface with nutrient medium. An aliquot of the cell suspension is removed for counting, and the remaining cells are subjected to centrifugation. The supernatant is aspirated and the pellet is resuspended in 5 ml of  
10 electroporation buffer (20 mM HEPES pH 7.3, 137 mM NaCl, 5 mM KCl, 0.7 mM Na<sub>2</sub>HPO<sub>4</sub>, 6 mM dextrose). The cells are recentrifuged, the supernatant aspirated, and the cells resuspended in electroporation buffer containing 1 mg/ml acetylated bovine serum albumin. The final cell suspension contains approximately 3X10<sup>6</sup> cells/ml. Electroporation should be performed immediately following resuspension.

15 Plasmid DNA is prepared according to standard techniques. For example, to construct a plasmid for targeting to the TGF alpha HIII locus, plasmid pUC18 (MBI Fermentas, Amherst, NY) is digested with HindIII. The CMV promoter is amplified by PCR with an XbaI site on the 5' end and a BamHI site on the 3'end. Two TGF alpha HIII non-coding sequences are amplified via PCR: one TGF alpha HIII non-coding sequence (TGF  
20 alpha HIII fragment 1) is amplified with a HindIII site at the 5' end and an Xba site at the 3'end; the other TGF alpha HIII non-coding sequence (TGF alpha HIII fragment 2) is amplified with a BamHI site at the 5'end and a HindIII site at the 3'end. The CMV promoter and TGF alpha HIII fragments (1 and 2) are digested with the appropriate enzymes (CMV promoter - XbaI and BamHI; TGF alpha HIII fragment 1 - XbaI; TGF alpha HIII fragment 2 -  
25 BamHI) and ligated together. The resulting ligation product is digested with HindIII, and ligated with the HindIII-digested pUC18 plasmid.

Plasmid DNA is added to a sterile cuvette with a 0.4 cm electrode gap (Bio-Rad). The final DNA concentration is generally at least 120 µg/ml. 0.5 ml of the cell suspension (containing approximately 1.5X10<sup>6</sup> cells) is then added to the cuvette, and the cell  
30 suspension and DNA solutions are gently mixed. Electroporation is performed with a Gene-Pulser apparatus (Bio-Rad). Capacitance and voltage are set at 960 µF and 250-300 V, respectively. As voltage increases, cell survival decreases, but the percentage of surviving

cells that stably incorporate the introduced DNA into their genome increases dramatically. Given these parameters, a pulse time of approximately 14-20 mSec should be observed.

Electroporated cells are maintained at room temperature for approximately 5 min, and the contents of the cuvette are then gently removed with a sterile transfer pipette. The cells are added directly to 10 ml of prewarmed nutrient media (DMEM with 15% calf serum) in a 10 cm dish and incubated at 37 degree C. The following day, the media is aspirated and replaced with 10 ml of fresh media and incubated for a further 16-24 hours.

The engineered fibroblasts are then injected into the host, either alone or after having been grown to confluence on cytodex 3 microcarrier beads. The fibroblasts now produce the protein product. The fibroblasts can then be introduced into a patient as described above.

#### Example 29: Method of Treatment Using Gene Therapy - In Vivo

Another aspect of the present invention is using in vivo gene therapy methods to treat disorders, diseases and conditions. The gene therapy method relates to the introduction of naked nucleic acid (DNA, RNA, and antisense DNA or RNA) TGF alpha HIII sequences into an animal to increase or decrease the expression of the TGF alpha HIII polypeptide. The TGF alpha HIII polynucleotide may be operatively linked to a promoter or any other genetic elements necessary for the expression of the TGF alpha HIII polypeptide by the target tissue. Such gene therapy and delivery techniques and methods are known in the art, see, for example, WO90/11092, WO98/11779; U.S. Patent NO. 5693622, 5705151, 5580859; Tabata H. et al. (1997) Cardiovasc. Res. 35(3):470-479, Chao J et al. (1997) Pharmacol. Res. 35(6):517-522, Wolff J.A. (1997) Neuromuscul. Disord. 7(5):314-318, Schwartz B. et al. (1996) Gene Ther. 3(5):405-411, Tsurumi Y. et al. (1996) Circulation 94(12):3281-3290 (incorporated herein by reference).

The TGF alpha HIII polynucleotide constructs may be delivered by any method that delivers injectable materials to the cells of an animal, such as, injection into the interstitial space of tissues (heart, muscle, skin, lung, liver, intestine and the like). The TGF alpha HIII polynucleotide constructs can be delivered in a pharmaceutically acceptable liquid or aqueous carrier.

The term "naked" polynucleotide, DNA or RNA, refers to sequences that are free from any delivery vehicle that acts to assist, promote, or facilitate entry into the cell, including viral sequences, viral particles, liposome formulations, lipofectin or precipitating agents and the like. However, the TGF alpha HIII polynucleotides may also be delivered in liposome formulations (such as those taught in Felgner P.L. et al. (1995) Ann. NY Acad. Sci. 772:126-139 and Abdallah B. et al. (1995) Biol. Cell 85(1):1-7) which can be prepared by methods well known to those skilled in the art.

The TGF alpha HIII polynucleotide vector constructs used in the gene therapy method are preferably constructs that will not integrate into the host genome nor will they contain sequences that allow for replication. Any strong promoter known to those skilled in the art can be used for driving the expression of DNA. Unlike other gene therapies techniques, one major advantage of introducing naked nucleic acid sequences into target cells is the transitory nature of the polynucleotide synthesis in the cells. Studies have shown that non-replicating DNA sequences can be introduced into cells to provide production of the desired polypeptide for periods of up to six months.

The TGF alpha HIII polynucleotide construct can be delivered to the interstitial space of tissues within the an animal, including of muscle, skin, brain, lung, liver, spleen, bone marrow, thymus, heart, lymph, blood, bone, cartilage, pancreas, kidney, gall bladder, stomach, intestine, testis, ovary, uterus, rectum, nervous system, eye, gland, and connective tissue. Interstitial space of the tissues comprises the intercellular fluid, mucopolysaccharide matrix among the reticular fibers of organ tissues, elastic fibers in the walls of vessels or chambers, collagen fibers of fibrous tissues, or that same matrix within connective tissue ensheathing muscle cells or in the lacunae of bone. It is similarly the space occupied by the plasma of the circulation and the lymph fluid of the lymphatic channels. Delivery to the interstitial space of muscle tissue is preferred for the reasons discussed below. They may be conveniently delivered by injection into the tissues comprising these cells. They are preferably delivered to and expressed in persistent, non-dividing cells which are differentiated, although delivery and expression may be achieved in non-differentiated or less completely differentiated cells, such as, for example, stem cells of blood or skin fibroblasts. In vivo muscle cells are particularly competent in their ability to take up and express polynucleotides.

For the naked TGF alpha HIII polynucleotide injection, an effective dosage amount of DNA or RNA will be in the range of from about 0.05 g/kg body weight to about 50 mg/kg body weight. Preferably the dosage will be from about 0.005 mg/kg to about 20 mg/kg and more preferably from about 0.05 mg/kg to about 5 mg/kg. Of course, as the artisan of ordinary skill will appreciate, this dosage will vary according to the tissue site of injection. The appropriate and effective dosage of nucleic acid sequence can readily be determined by those of ordinary skill in the art and may depend on the condition being treated and the route of administration. The preferred route of administration is by the parenteral route of injection into the interstitial space of tissues. However, other parenteral routes may also be used, such as, inhalation of an aerosol formulation particularly for delivery to lungs or bronchial tissues, throat or mucous membranes of the nose. In addition, naked TGF alpha HIII polynucleotide constructs can be delivered to arteries during angioplasty by the catheter used in the procedure.

The dose response effects of injected TGF alpha HIII polynucleotide in muscle in vivo is determined as follows. Suitable TGF alpha HIII template DNA for production of mRNA coding for TGF alpha HIII polypeptide is prepared in accordance with a standard recombinant DNA methodology. The template DNA, which may be either circular or linear, is either used as naked DNA or complexed with liposomes. The quadriceps muscles of mice are then injected with various amounts of the template DNA.

Five to six week old female and male Balb/C mice are anesthetized by intraperitoneal injection with 0.3 ml of 2.5% Avertin. A 1.5 cm incision is made on the anterior thigh, and the quadriceps muscle is directly visualized. The TGF alpha HIII template DNA is injected in 0.1 ml of carrier in a 1 cc syringe through a 27 gauge needle over one minute, approximately 0.5 cm from the distal insertion site of the muscle into the knee and about 0.2 cm deep. A suture is placed over the injection site for future localization, and the skin is closed with stainless steel clips.

After an appropriate incubation time (e.g., 7 days) muscle extracts are prepared by excising the entire quadriceps. Every fifth 15 um cross-section of the individual quadriceps muscles is histochemically stained for TGF alpha HIII protein expression. A time course for TGF alpha HIII protein expression may be done in a similar fashion except that quadriceps from different mice are harvested at different times. Persistence of TGF alpha HIII DNA in muscle following injection may be determined by Southern blot analysis after preparing total



cellular DNA and HIRT supernatants from injected and control mice. The results of the above experimentation in mice can be use to extrapolate proper dosages and other treatment parameters in humans and other animals using TGF alpha HIII naked DNA.

5 Example 30: TGF alpha HIII Transgenic Animals.

The TGF alpha HIII polypeptides can also be expressed in transgenic animals. Animals of any species, including, but not limited to, mice, rats, rabbits, hamsters, guinea pigs, pigs, micro-pigs, goats, sheep, cows and non-human primates, e.g., baboons, monkeys, and chimpanzees may be used to generate transgenic animals. In a specific embodiment, techniques described herein or otherwise known in the art, are used to express polypeptides of the invention in humans, as part of a gene therapy protocol.

Any technique known in the art may be used to introduce the transgene (i.e., polynucleotides of the invention) into animals to produce the founder lines of transgenic animals. Such techniques include, but are not limited to, pronuclear microinjection (Paterson et al., Appl. Microbiol. Biotechnol. 40:691-698 (1994); Carver et al., Biotechnology (NY) 11:1263-1270 (1993); Wright et al., Biotechnology (NY) 9:830-834 (1991); and Hoppe et al., U.S. Pat. No. 4,873,191 (1989)); retrovirus mediated gene transfer into germ lines (Van der Putten et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci., USA 82:6148-6152 (1985)), blastocysts or embryos; gene targeting in embryonic stem cells (Thompson et al., Cell 56:313-321 (1989)); electroporation of cells or embryos (Lo, 1983, Mol Cell. Biol. 3:1803-1814 (1983)); introduction of the polynucleotides of the invention using a gene gun (see, e.g., Ulmer et al., Science 259:1745 (1993); introducing nucleic acid constructs into embryonic pluripotent stem cells and transferring the stem cells back into the blastocyst; and sperm-mediated gene transfer (Lavitrano et al., Cell 57:717-723 (1989); etc. For a review of such techniques, see Gordon, "Transgenic Animals," Intl. Rev. Cytol. 115:171-229 (1989), which is incorporated by reference herein in its entirety.

Any technique known in the art may be used to produce transgenic clones containing polynucleotides of the invention, for example, nuclear transfer into enucleated oocytes of nuclei from cultured embryonic, fetal, or adult cells induced to quiescence (Campell et al., Nature 380:64-66 (1996); Wilmut et al., Nature 385:810-813 (1997)).

The present invention provides for transgenic animals that carry the transgene in all their cells, as well as animals which carry the transgene in some, but not all their cells, i.e., mosaic animals or chimeric. The transgene may be integrated as a single transgene or as multiple copies such as in concatamers, e.g., head-to-head tandems or head-to-tail tandems.

5 The transgene may also be selectively introduced into and activated in a particular cell type by following, for example, the teaching of Lasko et al. (Lasko et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 89:6232-6236 (1992)). The regulatory sequences required for such a cell-type specific activation will depend upon the particular cell type of interest, and will be apparent to those of skill in the art. When it is desired that the polynucleotide transgene be integrated into the  
10 chromosomal site of the endogenous gene, gene targeting is preferred.

Briefly, when such a technique is to be utilized, vectors containing some nucleotide sequences homologous to the endogenous gene are designed for the purpose of integrating, via homologous recombination with chromosomal sequences, into and disrupting the function of the nucleotide sequence of the endogenous gene. The transgene may also be selectively  
15 introduced into a particular cell type, thus inactivating the endogenous gene in only that cell type, by following, for example, the teaching of Gu et al. (Gu et al., Science 265:103-106 (1994)). The regulatory sequences required for such a cell-type specific inactivation will depend upon the particular cell type of interest, and will be apparent to those of skill in the art. The contents of each of the documents recited in this paragraph is herein incorporated by  
20 reference in its entirety.

Any of the TGF alpha HIII polypeptides disclose throughout this application can be used to generate transgenic animals. For example, DNA encoding amino acids M1-S229 of SEQ ID NO:2 can be inserted into a vector containing a promoter, such as the actin promoter, which will ubiquitously express the inserted fragment. Other fragments of TGF alpha HIII  
25 can also be inserted into a vector to create transgenics having ubiquitous expression.

Alternatively, polynucleotides of the invention can be inserted in a vector which controls tissue specific expression through a tissue specific promoter. For example, a construct having a transferrin promoter would express the TGF alpha HIII polypeptide in the liver of transgenic animals. Therefore, DNA encoding amino acids M1-S229 of SEQ ID  
30 NO:2 can be amplified.

In addition to expressing the polypeptide of the present invention in a ubiquitous or tissue specific manner in transgenic animals, it would also be routine for one skilled in the art

to generate constructs which regulate expression of the polypeptide by a variety of other means (for example, developmentally or chemically regulated expression).

Once transgenic animals have been generated, the expression of the recombinant gene may be assayed utilizing standard techniques. Initial screening may be accomplished by Southern blot analysis or PCR techniques to analyze animal tissues to verify that integration of the transgene has taken place. The level of mRNA expression of the transgene in the tissues of the transgenic animals may also be assessed using techniques which include, but are not limited to, Northern blot analysis of tissue samples obtained from the animal, in situ hybridization analysis, and reverse transcriptase-PCR (rt-PCR). Samples of transgenic gene-expressing tissue may also be evaluated immunocytochemically or immunohistochemically using antibodies specific for the transgene product.

Once the founder animals are produced, they may be bred, inbred, outbred, or crossbred to produce colonies of the particular animal. Examples of such breeding strategies include, but are not limited to: outbreeding of founder animals with more than one integration site in order to establish separate lines; inbreeding of separate lines in order to produce compound transgenics that express the transgene at higher levels because of the effects of additive expression of each transgene; crossing of heterozygous transgenic animals to produce animals homozygous for a given integration site in order to both augment expression and eliminate the need for screening of animals by DNA analysis; crossing of separate homozygous lines to produce compound heterozygous or homozygous lines; and breeding to place the transgene on a distinct background that is appropriate for an experimental model of interest.

Transgenic animals of the invention have uses which include, but are not limited to, animal model systems useful in elaborating the biological function of TGF alpha HIII polypeptides, studying conditions and/or disorders associated with aberrant TGF alpha HIII expression, and in screening for compounds effective in ameliorating such conditions and/or disorders.

### Example 31: TGF alpha HIII Knock-Out Animals.

Endogenous TGF alpha HIII gene expression can also be reduced by inactivating or "knocking out" the TGF alpha HIII gene and/or its promoter using targeted homologous

recombination. (E.g., see Smithies et al., Nature 317:230-234 (1985); Thomas & Capecchi, Cell 51:503-512 (1987); Thompson et al., Cell 5:313-321 (1989); each of which is incorporated by reference herein in its entirety). For example, a mutant, non-functional polynucleotide of the invention (or a completely unrelated DNA sequence) flanked by DNA  
5 homologous to the endogenous polynucleotide sequence (either the coding regions or regulatory regions of the gene) can be used, with or without a selectable marker and/or a negative selectable marker, to transfect cells that express polypeptides of the invention in vivo. In another embodiment, techniques known in the art are used to generate knockouts in cells that contain, but do not express the gene of interest. Insertion of the DNA construct, via  
10 targeted homologous recombination, results in inactivation of the targeted gene. Such approaches are particularly suited in research and agricultural fields where modifications to embryonic stem cells can be used to generate animal offspring with an inactive targeted gene (e.g., see Thomas & Capecchi 1987 and Thompson 1989, supra). However this approach can be routinely adapted for use in humans provided the recombinant DNA constructs are directly  
15 administered or targeted to the required site in vivo using appropriate viral vectors that will be apparent to those of skill in the art.

In further embodiments of the invention, cells that are genetically engineered to express the polypeptides of the invention, or alternatively, that are genetically engineered not to express the polypeptides of the invention (e.g., knockouts) are administered to a patient in  
20 vivo. Such cells may be obtained from the patient (i.e., animal, including human) or an MHC compatible donor and can include, but are not limited to fibroblasts, bone marrow cells, blood cells (e.g., lymphocytes), adipocytes, muscle cells, endothelial cells etc. The cells are genetically engineered in vitro using recombinant DNA techniques to introduce the coding sequence of polypeptides of the invention into the cells, or alternatively, to disrupt the coding  
25 sequence and/or endogenous regulatory sequence associated with the polypeptides of the invention, e.g., by transduction (using viral vectors, and preferably vectors that integrate the transgene into the cell genome) or transfection procedures, including, but not limited to, the use of plasmids, cosmids, YACs, naked DNA, electroporation, liposomes, etc. The coding sequence of the polypeptides of the invention can be placed under the control of a strong  
30 constitutive or inducible promoter or promoter/enhancer to achieve expression, and preferably secretion, of the TGF alpha HIII polypeptides. The engineered cells which express

and preferably secrete the polypeptides of the invention can be introduced into the patient systemically, e.g., in the circulation, or intraperitoneally.

Alternatively, the cells can be incorporated into a matrix and implanted in the body, e.g., genetically engineered fibroblasts can be implanted as part of a skin graft; genetically engineered endothelial cells can be implanted as part of a lymphatic or vascular graft. (See, for example, Anderson et al. U.S. Patent No. 5,399,349; and Mulligan & Wilson, U.S. Patent No. 5,460,959 each of which is incorporated by reference herein in its entirety).

When the cells to be administered are non-autologous or non-MHC compatible cells, they can be administered using well known techniques which prevent the development of a host immune response against the introduced cells. For example, the cells may be introduced in an encapsulated form which, while allowing for an exchange of components with the immediate extracellular environment, does not allow the introduced cells to be recognized by the host immune system.

Knock-out animals of the invention have uses which include, but are not limited to, animal model systems useful in elaborating the biological function of TGF alpha HIII polypeptides, studying conditions and/or disorders associated with aberrant TGF alpha HIII expression, and in screening for compounds effective in ameliorating such conditions and/or disorders.

#### Example 32: Assays Detecting Stimulation or Inhibition of B cell Proliferation and Differentiation

Generation of functional humoral immune responses requires both soluble and cognate signaling between B-lineage cells and their microenvironment. Signals may impart a positive stimulus that allows a B-lineage cell to continue its programmed development, or a negative stimulus that instructs the cell to arrest its current developmental pathway. To date, numerous stimulatory and inhibitory signals have been found to influence B cell responsiveness including IL-2, IL-4, IL-5, IL-6, IL-7, IL10, IL-13, IL-14 and IL-15. Interestingly, these signals are by themselves weak effectors but can, in combination with various co-stimulatory proteins, induce activation, proliferation, differentiation, homing, tolerance and death among B cell populations.

One of the best studied classes of B-cell co-stimulatory proteins is the TNF-superfamily. Within this family CD40, CD27, and CD30 along with their respective ligands CD154, CD70, and CD153 have been found to regulate a variety of immune responses. Assays which allow for the detection and/or observation of the proliferation and differentiation of these B-cell populations and their precursors are valuable tools in determining the effects various proteins may have on these B-cell populations in terms of proliferation and differentiation. Listed below are two assays designed to allow for the detection of the differentiation, proliferation, or inhibition of B-cell populations and their precursors.

**In Vitro Assay-** Purified TGF alpha HIII protein, or truncated forms thereof, is assessed for its ability to induce activation, proliferation, differentiation or inhibition and/or death in B-cell populations and their precursors. The activity of TGF alpha HIII protein on purified human tonsillar B cells, measured qualitatively over the dose range from 0.1 to 10,000 ng/mL, is assessed in a standard B-lymphocyte co-stimulation assay in which purified tonsillar B cells are cultured in the presence of either formalin-fixed *Staphylococcus aureus* Cowan I (SAC) or immobilized anti-human IgM antibody as the priming agent. Second signals such as IL-2 and IL-15 synergize with SAC and IgM crosslinking to elicit B cell proliferation as measured by tritiated-thymidine incorporation. Novel synergizing agents can be readily identified using this assay. The assay involves isolating human tonsillar B cells by magnetic bead (MACS) depletion of CD3-positive cells. The resulting cell population is greater than 95% B cells as assessed by expression of CD45R(B220).

Various dilutions of each sample are placed into individual wells of a 96-well plate to which are added  $10^5$  B-cells suspended in culture medium (RPMI 1640 containing 10% FBS,  $5 \times 10^{-5}$ M 2ME, 100U/ml penicillin, 10ug/ml streptomycin, and  $10^{-5}$  dilution of SAC) in a total volume of 150ul. Proliferation or inhibition is quantitated by a 20h pulse (1uCi/well) with  $^3$ H-thymidine (6.7 Ci/mM) beginning 72h post factor addition. The positive and negative controls are IL2 and medium respectively.

**In Vivo Assay-** BALB/c mice are injected (i.p.) twice per day with buffer only, or 2 mg/Kg of TGF alpha HIII protein, or truncated forms thereof. Mice receive this treatment for 4 consecutive days, at which time they are sacrificed and various tissues and serum collected for analyses. Comparison of H&E sections from normal and TGF alpha HIII protein-treated

spleens identify the results of the activity of TGF alpha HIII protein on spleen cells, such as the diffusion of peri-arterial lymphatic sheaths, and/or significant increases in the nucleated cellularity of the red pulp regions, which may indicate the activation of the differentiation and proliferation of B-cell populations. Immunohistochemical studies using a B cell marker, anti-CD45R(B220), are used to determine whether any physiological changes to splenic cells, such as splenic disorganization, are due to increased B-cell representation within loosely defined B-cell zones that infiltrate established T-cell regions.

Flow cytometric analyses of the spleens from TGF alpha HIII protein-treated mice is used to indicate whether TGF alpha HIII protein specifically increases the proportion of ThB+, CD45R(B220)dull B cells over that which is observed in control mice.

Likewise, a predicted consequence of increased mature B-cell representation in vivo is a relative increase in serum Ig titers. Accordingly, serum IgM and IgA levels are compared between buffer and TGF alpha HIII protein-treated mice.

The studies described in this example tested activity in TGF alpha HIII protein. However, one skilled in the art could easily modify the exemplified studies to test the activity of TGF alpha HIII polynucleotides (e.g., gene therapy), agonists, and/or antagonists of TGF alpha HIII.

### Example 33: T Cell Proliferation Assay

A CD3-induced proliferation assay is performed on PBMCs and is measured by the uptake of  $^3\text{H}$ -thymidine. The assay is performed as follows. Ninety-six well plates are coated with 100  $\mu\text{l}$ /well of mAb to CD3 (HIT3a, Pharmingen) or isotype-matched control mAb (B33.1) overnight at 4°C (1  $\mu\text{g}/\text{ml}$  in .05M bicarbonate buffer, pH 9.5), then washed three times with PBS. PBMC are isolated by F/H gradient centrifugation from human peripheral blood and added to quadruplicate wells (5 x 10<sup>4</sup>/well) of mAb coated plates in RPMI containing 10% FCS and P/S in the presence of varying concentrations of TGF alpha HIII protein (total volume 200  $\mu\text{l}$ ). Relevant protein buffer and medium alone are controls. After 48 hr. culture at 37°C, plates are spun for 2 min. at 1000 rpm and 100  $\mu\text{l}$  of supernatant is removed and stored -20°C for measurement of IL-2 (or other cytokines) if effect on proliferation is observed. Wells are supplemented with 100  $\mu\text{l}$  of medium containing 0.5  $\mu\text{Ci}$  of  $^3\text{H}$ -thymidine and cultured at 37°C for 18-24 hr. Wells are harvested and incorporation of  $^3\text{H}$ -thymidine used as a measure of proliferation. Anti-CD3 alone

is the positive control for proliferation. IL-2 (100 U/ml) is also used as a control which enhances proliferation. Control antibody which does not induce proliferation of T cells is used as the negative controls for the effects of TGF alpha HIII proteins.

The studies described in this example tested activity in TGF alpha HIII protein. However, one skilled in the art could easily modify the exemplified studies to test the activity of TGF alpha HIII polynucleotides (e.g., gene therapy), agonists, and/or antagonists of TGF alpha HIII.

#### Example 34: Effect of TGF alpha HIII on the Expression of MHC Class II, Costimulatory and Adhesion Molecules and Cell Differentiation of Monocytes and Monocyte-Derived Human Dendritic Cells

Dendritic cells are generated by the expansion of proliferating precursors found in the peripheral blood: adherent PBMC or elutriated monocytic fractions are cultured for 7-10 days with GM-CSF (50 ng/ml) and IL-4 (20 ng/ml). These dendritic cells have the characteristic phenotype of immature cells (expression of CD1, CD80, CD86, CD40 and MHC class II antigens). Treatment with activating factors, such as TNF- $\alpha$ , causes a rapid change in surface phenotype (increased expression of MHC class I and II, costimulatory and adhesion molecules, downregulation of FC $\gamma$ RII, upregulation of CD83). These changes correlate with increased antigen-presenting capacity and with functional maturation of the dendritic cells.

FACS analysis of surface antigens is performed as follows. Cells are treated 1-3 days with increasing concentrations of TGF alpha HIII or LPS (positive control), washed with PBS containing 1% BSA and 0.02 mM sodium azide, and then incubated with 1:20 dilution of appropriate FITC- or PE-labeled monoclonal antibodies for 30 minutes at 4°C. After an additional wash, the labeled cells are analyzed by flow cytometry on a FACScan (Becton Dickinson).

Effect on the production of cytokines. Cytokines generated by dendritic cells, in particular IL-12, are important in the initiation of T-cell dependent immune responses. IL-12 strongly influences the development of Th1 helper T-cell immune response, and induces cytotoxic T and NK cell function. An ELISA is used to measure the IL-12 release as follows. Dendritic cells ( $10^6$ /ml) are treated with increasing concentrations of TGF alpha HIII for 24



hours. LPS (100 ng/ml) is added to the cell culture as positive control. Supernatants from the cell cultures are then collected and analyzed for IL-12 content using commercial ELISA kit (e.g, R & D Systems (Minneapolis, MN)). The standard protocols provided with the kits are used.

5

Effect on the expression of MHC Class II, costimulatory and adhesion molecules. Three major families of cell surface antigens can be identified on monocytes: adhesion molecules, molecules involved in antigen presentation, and Fc receptor. Modulation of the expression of MHC class II antigens and other costimulatory molecules, such as B7 and  
10 ICAM-1, may result in changes in the antigen presenting capacity of monocytes and ability to induce T cell activation. Increase expression of Fc receptors may correlate with improved monocyte cytotoxic activity, cytokine release and phagocytosis.

FACS analysis is used to examine the surface antigens as follows. Monocytes are treated 1-5 days with increasing concentrations of TGF alpha HIII or LPS (positive control),  
15 washed with PBS containing 1% BSA and 0.02 mM sodium azide, and then incubated with 1:20 dilution of appropriate FITC- or PE-labeled monoclonal antibodies for 30 minutes at 4°C. After an additional wash, the labeled cells are analyzed by flow cytometry on a FACScan (Becton Dickinson).

20 Monocyte activation and/or increased survival. Assays for molecules that activate (or alternatively, inactivate) monocytes and/or increase monocyte survival (or alternatively, decrease monocyte survival) are known in the art and may routinely be applied to determine whether a molecule of the invention functions as an inhibitor or activator of monocytes. TGF alpha HIII, agonists, or antagonists of TGF alpha HIII can be screened using the three assays  
25 described below. For each of these assays, Peripheral blood mononuclear cells (PBMC) are purified from single donor leukopacks (American Red Cross, Baltimore, MD) by centrifugation through a Histopaque gradient (Sigma). Monocytes are isolated from PBMC by counterflow centrifugal elutriation.

30 Monocyte Survival Assay. Human peripheral blood monocytes progressively lose viability when cultured in absence of serum or other stimuli. Their death results from internally regulated process (apoptosis). Addition to the culture of activating factors, such as

TNF-alpha dramatically improves cell survival and prevents DNA fragmentation. Propidium iodide (PI) staining is used to measure apoptosis as follows. Monocytes are cultured for 48 hours in polypropylene tubes in serum-free medium (positive control), in the presence of 100 ng/ml TNF-alpha (negative control), and in the presence of varying concentrations of the compound to be tested. Cells are suspended at a concentration of  $2 \times 10^6$ /ml in PBS containing PI at a final concentration of 5 µg/ml, and then incubated at room temperature for 5 minutes before FACScan analysis. PI uptake has been demonstrated to correlate with DNA fragmentation in this experimental paradigm.

Effect on cytokine release. An important function of monocytes/macrophages is their regulatory activity on other cellular populations of the immune system through the release of cytokines after stimulation. An ELISA to measure cytokine release is performed as follows. Human monocytes are incubated at a density of  $5 \times 10^5$  cells/ml with increasing concentrations of TGF alpha HIII and under the same conditions, but in the absence of TGF alpha HIII. For IL-12 production, the cells are primed overnight with IFN (100 U/ml) in presence of TGF alpha HIII. LPS (10 ng/ml) is then added. Conditioned media are collected after 24h and kept frozen until use. Measurement of TNF-alpha, IL-10, MCP-1 and IL-8 is then performed using a commercially available ELISA kit (e.g, R & D Systems (Minneapolis, MN)) and applying the standard protocols provided with the kit.

Oxidative burst. Purified monocytes are plated in 96-w plate at  $2 \times 10^5$  cell/well. Increasing concentrations of TGF alpha HIII are added to the wells in a total volume of 0.2 ml culture medium (RPMI 1640 + 10% FCS, glutamine and antibiotics). After 3 days incubation, the plates are centrifuged and the medium is removed from the wells. To the macrophage monolayers, 0.2 ml per well of phenol red solution (140 mM NaCl, 10 mM potassium phosphate buffer pH 7.0, 5.5 mM dextrose, 0.56 mM phenol red and 19 U/ml of HRPO) is added, together with the stimulant (200 nM PMA). The plates are incubated at 37°C for 2 hours and the reaction is stopped by adding 20 µl 1N NaOH per well. The absorbance is read at 610 nm. To calculate the amount of  $H_2O_2$  produced by the macrophages, a standard curve of a  $H_2O_2$  solution of known molarity is performed for each experiment.

The studies described in this example tested activity in TGF alpha HIII protein. However, one skilled in the art could easily modify the exemplified studies to test the activity

of TGF alpha HIII polynucleotides (e.g., gene therapy), agonists, and/or antagonists of TGF alpha HIII.

### Example 35: TGF alpha HIII Biological Effects

#### Astrocyte and Neuronal Assays

Recombinant TGF alpha HIII, expressed in *Escherichia coli* and purified as described above, can be tested for activity in promoting the survival, neurite outgrowth, or phenotypic differentiation of cortical neuronal cells and for inducing the proliferation of glial fibrillary acidic protein immunopositive cells, astrocytes. The selection of cortical cells for the bioassay is based on the prevalent expression of FGF-1 and FGF-2 in cortical structures and on the previously reported enhancement of cortical neuronal survival resulting from FGF-2 treatment. A thymidine incorporation assay, for example, can be used to elucidate TGF alpha HIII's activity on these cells.

Moreover, previous reports describing the biological effects of FGF-2 (basic FGF) on cortical or hippocampal neurons *in vitro* have demonstrated increases in both neuron survival and neurite outgrowth (Walicke, P. et al., "Fibroblast growth factor promotes survival of dissociated hippocampal neurons and enhances neurite extension." *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 83:3012-3016. (1986), assay herein incorporated by reference in its entirety). However, reports from experiments done on PC-12 cells suggest that these two responses are not necessarily synonymous and may depend on not only which FGF is being tested but also on which receptor(s) are expressed on the target cells. Using the primary cortical neuronal culture paradigm, the ability of TGF alpha HIII to induce neurite outgrowth can be compared to the response achieved with FGF-2 using, for example, a thymidine incorporation assay.

#### Fibroblast and endothelial cell assays

Human lung fibroblasts are obtained from Clonetics (San Diego, CA) and maintained in growth media from Clonetics. Dermal microvascular endothelial cells are obtained from Cell Applications (San Diego, CA). For proliferation assays, the human lung fibroblasts and dermal microvascular endothelial cells can be cultured at 5,000 cells/well in a 96-well plate for one day in growth medium. The cells are then incubated for one day in 0.1% BSA basal medium. After

replacing the medium with fresh 0.1% BSA medium, the cells are incubated with the test proteins for 3 days. Alamar Blue (Alamar Biosciences, Sacramento, CA) is added to each well to a final concentration of 10%. The cells are incubated for 4 hr. Cell viability is measured by reading in a CytoFluor fluorescence reader. For the PGE<sub>2</sub> assays, the human lung fibroblasts are cultured at 5,000 cells/well in a 96-well plate for one day. After a medium change to 0.1% BSA basal medium, the cells are incubated with FGF-2 or TGF alpha HIII with or without IL-1 $\alpha$  for 24 hours. The supernatants are collected and assayed for PGE<sub>2</sub> by EIA kit (Cayman, Ann Arbor, MI). For the IL-6 assays, the human lung fibroblasts are cultured at 5,000 cells/well in a 96-well plate for one day. After a medium change to 0.1% BSA basal medium, the cells are incubated with FGF-2 or TGF alpha HIII with or without IL-1 $\alpha$  for 24 hours. The supernatants are collected and assayed for IL-6 by ELISA kit (Endogen, Cambridge, MA).

Human lung fibroblasts are cultured with FGF-2 or TGF alpha HIII for 3 days in basal medium before the addition of Alamar Blue to assess effects on growth of the fibroblasts. FGF-2 should show a stimulation at 10 - 2500 ng/ml which can be used to compare stimulation with TGF alpha HIII.

#### Parkinson Models.

The loss of motor function in Parkinson's disease is attributed to a deficiency of striatal dopamine resulting from the degeneration of the nigrostriatal dopaminergic projection neurons. An animal model for Parkinson's that has been extensively characterized involves the systemic administration of 1-methyl-4 phenyl 1,2,3,6-tetrahydropyridine (MPTP). In the CNS, MPTP is taken-up by astrocytes and catabolized by monoamine oxidase B to 1-methyl-4-phenyl pyridine (MPP<sup>+</sup>) and released. Subsequently, MPP<sup>+</sup> is actively accumulated in dopaminergic neurons by the high-affinity reuptake transporter for dopamine. MPP<sup>+</sup> is then concentrated in mitochondria by the electrochemical gradient and selectively inhibits nicotinamide adenine disphosphate: ubiquinone oxidoreductionase (complex I), thereby interfering with electron transport and eventually generating oxygen radicals.

It has been demonstrated in tissue culture paradigms that FGF-2 (basic FGF) has trophic activity towards nigral dopaminergic neurons (Ferrari et al., Dev. Biol. 1989). Recently, Dr. Unsicker's group has demonstrated that administering FGF-2 in gel foam implants in the striatum

results in the near complete protection of nigral dopaminergic neurons from the toxicity associated with MPTP exposure (Otto and Unsicker, J. Neuroscience, 1990).

Based on the data with FGF-2, TGF alpha HIII can be evaluated to determine whether it has an action similar to that of FGF-2 in enhancing dopaminergic neuronal survival *in vitro* and it can also be tested *in vivo* for protection of dopaminergic neurons in the striatum from the damage associated with MPTP treatment. The potential effect of TGF alpha HIII is first examined *in vitro* in a dopaminergic neuronal cell culture paradigm. The cultures are prepared by dissecting the midbrain floor plate from gestation day 14 Wistar rat embryos. The tissue is dissociated with trypsin and seeded at a density of 200,000 cells/cm<sup>2</sup> on polyorthinine-laminin coated glass coverslips. The cells are maintained in Dulbecco's Modified Eagle's medium and F12 medium containing hormonal supplements (N1). The cultures are fixed with paraformaldehyde after 8 days *in vitro* and are processed for tyrosine hydroxylase, a specific marker for dopaminergic neurons, immunohistochemical staining. Dissociated cell cultures are prepared from embryonic rats. The culture medium is changed every third day and the factors are also added at that time.

Since the dopaminergic neurons are isolated from animals at gestation day 14, a developmental time which is past the stage when the dopaminergic precursor cells are proliferating, an increase in the number of tyrosine hydroxylase immunopositive neurons would represent an increase in the number of dopaminergic neurons surviving *in vitro*. Therefore, if TGF alpha HIII acts to prolong the survival of dopaminergic neurons, it would suggest that TGF alpha HIII may be involved in Parkinson's Disease.

The studies described in this example tested activity in TGF alpha HIII protein. However, one skilled in the art could easily modify the exemplified studies to test the activity of TGF alpha HIII polynucleotides (e.g., gene therapy), agonists, and/or antagonists of TGF alpha HIII.

### Example 36: The Effect of TGF alpha HIII on the Growth of Vascular Endothelial Cells

On day 1, human umbilical vein endothelial cells (HUVEC) are seeded at  $2-5 \times 10^4$  cells/35 mm dish density in M199 medium containing 4% fetal bovine serum (FBS), 16 units/ml heparin, and 50 units/ml endothelial cell growth supplements (ECGS, Biotechnology, Inc.). On day 2, the medium is replaced with M199 containing 10% FBS, 8 units/ml heparin. TGF alpha HIII protein of SEQ ID NO. 2, and positive controls, such as VEGF and basic FGF (bFGF) are added, at

varying concentrations. On days 4 and 6, the medium is replaced. On day 8, cell number is determined with a Coulter Counter.

An increase in the number of HUVEC cells indicates that TGF alpha HIII may proliferate vascular endothelial cells.

5        The studies described in this example tested activity in TGF alpha HIII protein. However, one skilled in the art could easily modify the exemplified studies to test the activity of TGF alpha HIII polynucleotides (e.g., gene therapy), agonists, and/or antagonists of TGF alpha HIII.

### 10    Example 37: Stimulatory Effect of TGF alpha HIII on the Proliferation of Vascular Endothelial Cells

15        For evaluation of mitogenic activity of growth factors, the colorimetric MTS (3-(4,5-dimethylthiazol-2-yl)-5-(3-carboxymethoxyphenyl)-2-(4-sulfophenyl)2H-tetrazolium) assay with the electron coupling reagent PMS (phenazine methosulfate) was performed (CellTiter 96 AQ, Promega). Cells are seeded in a 96-well plate (5,000 cells/well) in 0.1 mL serum-supplemented medium and are allowed to attach overnight. After serum-starvation for 12 hours in 0.5% FBS, conditions (bFGF, VEGF<sub>165</sub> or TGF alpha HIII in 0.5% FBS) with or without Heparin (8 U/ml) are added to wells for 48 hours. 20 mg of MTS/PMS mixture (1:0.05) are added per well and allowed to incubate for 1 hour at 37°C before measuring the absorbance at 490 nm in an ELISA plate reader. Background absorbance from control wells (some media, no cells) is subtracted, and seven wells are performed in parallel for each condition. See, Leak *et al. In Vitro Cell. Dev. Biol.* 30A:512-518 (1994).

20        The studies described in this example tested activity in TGF alpha HIII protein. However, one skilled in the art could easily modify the exemplified studies to test the activity of TGF alpha HIII polynucleotides (e.g., gene therapy), agonists, and/or antagonists of TGF alpha HIII.

### 25    Example 38: Inhibition of PDGF-induced Vascular Smooth Muscle Cell Proliferation Stimulatory Effect

30        HAoSMC proliferation can be measured, for example, by BrdUrd incorporation. Briefly, subconfluent, quiescent cells grown on the 4-chamber slides are transfected with CRP or FITC-labeled AT2-3LP. Then, the cells are pulsed with 10% calf serum and 6 mg/ml BrdUrd. After 24 h, immunocytochemistry is performed by using BrdUrd Staining Kit (Zymed Laboratories). In

brief, the cells are incubated with the biotinylated mouse anti-BrdUrd antibody at 4 °C for 2 h after being exposed to denaturing solution and then incubated with the streptavidin-peroxidase and diaminobenzidine. After counterstaining with hematoxylin, the cells are mounted for microscopic examination, and the BrdUrd-positive cells are counted. The BrdUrd index is calculated as a percent of the BrdUrd-positive cells to the total cell number. In addition, the simultaneous detection of the BrdUrd staining (nucleus) and the FITC uptake (cytoplasm) is performed for individual cells by the concomitant use of bright field illumination and dark field-UV fluorescent illumination. See, Hayashida et al., J. Biol. Chem. 6:271(36):21985-21992 (1996).

The studies described in this example tested activity in TGF alpha HIII protein. However, one skilled in the art could easily modify the exemplified studies to test the activity of TGF alpha HIII polynucleotides (e.g., gene therapy), agonists, and/or antagonists of TGF alpha HIII.

### Example 39: Stimulation of Endothelial Migration

This example will be used to explore the possibility that TGF alpha HIII may stimulate lymphatic endothelial cell migration.

Endothelial cell migration assays are performed using a 48 well microchemotaxis chamber (Neuroprobe Inc., Cabin John, MD; Falk, W., et al., J. Immunological Methods 1980;33:239-247). Polyvinylpyrrolidone-free polycarbonate filters with a pore size of 8 um (Nucleopore Corp. Cambridge, MA) are coated with 0.1% gelatin for at least 6 hours at room temperature and dried under sterile air. Test substances are diluted to appropriate concentrations in M199 supplemented with 0.25% bovine serum albumin (BSA), and 25 ul of the final dilution is placed in the lower chamber of the modified Boyden apparatus. Subconfluent, early passage (2-6) HUVEC or BMEC cultures are washed and trypsinized for the minimum time required to achieve cell detachment. After placing the filter between lower and upper chamber,  $2.5 \times 10^5$  cells suspended in 50 ul M199 containing 1% FBS are seeded in the upper compartment. The apparatus is then incubated for 5 hours at 37°C in a humidified chamber with 5% CO<sub>2</sub> to allow cell migration. After the incubation period, the filter is removed and the upper side of the filter with the non-migrated cells is scraped with a rubber policeman. The filters are fixed with methanol and stained with a Giemsa solution (Diff-Quick, Baxter, McGraw Park, IL). Migration is quantified by counting

cells of three random high-power fields (40x) in each well, and all groups are performed in quadruplicate.

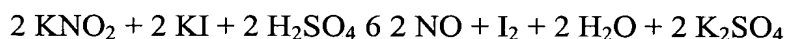
The studies described in this example tested activity in TGF alpha HIII protein. However, one skilled in the art could easily modify the exemplified studies to test the activity of TGF alpha HIII polynucleotides (e.g., gene therapy), agonists, and/or antagonists of TGF alpha HIII.

#### Example 40: Stimulation of Nitric Oxide Production by Endothelial Cells

Nitric oxide released by the vascular endothelium is believed to be a mediator of vascular endothelium relaxation. Thus, TGF alpha HIII activity can be assayed by determining nitric oxide production by endothelial cells in response to TGF alpha HIII.

Nitric oxide is measured in 96-well plates of confluent microvascular endothelial cells after 24 hours starvation and a subsequent 4 hr exposure to various levels of a positive control (such as VEGF-1) and TGF alpha HIII. Nitric oxide in the medium is determined by use of the Griess reagent to measure total nitrite after reduction of nitric oxide-derived nitrate by nitrate reductase. The effect of TGF alpha HIII on nitric oxide release is examined on HUVEC.

Briefly, NO release from cultured HUVEC monolayer is measured with a NO-specific polarographic electrode connected to a NO meter (Iso-NO, World Precision Instruments Inc.) (1049). Calibration of the NO elements is performed according to the following equation:



The standard calibration curve is obtained by adding graded concentrations of  $\text{KNO}_2$  (0, 5, 10, 25, 50, 100, 250, and 500 nmol/L) into the calibration solution containing KI and  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$ . The specificity of the Iso-NO electrode to NO is previously determined by measurement of NO from authentic NO gas (1050). The culture medium is removed and HUVECs are washed twice with Dulbecco's phosphate buffered saline. The cells are then bathed in 5 ml of filtered Krebs-Henseleit solution in 6-well plates, and the cell plates are kept on a slide warmer (Lab Line Instruments Inc.) To maintain the temperature at  $37^\circ\text{C}$ . The NO sensor probe is inserted vertically into the wells, keeping the tip of the electrode 2 mm under the surface of the solution, before addition of the different conditions. S-nitroso acetyl penicillamin (SNAP) is used as a positive control. The amount of released NO is expressed as picomoles per  $1 \times 10^6$  endothelial cells. All



values reported are means of four to six measurements in each group (number of cell culture wells). See, Leak *et al. Biochem. and Biophys. Res. Comm.* 217:96-105 (1995).

The studies described in this example tested activity in TGF alpha HIII protein. However, one skilled in the art could easily modify the exemplified studies to test the activity of TGF alpha HIII polynucleotides (e.g., gene therapy), agonists, and/or antagonists of TGF alpha HIII.

#### Example 41: Effect of TGF alpha HIII on Cord Formation in Angiogenesis

Another step in angiogenesis is cord formation, marked by differentiation of endothelial cells. This bioassay measures the ability of microvascular endothelial cells to form capillary-like structures (hollow structures) when cultured *in vitro*.

CADMEC (microvascular endothelial cells) are purchased from Cell Applications, Inc. as proliferating (passage 2) cells and are cultured in Cell Applications' CADMEC Growth Medium and used at passage 5. For the *in vitro* angiogenesis assay, the wells of a 48-well cell culture plate are coated with Cell Applications' Attachment Factor Medium (200 ml/well) for 30 min. at 37°C. CADMEC are seeded onto the coated wells at 7,500 cells/well and cultured overnight in Growth Medium. The Growth Medium is then replaced with 300 mg Cell Applications' Chord Formation Medium containing control buffer or TGF alpha HIII (0.1 to 100 ng/ml) and the cells are cultured for an additional 48 hr. The numbers and lengths of the capillary-like chords are quantitated through use of the Boeckeler VIA-170 video image analyzer. All assays are done in triplicate.

Commercial (R&D) VEGF (50 ng/ml) is used as a positive control. b-esteradiol (1 ng/ml) is used as a negative control. The appropriate buffer (without protein) is also utilized as a control.

The studies described in this example tested activity in TGF alpha HIII protein. However, one skilled in the art could easily modify the exemplified studies to test the activity of TGF alpha HIII polynucleotides (e.g., gene therapy), agonists, and/or antagonists of TGF alpha HIII.

#### Example 42: Angiogenic Effect on Chick Chorioallantoic Membrane

Chick chorioallantoic membrane (CAM) is a well-established system to examine angiogenesis. Blood vessel formation on CAM is easily visible and quantifiable. The ability of TGF alpha HIII to stimulate angiogenesis in CAM can be examined.

Fertilized eggs of the White Leghorn chick (*Gallus gallus*) and the Japanese quail (*Coturnix coturnix*) are incubated at 37.8°C and 80% humidity. Differentiated CAM of 16-day-old chick and 13-day-old quail embryos is studied with the following methods.

On Day 4 of development, a window is made into the egg shell of chick eggs. The embryos are checked for normal development and the eggs sealed with cellotape. They are further incubated until Day 13. Thermanox coverslips (Nunc, Naperville, IL) are cut into disks of about 5 mm in diameter. Sterile and salt-free growth factors are dissolved in distilled water and about 3.3 mg/ 5 ml are pipetted on the disks. After air-drying, the inverted disks are applied on CAM. After 3 days, the specimens are fixed in 3% glutaraldehyde and 2% formaldehyde and rinsed in 0.12 M sodium cacodylate buffer. They are photographed with a stereo microscope [Wild M8] and embedded for semi- and ultrathin sectioning as described above. Controls are performed with carrier disks alone.

The studies described in this example tested activity in TGF alpha HIII protein. However, one skilled in the art could easily modify the exemplified studies to test the activity of TGF alpha HIII polynucleotides (e.g., gene therapy), agonists, and/or antagonists of TGF alpha HIII.

#### Example 43: Angiogenesis Assay Using a Matrigel Implant in Mouse

*In vivo* angiogenesis assay of TGF alpha HIII measures the ability of an existing capillary network to form new vessels in an implanted capsule of murine extracellular matrix material (Matrigel). The protein is mixed with the liquid Matrigel at 4 degree C and the mixture is then injected subcutaneously in mice where it solidifies. After 7 days, the solid "plug" of Matrigel is removed and examined for the presence of new blood vessels. Matrigel is purchased from Becton Dickinson Labware/Collaborative Biomedical Products.

When thawed at 4 degree C the Matrigel material is a liquid. The Matrigel is mixed with TGF alpha HIII at 150 ng/ml at 4 degree C and drawn into cold 3 ml syringes. Female C57Bl/6 mice approximately 8 weeks old are injected with the mixture of Matrigel and experimental protein at 2 sites at the midventral aspect of the abdomen (0.5 ml/site). After 7 days, the mice are sacrificed by cervical dislocation, the Matrigel plugs are removed and cleaned (i.e., all clinging membranes and fibrous tissue is removed). Replicate whole plugs are fixed in neutral buffered

10% formaldehyde, embedded in paraffin and used to produce sections for histological examination after staining with Masson's Trichrome. Cross sections from 3 different regions of each plug are processed. Selected sections are stained for the presence of vWF. The positive control for this assay is bovine basic FGF (150 ng/ml). Matrigel alone is used to determine basal levels of angiogenesis.

The studies described in this example tested activity in TGF alpha HIII protein. However, one skilled in the art could easily modify the exemplified studies to test the activity of TGF alpha HIII polynucleotides (e.g., gene therapy), agonists, and/or antagonists of TGF alpha HIII.

#### Example 44: Rescue of Ischemia in Rabbit Lower Limb Model

To study the in vivo effects of TGF alpha HIII on ischemia, a rabbit hindlimb ischemia model is created by surgical removal of one femoral arteries as described previously (Takeshita, S. *et al.*, *Am J. Pathol* 147:1649-1660 (1995)). The excision of the femoral artery results in retrograde propagation of thrombus and occlusion of the external iliac artery. Consequently, blood flow to the ischemic limb is dependent upon collateral vessels originating from the internal iliac artery (Takeshita, S. *et al.* *Am J. Pathol* 147:1649-1660 (1995)). An interval of 10 days is allowed for post-operative recovery of rabbits and development of endogenous collateral vessels. At 10 day post-operatively (day 0), after performing a baseline angiogram, the internal iliac artery of the ischemic limb is transfected with 500 mg naked TGF alpha HIII expression plasmid by arterial gene transfer technology using a hydrogel-coated balloon catheter as described (Riessen, R. *et al.* *Hum Gene Ther.* 4:749-758 (1993); Leclerc, G. *et al.* *J. Clin. Invest.* 90: 936-944 (1992)). When TGF alpha HIII is used in the treatment, a single bolus of 500 mg TGF alpha HIII protein or control is delivered into the internal iliac artery of the ischemic limb over a period of 1 min. through an infusion catheter. On day 30, various parameters are measured in these rabbits: (a) BP ratio - The blood pressure ratio of systolic pressure of the ischemic limb to that of normal limb; (b) Blood Flow and Flow Reserve - Resting FL: the blood flow during undilated condition and Max FL: the blood flow during fully dilated condition (also an indirect measure of the blood vessel amount) and Flow Reserve is reflected by the ratio of max FL: resting FL; (c) Angiographic Score - This is measured by the angiogram of collateral vessels. A score is determined by the percentage of circles in an overlaying grid that with crossing opacified arteries

divided by the total number in the rabbit thigh; (d) Capillary density - The number of collateral capillaries determined in light microscopic sections taken from hindlimbs.

The studies described in this example tested activity in TGF alpha HIII protein. However, one skilled in the art could easily modify the exemplified studies to test the activity of TGF alpha HIII polynucleotides (e.g., gene therapy), agonists, and/or antagonists of TGF alpha HIII.

#### Example 45: Effect of TGF alpha HIII on Vasodilation

Since dilation of vascular endothelium is important in reducing blood pressure, the ability of TGF alpha HIII to affect the blood pressure in spontaneously hypertensive rats (SHR) is examined. Increasing doses (0, 10, 30, 100, 300, and 900 mg/kg) of the TGF alpha HIII are administered to 13-14 week old spontaneously hypertensive rats (SHR). Data are expressed as the mean +/- SEM. Statistical analysis are performed with a paired t-test and statistical significance is defined as  $p < 0.05$  vs. the response to buffer alone.

The studies described in this example tested activity in TGF alpha HIII protein. However, one skilled in the art could easily modify the exemplified studies to test the activity of TGF alpha HIII polynucleotides (e.g., gene therapy), agonists, and/or antagonists of TGF alpha HIII.

#### Example 46: Rat Ischemic Skin Flap Model

The evaluation parameters include skin blood flow, skin temperature, and factor VIII immunohistochemistry or endothelial alkaline phosphatase reaction. TGF alpha HIII expression, during the skin ischemia, is studied using in situ hybridization.

The study in this model is divided into three parts as follows:

- a) Ischemic skin
- b) Ischemic skin wounds
- c) Normal wounds

The experimental protocol includes:

- a) Raising a 3x4 cm, single pedicle full-thickness random skin flap (myocutaneous flap over the lower back of the animal).
- b) An excisional wounding (4-6 mm in diameter) in the ischemic skin (skin-flap).

c) Topical treatment with TGF alpha HIII of the excisional wounds (day 0, 1, 2, 3, 4 post-wounding) at the following various dosage ranges: 1mg to 100 mg.

d) Harvesting the wound tissues at day 3, 5, 7, 10, 14 and 21 post-wounding for histological, immunohistochemical, and in situ studies.

5        The studies described in this example tested activity in TGF alpha HIII protein. However, one skilled in the art could easily modify the exemplified studies to test the activity of TGF alpha HIII polynucleotides (e.g., gene therapy), agonists, and/or antagonists of TGF alpha HIII.

#### 10        Example 47: Peripheral Arterial Disease Model

Angiogenic therapy using TGF alpha HIII is a novel therapeutic strategy to obtain restoration of blood flow around the ischemia in case of peripheral arterial diseases. The experimental protocol includes:

15        a) One side of the femoral artery is ligated to create ischemic muscle of the hindlimb, the other side of hindlimb serves as a control.

b) TGF alpha HIII protein, in a dosage range of 20 mg - 500 mg, is delivered intravenously and/or intramuscularly 3 times (perhaps more) per week for 2-3 weeks.

20        c) The ischemic muscle tissue is collected after ligation of the femoral artery at 1, 2, and 3 weeks for the analysis of TGF alpha HIII expression and histology. Biopsy is also performed on the other side of normal muscle of the contralateral hindlimb.

The studies described in this example tested activity in TGF alpha HIII protein. However, one skilled in the art could easily modify the exemplified studies to test the activity of TGF alpha HIII polynucleotides (e.g., gene therapy), agonists, and/or antagonists of TGF alpha HIII.

#### 25        Example 48: Ischemic Myocardial Disease Model

TGF alpha HIII is evaluated as a potent mitogen capable of stimulating the development of collateral vessels, and restructuring new vessels after coronary artery occlusion. Alteration of TGF alpha HIII expression is investigated in situ. The experimental protocol includes:

30        a) The heart is exposed through a left-side thoracotomy in the rat. Immediately, the left coronary artery is occluded with a thin suture (6-0) and the thorax is closed.

b) TGF alpha HIII protein, in a dosage range of 20 mg - 500 mg, is delivered intravenously and/or intramuscularly 3 times (perhaps more) per week for 2-4 weeks.

c) Thirty days after the surgery, the heart is removed and cross-sectioned for morphometric and in situ analyzes.

5 The studies described in this example tested activity in TGF alpha HIII protein. However, one skilled in the art could easily modify the exemplified studies to test the activity of TGF alpha HIII polynucleotides (e.g., gene therapy), agonists, and/or antagonists of TGF alpha HIII.

#### 10 Example 49: Rat Corneal Wound Healing Model

This animal model shows the effect of TGF alpha HIII on neovascularization. The experimental protocol includes:

- 15 a) Making a 1-1.5 mm long incision from the center of cornea into the stromal layer.
- b) Inserting a spatula below the lip of the incision facing the outer corner of the eye.
- c) Making a pocket (its base is 1-1.5 mm from the edge of the eye).
- d) Positioning a pellet, containing 50ng- 5ug of TGF alpha HIII, within the pocket.
- e) TGF alpha HIII treatment can also be applied topically to the corneal wounds in a dosage range of 20mg - 500mg (daily treatment for five days).

20 The studies described in this example tested activity in TGF alpha HIII protein. However, one skilled in the art could easily modify the exemplified studies to test the activity of TGF alpha HIII polynucleotides (e.g., gene therapy), agonists, and/or antagonists of TGF alpha HIII.

#### 25 Example 50: Diabetic Mouse and Glucocorticoid-Impaired Wound Healing Models

##### A. *Diabetic db+/db+ Mouse Model.*

30 To demonstrate that TGF alpha HIII accelerates the healing process, the genetically diabetic mouse model of wound healing is used. The full thickness wound healing model in the db+/db+ mouse is a well characterized, clinically relevant and reproducible model of impaired wound healing. Healing of the diabetic wound is dependent on formation of granulation tissue and re-epithelialization rather than contraction (Gartner, M.H. *et al.*, *J. Surg. Res.* 52:389 (1992); Greenhalgh, D.G. *et al.*, *Am. J. Pathol.* 136:1235 (1990)).

The diabetic animals have many of the characteristic features observed in Type II diabetes mellitus. Homozygous (db+/db+) mice are obese in comparison to their normal heterozygous (db+/+m) littermates. Mutant diabetic (db+/db+) mice have a single autosomal recessive mutation on chromosome 4 (db+) (Coleman *et al.* *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 77:283-293 (1982)).

5 Animals show polyphagia, polydipsia and polyuria. Mutant diabetic mice (db+/db+) have elevated blood glucose, increased or normal insulin levels, and suppressed cell-mediated immunity (Mandel *et al.*, *J. Immunol.* 120:1375 (1978); Debray-Sachs, M. *et al.*, *Clin. Exp. Immunol.* 51(1):1-7 (1983); Leiter *et al.*, *Am. J. of Pathol.* 114:46-55 (1985)). Peripheral neuropathy, myocardial complications, and microvascular lesions, basement membrane thickening  
10 and glomerular filtration abnormalities have been described in these animals (Norido, F. *et al.*, *Exp. Neurol.* 83(2):221-232 (1984); Robertson *et al.*, *Diabetes* 29(1):60-67 (1980); Giacomelli *et al.*, *Lab Invest.* 40(4):460-473 (1979); Coleman, D.L., *Diabetes* 31 (Suppl):1-6 (1982)). These homozygous diabetic mice develop hyperglycemia that is resistant to insulin analogous to human type II diabetes (Mandel *et al.*, *J. Immunol.* 120:1375-1377 (1978)).

15 The characteristics observed in these animals suggests that healing in this model may be similar to the healing observed in human diabetes (Greenhalgh, *et al.*, *Am. J. of Pathol.* 136:1235-1246 (1990)).

Genetically diabetic female C57BL/KsJ (db+/db+) mice and their non-diabetic (db+/+m) heterozygous littermates are used in this study (Jackson Laboratories). The animals are purchased  
20 at 6 weeks of age and are 8 weeks old at the beginning of the study. Animals are individually housed and received food and water ad libitum. All manipulations are performed using aseptic techniques. The experiments are conducted according to the rules and guidelines of Human Genome Sciences, Inc. Institutional Animal Care and Use Committee and the Guidelines for the Care and Use of Laboratory Animals.

25 Wounding protocol is performed according to previously reported methods (Tsuboi, R. and Rifkin, D.B., *J. Exp. Med.* 172:245-251 (1990)). Briefly, on the day of wounding, animals are anesthetized with an intraperitoneal injection of Avertin (0.01 mg/mL), 2,2,2-tribromoethanol and 2-methyl-2-butanol dissolved in deionized water. The dorsal region of the animal is shaved and the skin washed with 70% ethanol solution and iodine. The surgical area is dried with sterile  
30 gauze prior to wounding. An 8 mm full-thickness wound is then created using a Keyes tissue punch. Immediately following wounding, the surrounding skin is gently stretched to eliminate wound expansion. The wounds are left open for the duration of the experiment. Application of

the treatment is given topically for 5 consecutive days commencing on the day of wounding. Prior to treatment, wounds are gently cleansed with sterile saline and gauze sponges.

Wounds are visually examined and photographed at a fixed distance at the day of surgery and at two day intervals thereafter. Wound closure is determined by daily measurement on days 1-5 and on day 8. Wounds are measured horizontally and vertically using a calibrated Jameson caliper. Wounds are considered healed if granulation tissue is no longer visible and the wound is covered by a continuous epithelium.

TGF alpha HIII is administered using at a range different doses of TGF alpha HIII, from 4mg to 500mg per wound per day for 8 days in vehicle. Vehicle control groups received 50mL of vehicle solution.

Animals are euthanized on day 8 with an intraperitoneal injection of sodium pentobarbital (300mg/kg). The wounds and surrounding skin are then harvested for histology and immunohistochemistry. Tissue specimens are placed in 10% neutral buffered formalin in tissue cassettes between biopsy sponges for further processing.

Three groups of 10 animals each (5 diabetic and 5 non-diabetic controls) are evaluated: 1) Vehicle placebo control, 2) untreated; and 3) treated group.

Wound closure is analyzed by measuring the area in the vertical and horizontal axis and obtaining the total square area of the wound. Contraction is then estimated by establishing the differences between the initial wound area (day 0) and that of post treatment (day 8). The wound area on day 1 is 64mm<sup>2</sup>, the corresponding size of the dermal punch. Calculations are made using the following formula:

$$[\text{Open area on day 8}] - [\text{Open area on day 1}] / [\text{Open area on day 1}]$$

Specimens are fixed in 10% buffered formalin and paraffin embedded blocks are sectioned perpendicular to the wound surface (5mm) and cut using a Reichert-Jung microtome. Routine hematoxylin-eosin (H&E) staining is performed on cross-sections of bisected wounds. Histologic examination of the wounds are used to assess whether the healing process and the morphologic appearance of the repaired skin is altered by treatment with TGF alpha HIII. This assessment included verification of the presence of cell accumulation, inflammatory cells, capillaries, fibroblasts, re-epithelialization and epidermal maturity (Greenhalgh, D.G. *et al.*, *Am. J. Pathol.* 136:1235 (1990)). A calibrated lens micrometer is used by a blinded observer.



Tissue sections are also stained immunohistochemically with a polyclonal rabbit anti-human keratin antibody using ABC Elite detection system. Human skin is used as a positive tissue control while non-immune IgG is used as a negative control. Keratinocyte growth is determined by evaluating the extent of reepithelialization of the wound using a calibrated lens micrometer.

Proliferating cell nuclear antigen/cyclin (PCNA) in skin specimens is demonstrated by using anti-PCNA antibody (1:50) with an ABC Elite detection system. Human colon cancer can serve as a positive tissue control and human brain tissue can be used as a negative tissue control. Each specimen includes a section with omission of the primary antibody and substitution with non-immune mouse IgG. Ranking of these sections is based on the extent of proliferation on a scale of 0-8, the lower side of the scale reflecting slight proliferation to the higher side reflecting intense proliferation.

Experimental data are analyzed using an unpaired t test. A p value of  $< 0.05$  is considered significant.

### ***B. Steroid Impaired Rat Model***

The inhibition of wound healing by steroids has been well documented in various *in vitro* and *in vivo* systems (Wahl, S.M. Glucocorticoids and Wound healing. In: Anti-Inflammatory Steroid Action: Basic and Clinical Aspects. 280-302 (1989); Wahl, S.M. *et al.*, *J. Immunol.* 115: 476-481 (1975); Werb, Z. *et al.*, *J. Exp. Med.* 147:1684-1694 (1978)). Glucocorticoids retard wound healing by inhibiting angiogenesis, decreasing vascular permeability ( Ebert, R.H., *et al.*, *An. Intern. Med.* 37:701-705 (1952)), fibroblast proliferation, and collagen synthesis (Beck, L.S. *et al.*, *Growth Factors.* 5: 295-304 (1991); Haynes, B.F. *et al.*, *J. Clin. Invest.* 61: 703-797 (1978)) and producing a transient reduction of circulating monocytes (Haynes, B.F., *et al.*, *J. Clin. Invest.* 61: 703-797 (1978); Wahl, S. M., "Glucocorticoids and wound healing", In: Antiinflammatory Steroid Action: Basic and Clinical Aspects, Academic Press, New York, pp. 280-302 (1989)). The systemic administration of steroids to impaired wound healing is a well establish phenomenon in rats (Beck, L.S. *et al.*, *Growth Factors.* 5: 295-304 (1991); Haynes, B.F., *et al.*, *J. Clin. Invest.* 61: 703-797 (1978); Wahl, S. M., "Glucocorticoids and wound healing", In: Antiinflammatory Steroid Action: Basic and Clinical Aspects, Academic Press, New York, pp. 280-302 (1989); Pierce, G.F. *et al.*, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 86: 2229-2233 (1989)).

To demonstrate that TGF alpha HIII can accelerate the healing process, the effects of multiple topical applications of TGF alpha HIII on full thickness excisional skin wounds in rats in which healing has been impaired by the systemic administration of methylprednisolone is assessed.

Young adult male Sprague Dawley rats weighing 250-300 g (Charles River Laboratories) are used in this example. The animals are purchased at 8 weeks of age and are 9 weeks old at the beginning of the study. The healing response of rats is impaired by the systemic administration of methylprednisolone (17mg/kg/rat intramuscularly) at the time of wounding. Animals are individually housed and received food and water *ad libitum*. All manipulations are performed using aseptic techniques. This study is conducted according to the rules and guidelines of Human Genome Sciences, Inc. Institutional Animal Care and Use Committee and the Guidelines for the Care and Use of Laboratory Animals.

The wounding protocol is followed according to section A, above. On the day of wounding, animals are anesthetized with an intramuscular injection of ketamine (50 mg/kg) and xylazine (5 mg/kg). The dorsal region of the animal is shaved and the skin washed with 70% ethanol and iodine solutions. The surgical area is dried with sterile gauze prior to wounding. An

8 mm full-thickness wound is created using a Keyes tissue punch. The wounds are left open for the duration of the experiment. Applications of the testing materials are given topically once a day for 7 consecutive days commencing on the day of wounding and subsequent to methylprednisolone administration. Prior to treatment, wounds are gently cleansed with sterile saline and gauze sponges.

Wounds are visually examined and photographed at a fixed distance at the day of wounding and at the end of treatment. Wound closure is determined by daily measurement on days 1-5 and on day 8. Wounds are measured horizontally and vertically using a calibrated Jameson caliper. Wounds are considered healed if granulation tissue is no longer visible and the wound is covered by a continuous epithelium.

TGF alpha HIII is administered using at a range different doses of TGF alpha HIII, from 4mg to 500mg per wound per day for 8 days in vehicle. Vehicle control groups received 50mL of vehicle solution.

Animals are euthanized on day 8 with an intraperitoneal injection of sodium pentobarbital (300mg/kg). The wounds and surrounding skin are then harvested for histology. Tissue specimens are placed in 10% neutral buffered formalin in tissue cassettes between biopsy sponges for further processing.

Four groups of 10 animals each (5 with methylprednisolone and 5 without glucocorticoid) are evaluated: 1) Untreated group 2) Vehicle placebo control 3) TGF alpha HIII treated groups.

Wound closure is analyzed by measuring the area in the vertical and horizontal axis and obtaining the total area of the wound. Closure is then estimated by establishing the differences between the initial wound area (day 0) and that of post treatment (day 8). The wound area on day 1 is 64mm<sup>2</sup>, the corresponding size of the dermal punch. Calculations are made using the following formula:

$$[\text{Open area on day 8}] - [\text{Open area on day 1}] / [\text{Open area on day 1}]$$

Specimens are fixed in 10% buffered formalin and paraffin embedded blocks are sectioned perpendicular to the wound surface (5mm) and cut using an Olympus microtome. Routine hematoxylin-eosin (H&E) staining is performed on cross-sections of bisected wounds. Histologic examination of the wounds allows assessment of whether the healing process and the morphologic

appearance of the repaired skin is improved by treatment with TGF alpha HIII. A calibrated lens micrometer is used by a blinded observer to determine the distance of the wound gap.

Experimental data are analyzed using an unpaired t test. A p value of  $< 0.05$  is considered significant.

- 5        The studies described in this example tested activity in TGF alpha HIII protein. However, one skilled in the art could easily modify the exemplified studies to test the activity of TGF alpha HIII polynucleotides (e.g., gene therapy), agonists, and/or antagonists of TGF alpha HIII.

### Example 51: Lymphadema Animal Model

10

The purpose of this experimental approach is to create an appropriate and consistent lymphedema model for testing the therapeutic effects of TGF alpha HIII in lymphangiogenesis and re-establishment of the lymphatic circulatory system in the rat hind limb. Effectiveness is measured by swelling volume of the affected limb, quantification of the amount of lymphatic vasculature, total blood plasma protein, and histopathology. Acute lymphedema is observed for 15 7-10 days. Perhaps more importantly, the chronic progress of the edema is followed for up to 3-4 weeks.

- 20        Prior to beginning surgery, blood sample is drawn for protein concentration analysis. Male rats weighing approximately ~350g are dosed with Pentobarbital. Subsequently, the right legs are shaved from knee to hip. The shaved area is swabbed with gauze soaked in 70% EtOH. Blood is drawn for serum total protein testing. Circumference and volumetric measurements are made prior to injecting dye into paws after marking 2 measurement levels (0.5 cm above heel, at mid-pt of dorsal paw). The intradermal dorsum of both right and left paws are injected with 0.05 ml of 1% Evan's Blue. Circumference and volumetric measurements are then made following 25 injection of dye into paws.

- 30        Using the knee joint as a landmark, a mid-leg inguinal incision is made circumferentially allowing the femoral vessels to be located. Forceps and hemostats are used to dissect and separate the skin flaps. After locating the femoral vessels, the lymphatic vessel that runs along side and underneath the vessel(s) is located. The main lymphatic vessels in this area are then electrically coagulated or suture ligated.

Using a microscope, muscles in back of the leg (near the semitendinosus and adductors) are bluntly dissected. The popliteal lymph node is then located. The 2 proximal and 2 distal

lymphatic vessels and distal blood supply of the popliteal node are then and ligated by suturing. The popliteal lymph node, and any accompanying adipose tissue, is then removed by cutting connective tissues.

Care is taken to control any mild bleeding resulting from this procedure. After lymphatics are occluded, the skin flaps are sealed by using liquid skin (Vetbond) (AJ Buck). The separated skin edges are sealed to the underlying muscle tissue while leaving a gap of ~0.5 cm around the leg. Skin also may be anchored by suturing to underlying muscle when necessary.

To avoid infection, animals are housed individually with mesh (no bedding). Recovering animals are checked daily through the optimal edematous peak, which typically occurred by day 5-7. The plateau edematous peak are then observed. To evaluate the intensity of the lymphedema, the circumference and volumes of 2 designated places on each paw before operation and daily for 7 days are measured. The effect plasma proteins on lymphedema is determined and whether protein analysis is a useful testing perimeter is also investigated. The weights of both control and edematous limbs are evaluated at 2 places. Analysis is performed in a blind manner.

**Circumference Measurements:** Under brief gas anesthetic to prevent limb movement, a cloth tape is used to measure limb circumference. Measurements are done at the ankle bone and dorsal paw by 2 different people then those 2 readings are averaged. Readings are taken from both control and edematous limbs.

**Volumetric Measurements:** On the day of surgery, animals are anesthetized with Pentobarbital and are tested prior to surgery. For daily volumetrics animals are under brief halothane anesthetic (rapid immobilization and quick recovery), both legs are shaved and equally marked using waterproof marker on legs. Legs are first dipped in water, then dipped into instrument to each marked level then measured by Buxco edema software(Chen/Victor). Data is recorded by one person, while the other is dipping the limb to marked area.

**Blood-plasma protein measurements:** Blood is drawn, spun, and serum separated prior to surgery and then at conclusion for total protein and Ca<sup>2+</sup> comparison.

**Limb Weight Comparison:** After drawing blood, the animal is prepared for tissue collection. The limbs are amputated using a quillitine, then both experimental and control legs are cut at the ligature and weighed. A second weighing is done as the tibio-cacaneal joint is disarticulated and the foot is weighed.

**Histological Preparations:** The transverse muscle located behind the knee (popliteal) area is dissected and arranged in a metal mold, filled with freezeGel, dipped into cold

methylbutane, placed into labeled sample bags at - 80EC until sectioning. Upon sectioning, the muscle is observed under fluorescent microscopy for lymphatics..

The studies described in this example tested activity in TGF alpha HIII protein. However, one skilled in the art could easily modify the exemplified studies to test the activity of TGF alpha  
5 HIII polynucleotides (e.g., gene therapy), agonists, and/or antagonists of TGF alpha HIII.

#### Example 52: Suppression of TNF alpha-induced adhesion molecule expression by TGF alpha HIII

10 The recruitment of lymphocytes to areas of inflammation and angiogenesis involves specific receptor-ligand interactions between cell surface adhesion molecules (CAMs) on lymphocytes and the vascular endothelium. The adhesion process, in both normal and pathological settings, follows a multi-step cascade that involves intercellular adhesion molecule-1 (ICAM-1), vascular cell adhesion molecule-1 (VCAM-1), and endothelial leukocyte adhesion  
15 molecule-1 (E-selectin) expression on endothelial cells (EC). The expression of these molecules and others on the vascular endothelium determines the efficiency with which leukocytes may adhere to the local vasculature and extravasate into the local tissue during the development of an inflammatory response. The local concentration of cytokines and growth factor participate in the modulation of the expression of these CAMs.

20 Tumor necrosis factor alpha (TNF-a), a potent proinflammatory cytokine, is a stimulator of all three CAMs on endothelial cells and may be involved in a wide variety of inflammatory responses, often resulting in a pathological outcome.

The potential of TGF alpha HIII to mediate a suppression of TNF-a induced CAM expression can be examined. A modified ELISA assay which uses ECs as a solid phase absorbent  
25 is employed to measure the amount of CAM expression on TNF-a treated ECs when co-stimulated with a member of the FGF family of proteins.

To perform the experiment, human umbilical vein endothelial cell (HUVEC) cultures are obtained from pooled cord harvests and maintained in growth medium (EGM-2; Clonetics, San Diego, CA) supplemented with 10% FCS and 1% penicillin/streptomycin in a 37 degree C  
30 humidified incubator containing 5% CO<sub>2</sub>. HUVECs are seeded in 96-well plates at concentrations of  $1 \times 10^4$  cells/well in EGM medium at 37 degree C for 18-24 hrs or until confluent. The monolayers are subsequently washed 3 times with a serum-free solution of RPMI-

1640 supplemented with 100 U/ml penicillin and 100 mg/ml streptomycin, and treated with a given cytokine and/or growth factor(s) for 24 h at 37 degree C. Following incubation, the cells are then evaluated for CAM expression.

Human Umbilical Vein Endothelial cells (HUVECs) are grown in a standard 96 well plate to confluence. Growth medium is removed from the cells and replaced with 90 ul of 199 Medium (10% FBS). Samples for testing and positive or negative controls are added to the plate in triplicate (in 10 ul volumes). Plates are incubated at 37 degree C for either 5 h (selectin and integrin expression) or 24 h (integrin expression only). Plates are aspirated to remove medium and 100 µl of 0.1% paraformaldehyde-PBS(with Ca++ and Mg++) is added to each well. Plates are held at 4°C for 30 min.

Fixative is then removed from the wells and wells are washed 1X with PBS(+Ca,Mg)+0.5% BSA and drained. Do not allow the wells to dry. Add 10 µl of diluted primary antibody to the test and control wells. Anti-ICAM-1-Biotin, Anti-VCAM-1-Biotin and Anti-E-selectin-Biotin are used at a concentration of 10 µg/ml (1:10 dilution of 0.1 mg/ml stock antibody). Cells are incubated at 37°C for 30 min. in a humidified environment. Wells are washed X3 with PBS(+Ca,Mg)+0.5% BSA.

Then add 20 µl of diluted ExtrAvidin-Alkaline Phosphatase (1:5,000 dilution) to each well and incubated at 37°C for 30 min. Wells are washed X3 with PBS(+Ca,Mg)+0.5% BSA. 1 tablet of p-Nitrophenol Phosphate pNPP is dissolved in 5 ml of glycine buffer (pH 10.4). 100 µl of pNPP substrate in glycine buffer is added to each test well. Standard wells in triplicate are prepared from the working dilution of the ExtrAvidin-Alkaline Phosphatase in glycine buffer: 1:5,000 ( $10^0$ ) >  $10^{-0.5}$  >  $10^{-1}$  >  $10^{-1.5}$ . 5 µl of each dilution is added to triplicate wells and the resulting AP content in each well is 5.50 ng, 1.74 ng, 0.55 ng, 0.18 ng. 100 µl of pNPP reagent must then be added to each of the standard wells. The plate must be incubated at 37°C for 4h. A volume of 50 µl of 3M NaOH is added to all wells. The results are quantified on a plate reader at 405 nm. The background subtraction option is used on blank wells filled with glycine buffer only. The template is set up to indicate the concentration of AP-conjugate in each standard well [ 5.50 ng; 1.74 ng; 0.55 ng; 0.18 ng]. Results are indicated as amount of bound AP-conjugate in each sample.

The studies described in this example tested activity in TGF alpha HIII protein. However, one skilled in the art could easily modify the exemplified studies to test the activity of TGF alpha HIII polynucleotides (e.g., gene therapy), agonists, and/or antagonists of TGF alpha HIII.

### Example 53: Human Dermal Fibroblast and Aortic Smooth Muscle Cell Proliferation

Supernatants from transiently transfected cells containing TGF alpha HIII were added to cultures of normal human dermal fibroblasts (NHDF) and human aortic smooth muscle cells (AoSMC). Two co-assays were performed with each supernatant. The first assay examined the effect of supernatants on the proliferation of normal human dermal fibroblasts (NHDF) or aortic smooth muscle cells (AoSMC).

Aberrant growth of fibroblasts or smooth muscle cells is a part of several pathological processes, including fibrosis, and restenosis. The second assay examines IL6 production by both NHDF and SMC. IL6 production is an indication of functional activation. Activated cells will have increased production of a number of cytokines and other factors, which can result in a proinflammatory or immunomodulatory outcome. Assays are run with and without co-TNFa stimulation, in order to check for costimulatory or inhibitory activity.

#### *Assay*

On day 1, set up 96-well black plates with 1000 cells/well (NHDF) or 2000 cells/well (AoSMC) in 100ul culture media. NHDF culture media contains: Clonetics FB basal media, 1mg/ml hFGF, 5mg/ml insulin, 50mg/ml gentamycin, 2%FBS, while AoSMC culture media contains Clonetics SM basal media, 0.5ug/ml hEGF, 5mg/ml insulin, 1ug/ml hFGF, 50mg/ml gentamycin, 50 ug/ml Amphotericin B, 5%FBS. Incubate @ 37C for at least 4-5 hours and then aspirate culture media and replace with growth arrest media. Growth arrest media for NHDF contains fibroblast basal media, 50mg/ml gentamycin, 2% FBS, while growth arrest media for AoSMC contains SM basal media, 50mg/ml gentamycin, 50ug/ml Amphotericin B, 0.4% FBS. Incubate at 37C until day 2.

On day 2, design serial dilutions and templates of supernatants always including media controls and known-protein controls. For both stimulation and inhibition experiments, proteins are diluted in growth arrest media. For inhibition experiments, TNFa is added to a final concentration of 2ng/ml (NHDF) or 5ng/ml (AoSMC). Then add 1/3 vol media containing controls or supernatents and Incubate at 37C/5%CO2 until day 5.



Transfer 60ul from each well to another labeled 96-well plate, cover with a plate-sealer, and store at 4C until Day 6 (for IL6 ELISA). To the remaining 100ul in the cell culture plate, aseptically add Alamar Blue in an amount equal to 10% of the culture volume (10ul). Return plates to incubator for 3 to 4 hours. Then measure fluorescence with excitation at 530nm and emission at 590nm using the CytoFluor. This yields the growth stimulation/inhibition data.

On day 5, the IL6 ELISA is performed by coating a 96 well plate with 50-100 ul/well of Anti-Human IL6 Monoclonal antibody diluted in PBS, pH 7.4, incubate ON at room temperature.

On day 6, empty the plates into the sink and blot on paper towels. Prepare Assay Buffer containing PBS with 4% BSA. Block the plates with 200ul/well of Pierce Super Block blocking buffer in PBS for 1-2 hr and then wash plates with wash buffer (PBS, 0.05% Tween-20). Blot plates on paper towels. Then add 50 ul/well of diluted Anti-Human IL-6 Monoclonal, Biotin-labeled antibody at 0.50 mg/ml. Make dilutions of IL-6 stock in media (30, 10, 3, 1, 0.3, 0 ng/ml). Add duplicate samples to top row of plate. Cover the plates and incubate for 2 hours at RT on shaker.

Wash plates with wash buffer and blot on paper towels. Dilute EU-labeled Streptavidin 1:1000 in Assay buffer, and add 100 ul/well. Cover the plate and incubate 1 h at RT. Wash plates with wash buffer. Blot on paper towels.

Add 100 ul/well of Enhancement Solution. Shake for 5 minutes. Read the plate on the Wallac DELFIA Fluorometer. Readings from triplicate samples in each assay were tabulated and averaged.

### *Analysis*

When supernatants containing TGF alpha HIII was tested in the above assay, it was observed that the supernatant caused proliferation of AoSMC 1.5 standard deviation above the control. These results suggest that TGF alpha HIII may be involved in dermal fibroblast proliferation and/or smooth muscle cell proliferation.

Potential uses of the present invention include the use of polypeptides, polynucleotides, agonists and/or antagonists of TGF alpha HIII in inflammation and immune responses, wound healing, and angiogenesis, as detailed throughout this specification. Particularly, polypeptides and polynucleotides of the invention may be used in wound healing

and dermal regeneration, as well as the promotion of vasculargenesis, both of the blood  
vessles and lymphatics. The growth of vessels can be used in the treatment, for example, of  
cardiovascular diseases. Additionally, antagonists of the present invention can be used in anti-  
vascular uses (e.g., anti-angiogenesis), anti-hyperproliferative diseases, and anti-inflammatory  
5 uses.

It will be clear that the invention may be practiced otherwise than as particularly  
described in the foregoing description and examples. Numerous modifications and variations  
10 of the present invention are possible in light of the above teachings and, therefore, are within  
the scope of the appended claims.

The entire disclosure of each document cited (including patents, patent applications,  
journal articles, abstracts, laboratory manuals, books, or other disclosures) in the Background  
of the Invention, Detailed Description, and Examples is hereby incorporated herein by  
15 reference. Moreover, U.S. Applications Serial No. 08/778,545, filed January 3, 1997, Serial  
No. 60/011,136, filed January 4, 1996, and Serial No. 60/036,103, filed January 14, 1997, and  
PCT Application US 96/00149, filed January 4, 1996, are hereby incorporated by reference in  
their entirety, including the Sequence Listing.